U.S. MARINE CORPS
MOUNTAIN WARFARE TRAINING CENTER
BRIDGEPORT, CA.

WILDERNESS MEDICINE COURSE

2002

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

WILDERNESS MEDICINE COURSE
STUDENT HANDBOOK

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAP **TITLE**

1 MOUNTAIN SAFETY
2 NUTRITION
3 WILDERNESS PATIENT ASSESSMENT
4 HIGH ALTITUDE ILLNESS
5 HEAT RELATED INJURIES
6 COMBAT CASUALTY CARE
7 BURN MANAGEMENT
8 HYPOTHERMIA / REWARMING
9 SUBMERSION INCIDENTS
10 WILDERNESS ORTHOPEDIC INJURIES
11 TREATMENT OF REPTILE AND ANTHROPOD ENVENOMATION
12 COLD INJURIES
13 LAND NAVIGATION
14 SEARCH AND RESCUE
15 TRIAGE
16 PREVENTIVE MEDICINE / WATER PURIFICATION

APPENDIX A SURVIVAL TECHNIQUES

A1 REQUIREMENTS FOR SURVIVAL
A2 SURVIVAL KIT
A3 SURVIVAL SIGNALING
A4 SURVIVAL SHELTERS AND FIRES
A5 SURVIVAL NAVIGATION
A6 WATER PROCUREMENT
A7 FORAGING ON PLANTS AND INSECTS
A8 TRAPS AND SNARES
A9 MOUNTAIN WEATHER

TOC

TABLE OF CONTENTS (CONT.)

APPENDIX B SWIFT WATER RESCUE

B1 RESCUE PHILOSOPHY FOR SWIFTWATER RESCUE TEAMS
B2 PERSONAL AND TEAM EQUIPMENT
B3 SWIFTWATER TERMINOLOGY AND DYNAMICS
B4 COMMUNICATIONS
B5 THROW BAGS AND FOOT ENTANGLEMENTS
B6 DEFENSIVE SWIMMING AND FERRY ANGLE
B7 FEET-WET RESCUES AND C-SPINE ROLLS
B8 BOATS AND BOAT HANDLING
B9 ROPE SYSTEMS AND BOAT ANCHORS
B10 VEHICLE RESCUES
B11 STREAM CROSSING

APPENDICES C

C1 ROPE MANAGEMENT
C2 NOMENCLATURE AND CARE OF MOUNTAINEERING EQUIPMENT
C3 BALANCE CLIMBING
C4 NATURAL AND ARTIFICIAL ANCHORS
C5 SIT HARNESS
C6 ESTABLISHMENT OF RAPPEL POINTS AND RAPPELLING
C7 TOP ROPING
C8 MOUNTAIN CASUALTY EVACUATIONS
C9 ONE ROPE BRIDGE
C10 SUMMER MOUNTAIN WARFIGHTING LOAD REQUIREMENTS

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

FMST.07.18
04/02/02

STUDENT HANDOUT

MOUNTAIN SAFETY (SUMMER)

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVE: Given a unit in a wilderness environment and necessary equipment and supplies, apply the principles of mountain safety to prevent death or injury per the reference. (FMST.07.18)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVE: Without the aid of references and given the acronym "BE SAFE MARINE", list in writing the 12 principles of mountain safety, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.18a)

OUTLINE

1. **PLANNING AND PREPARATION:** (FMST.07.18a) As in any military operation, planning and preparation constitute the keys to success. The following principles will help the leader conduct a safe and efficient operation in any type of mountainous environment. We find this principle in the acronym "BE SAFE MARINE". Remember the key, think about what each letter means and apply this in any type of environment.

B - Be aware of the group's ability.

E - Evaluate terrain and weather constantly.

S - Stay as a group.

A - Appreciate time requirements.

F - Find shelter before storms if required.

E - Eat plenty and drink lots of liquids.

M - Maintain proper clothing and equipment.

A - Ask locals about conditions.

R - Remember to keep calm and think.

I - Insist on emergency rations and kits.

N - Never forget accident procedures.

E - Energy is saved when warm and dry.

a. Be Aware of the Group's Ability. It is essential that the leader evaluates the individual abilities of his men and uses this as the basis for his planning. In his evaluation, the leader must include the group's overall physical conditioning, and the consideration of change in climate and how long the unit has had to acclimatize.

(1) Mental attitude of your group. Is morale high? How much tactical training has the group had in a particular type of terrain?

(2) Technical aspect of your group. Have they been on skis, snowshoes, etc.?

(3) Individual skills. At this point, you must choose who is most proficient at the individual skills that will be required for your mission, navigation techniques, security, call for fire, rope installations, track plans, bivouac site selection, skijoring, etc.

b. Evaluate Terrain and Weather Constantly.

(1) Terrain. During the planning stages of your mission, the leader must absorb as much information as possible on the surrounding terrain and key terrain features involved in your area of operation. Considerations to any obstacles must be clearly planned for. Will you need such things as fixed ropes, rope bridges, climbing gear, etc?

(a) Stress careful movement in particularly dangerous areas, such as loose rock and steep terrain.

(b) Always know your position. Knowing where you are on your planned route is important.

(2) Weather. Mountain weather can be severe and variable. Drastic weather changes can occur in the space of a few hours with the onset of violent storms, reduced visibility, and extreme changes. In addition to obtaining current weather data, the leader must plan for the unexpected "worst case". During an operation he must diagnose weather signs continually to be able to foresee possible weather changes.

(a) Constantly evaluate the conditions. Under certain conditions it may be advisable to reevaluate your capabilities. Pushing ahead with a closed mind could spell disaster for the mission and the unit.

c. Stay as a Group. Individuals acting on their own are at a great disadvantage in this environment.

(1) Give the unit adequate rest halts based upon the terrain and elevation, physical abilities of the unit, combat load and mission requirements.

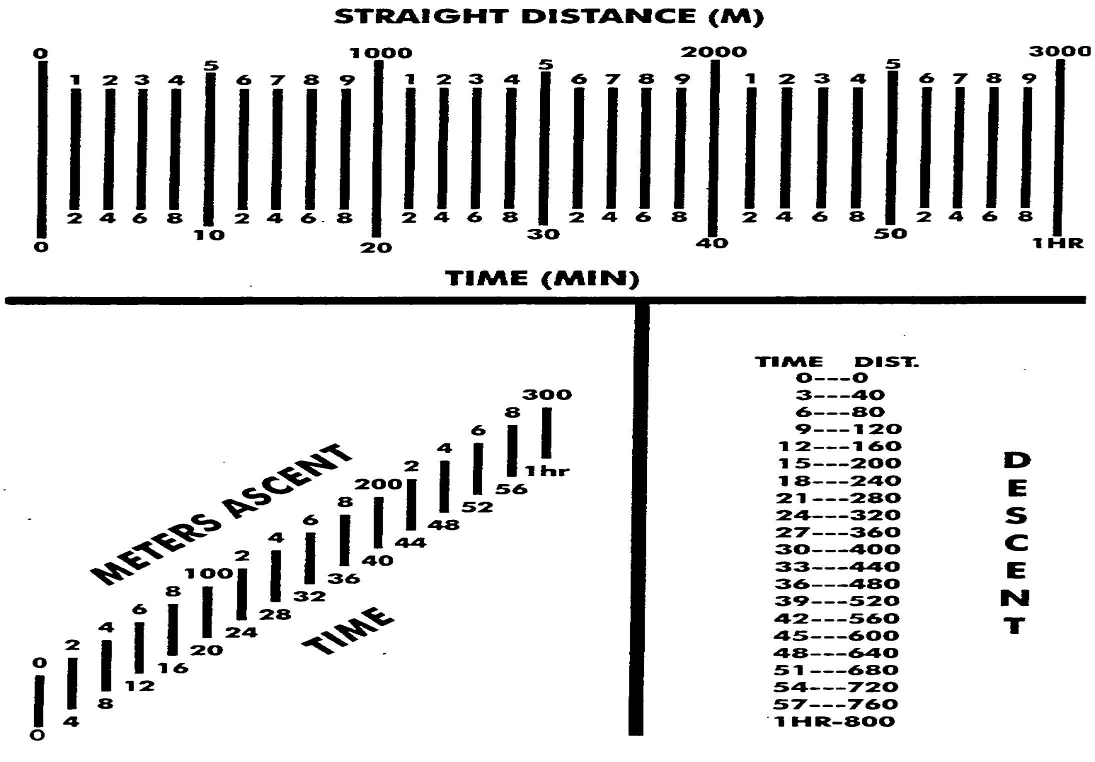
(2) Remember to use the buddy system in your group.

(3) Maintain a steady pace so that it will allow accomplishment of the mission when all members of the unit reach the objective area.

d. Appreciate Time Requirements. Efficient use of available time is vital. The leader must make an accurate estimate of the time required for his operation based on terrain, weather, unit size, abilities, and on the enemy situation. This estimate must take into account the possibility of unexpected emergencies and allow sufficient leeway to make unplanned bivouacs in severe conditions.

(1) Time-Distance Formula (TDF). This formula is designed to be a guideline and should not be considered as the exact amount of time required for your movement. Furthermore, this formula is for use in ideal conditions:

3 km/mph + 1 hour for every 300 meters ascent; and/or + 1 hour for every 800 meters descent.



TIME	DIST.
0	0
3	40
6	80
9	120
12	160
15	200
18	240
21	280
24	320
27	360
30	400
33	440
36	480
39	520
42	560
45	600
48	640
51	680
54	720
57	760
1HR	800

(2) Route Planning. Route cards are not to be used in place of an overlay, but as a tool to be used in route planning. Overlays/Route cards should contain the following information at the minimum:

Unit Designation:
Unit Commander.
Number of personnel.
Inclusive dates and times of movement.
Grid coordinates of each checkpoint and bivouac.
Map references.
Azimuth and distances for each leg.
Elevation gain/loss per leg.
Description of the ground.
ETA and ETD.

ROUTE CARD

UNIT I.D.		UNIT COMMANDER		NUMBER OF PERSONNEL		DATE AND TIME	MAP REFERENCE
LEG	AZM	DIST	GRID	ETA	ETD	ELEVATION	DESCRIPTION

(3) As in any military operation, route planning and execution are of vital importance. Prior to departure, the unit commander must submit a route card or patrol overlay to his higher headquarters and keeps a duplicate copy for himself. This preplanned route should be followed as closely as possible, taking into account changes based on the tactical situation. In non-tactical situations, the preplanned route should be followed to reduce search and rescue time in an emergency situation.

e. Find Shelter before Storms if required. Under certain conditions, inclement weather can provide tactical advantages to the thinking unit commander, but by the same token it can reduce the efficiency of a unit to nil if an incorrect evaluation of the situation is made.

(1) Bivouac. If the group decision is to bivouac, then it's vital that we know the principles for an unplanned bivouac.

(a) Unplanned bivouac. The principles and techniques discussed here apply both to unplanned and tolerated bivouacs. In any survival situation, especially in a mountainous environment, the most immediate danger is from exposure to the elements. Being lost will not directly kill an individual. Starvation takes time, but hypothermia can manifest itself in a matter of hours resulting in death. Adhering to the following principles will give an individual the best chance to spend a relatively safe bivouac with the prospect of continued effort toward mission accomplishment.

1. Make shelter. The requirements for expedient shelters and the building procedures will be covered in another section. The basic requirement for protection from the elements is essential.

2. Keep warm. The retention of body heat is of vital importance; any action in which body heat is lost should be avoided. The following points should be considered:

a. Adequate shelter.

b. Insulation from the ground using branches, a rucksack, etc.

c. Wear extra clothing.

d. Use extra equipment for insulation.

e. Produce external heat while trying to conserve fuel for future use.

3. Keep dry. Being wet causes the loss of body heat 24 times faster than when dry. Adequate protection from the elements is of prime importance to prevent the onset of hypothermia.

f. Eat Properly and Drink Plenty of Fluids

(1) Food. The human body can be compared to a furnace, which runs on food to produce energy (warmth). By planning the consumption of food to suit the specific situation, adequate nutrition and extra warmth can be supplied.

(2) Water. The intake of adequate amounts of water will maintain the body in proper working order. Danger from dehydration is as high in mountain regions as in hot dry areas. Loss of liquids is easily seen and felt in hot climates; whereas in the

mountains, the loss of body fluids is much less noticeable. High water intake, at least 6 quarts per day when in bivouac, 8 quarts per day when active, will help to prevent dehydration.

g. Maintain Proper Clothing and Equipment

(1) Clothing

(a) Our clothing has to perform an important function in our mission; therefore, when choosing our clothing we have to take into account some essential requirements.

1. Protection against wind and rain.

2. Layered and easily adjustable.

3. Lightweight and durable.

(b) To help us remember how to maintain and wear our clothing, we use the acronym, "COLD".

C - Keep clothing Clean.

O - Avoid Overheating.

L - Wear clothing loose and in Layers.

D - Keep clothing Dry.

NOTE: In the mountains a man should never be separated from his gear. Here are some basic and essential items that should be considered during your planning stage.

(2) Required equipment:

(a) A daypack should always be carried per squad and one Marine should carry a combat load.

(b) Map and compass. Every individual in a leadership position and his assistant should carry a map and compass. The maps should be weatherproofed and extra maps should be distributed throughout the unit.

(c) Repair kit. This kit should include those items necessary to do emergency repairs on your equipment.

(d) Survival Kit. Always carried on your person. The contents of a survival kit will be covered in another period of instruction dealing specifically with survival kits.

h. Ask Locals About Conditions. An often-overlooked source of information is the indigenous population of an area. Local weather patterns, rockslide areas, watering points, and normal routes can all be obtained by careful questioning. The leader must obtain current information of the actual conditions along his intended route. Of particular importance are recent precipitation and enemy sightings.

i. Remember to Keep Calm and Think.

(1) Emergency situation. Having recognized that you are lost and that an emergency situation exists, the following principles should be followed:

(a) Keep calm and do not panic. At this point you must make every effort to conserve body heat and energy.

(b) Think. When an individual is cold, tired, hungry or frightened he must force himself to organize his thoughts into a logical sequence.

(c) The group must try to help itself by either finding the way back to safety or by preparing shelters and procuring food.

(d) Above all else, the group must act as a tight-knit unit. In emergency situations, individual dissension can cause a total loss of control and unit strength.

(2) If the decision is reached that the group should seek its way back to safety, several possibilities exist. In most situations, the safest approach will be to retrace the route to the last known point and continue from there. The other course of action is to get a group consensus on the present location and send out a small search party to locate a known point. This party must ensure that they mark their trail adequately to return to the group. If all attempts at finding a way back to known terrain fails, a definite survival situation exists and actions discussed later in this section must be instituted.

j. Insist on Emergency Rations and Kits. Just like what was covered in the SUMMER MOUNTAIN WARFIGHTING LOAD REQUIREMENTS class, survival rations and a survival kit should always be carried.

k. Never Forget Accident/Emergency Procedures.

(1) Causes of accidents. The general procedures used to handle accidents differ little in this environment, but several distinct points should be kept in mind. The most frequent causes of accidents are as follows:

(a) Overestimation of physical and technical abilities.

(b) Carelessness.

(c) General lack of observation of one's surroundings.

(d) Lack of knowledge and experience by leaders.

(e) The failure to act as a group.

(f) Underestimation of time requirements to move through mountainous terrain and underestimation of the terrain itself.

(2) Preventive measures. The only truly effective preventive measures for the above lie in the education and experience of leaders at all levels. Too often, leaders sit by watching during training and as a result have no concept of the requirements involved in the mountainous environment. Only by active involvement can a leader gain the knowledge and experience needed to effectively lead in this environment.

(3) General procedures for handling an accident. These require only a good dose of common sense as outlined below.

(a) Perform basic first aid.

(b) Protect the patient from the elements to include insulation on top and bottom.

(c) Evacuate if necessary.

(d) Send for help if required. If possible, never send a man for help alone.

(e) Send the following information regarding the accident:

1. Time of accident.
2. Nature and location of accident.
3. Number injured.
4. Best approach route to accident scene.

(4) If one man of a two-man team is injured, the injured man must be given all available aid prior to going for help. If the injured man is unconscious, he should be placed in all available clothing and sleeping gear and anchored if on steep terrain. A note explaining the circumstances, and reassuring him, should be left in a conspicuous spot. This note must also contain the following information:

(a) When you expect to return.

(b) Where you went.

(c) What you did before you left (medication, etc.).

(5) International distress signal (whistle):

(a) Six short blasts in 1 minute from person requesting help.

(b) The return signal is three blasts in 1 minute from the respondent.

(6) Other methods if help is required:

(a) Red pyrotechnics.

(b) SOS, (... --- . . .).

(c) “Mayday" by voice communications.

l. Energy is saved when warm and Dry. With the previous 11 principles in mind this one should fall right into place. Save your heat and energy by following these steps:

(1) Dress properly.

(2) Eat properly.

(3) Drink properly.

(4) Ensure shelter meets criteria.

(5) Produce external heat (fires, stove, extra clothing, etc.) to save body heat and energy for future use.

(6) Don't lose body heat by getting wet.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

FMST.07.01
03/08/02

STUDENT HANDOUT

NUTRITION

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVE: Given a unit in a mountainous environment, and the necessary equipment and supplies, apply the principles of nutrition in a mountainous environment to prevent death or injury per the reference. (FMST.07.01)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES:

(1) Without the aid of references and from a given list, choose the correct caloric intake needed per day in a mountainous environment, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.01a)

(2) Without the aid of references and from a given list, choose which type of diet increases your tolerance to cold, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.01b)

(3) Without the aid of references and from a given list, choose one of the preventive measures of excessive water loss in a mountainous terrain, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.01c)

OUTLINE.

1. **STARVATION FACTORS.** Factors that combine to result in "Near Starvation" during military operations in any mountainous environment:

a. Difficulty in carrying sufficient food.

b. Lack of time for preparing meals and beverages.

c. Loss of appetite and low food palatability resulting from hypoxia/hypothermia.

d. Fat intolerance resulting from altered metabolism.

2

2. **PHYSIOLOGICAL ASPECT TO COLD STRESS.**

a. Man's adaptation to cold is essentially behavioral. Shelters and clothing are utilized to provide a micro-environment, which will allow survival. Body composition adjustments such as increases in body weight and fat are also examples of the body's adaptation to the cold. The winter months lend themselves to greater periods of inactivity, leading to these changes.

b. In the Falkland War, constipation was a major concern. Dehydration was found to be the culprit in the majority of cases, but diet had a significant role as well. MRE's are low in fiber, containing less than 10 grams. Man needs at least 31 grams of fiber per day to ease passage of stool. Constipation can be a debilitating condition, affecting overall unit readiness.

(1) Low fiber diets can lead to diverticulosis, diverticulitis and Irritable Bowel Syndrome (IBS). IBS flare-ups tend to occur during upsetting situations and emotional stress. Educate your troops on the importance of fiber, especially in a cold weather environment.

(2) Fiber is supplied by foods derived from plants. The best sources are:

(a) Whole grain cereals.

(b) Whole wheat breads.

(c) Fresh and dried fruits.

NOTE: Vegetables also help prevent constipation, but the fiber from whole grain cereals and whole wheat bread is more effective than vegetables.

3. **CALORIC REQUIREMENTS.** (FMST.07.01a) Recommended caloric intake (Naval Medical Command Instruction 10110.1) for troops operating in a cold weather environment is 4,500 calories per day.

a. Energy Expenditure. Military operations in a cold weather environment usually involve strenuous activity. Walking on snow expends roughly twice the energy that walking on hard ground does. If troops are unfamiliar with personal over-snow mobility equipment, i.e. snowshoes and skis, awkward movement and thus wasted energy will result.

(1) The heavy clothing necessary for functioning in the cold increases energy expenditures by 5-15%. You will have the opportunity to experience this effect in the upcoming field evolution.

(2) Properly clothed, experienced individuals should have negligible heat loss from radiation, conduction, and convection. However, losses associated with respiration and evaporation can be significant.

(3) In intense cold, particularly with high winds, heat loss to the environment may be inevitable.

4. **NUTRITION IN A HIGH ALTITUDE ENVIRONMENT.** A diet high in carbohydrates and high in fat is the most beneficial, while a high protein diet is generally the least desirable.

a. The marked weight loss seen in individuals at high altitude is largely due to increased metabolic demands and anorexia secondary to hypoxia. Total caloric intake commonly does not meet energy demands.

b. Altered metabolic processes that have been reported at high altitude include delayed gastric emptying, intestinal malabsorption and decreased gastric enzyme secretion.

5. **BEST DIET FOR COLD WEATHER**. (FMST.07.01b)

a. High carbohydrate and high fat foods should be included rather than high protein foods.

b. Small meals (snacks) spaced at time intervals of two hours or less should be consumed rather than the usual three meals-a-day.

c. During a typical eight-hour day of cold exposure, three high-fat (unsaturated fat) meals providing 60% of the day's calories, coupled with two normally scheduled meals (breakfast and dinner) should provide good cold tolerance.

6. **BASIC CONSTITUENTS OF FOOD**. The three basic constituents of food are carbohydrates, fats and proteins.

a. Carbohydrates. Also known as the quick energy foods that provide energy to produce heat with the byproducts of carbon dioxide and water when oxidized by the body.

(1) Carbohydrates are present in food mainly as sugars and starches and are broken down during digestion into simple sugars that are converted into glucose.

(2) Carbohydrates are stored as glycogen in the liver and muscles and can be broken down quickly into glucose to provide a rapid source of energy. However, these stores are not large and are markedly depleted by fasting for as little as 24 hours.

(3) Eating a high carbohydrate diet for several days will double one's glycogen stores and can increase endurance by up to three times compared to the ordinary balanced diet.

(4) The main carbohydrate food sources are: CARBOHYDRATE SOURCES

(a) Fruits.

(b) Vegetables.

(c) Cereals.

(d) Sugar.

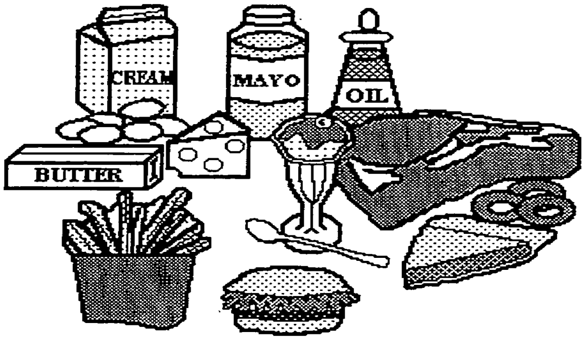
b. Fats: In the body, fat serves as the main storage form of energy. One gram of fat has the equivalent of 9.3 Cal/gm as opposed to 4.1 Cal/gm for carbohydrates and proteins. They also produce energy, heat, CO_2 and H_20.

(1) In cases of starvation, body fat tends to be broken down into acidic compounds. If these compounds accumulate in the blood faster than they can be burned, they cause the body tissues and blood to become excessively acidic (acidosis).

(2) During brief physical activity, energy is derived equally from fat and carbohydrates, but as the duration of the activity lengthens, the percent of energy supplied by fat increases as carbohydrate energy is quickly depleted.

(a) Fat sources:

FAT SOURCES



1. Butter.
2. Lard.
3. Cooking oil.
4. Mayonnaise.
5. Ice cream.

(4) Fat is also found in lesser amounts in:

(a) Dairy products. (d) Nuts.

(b) Meat. (e) Vegetables.

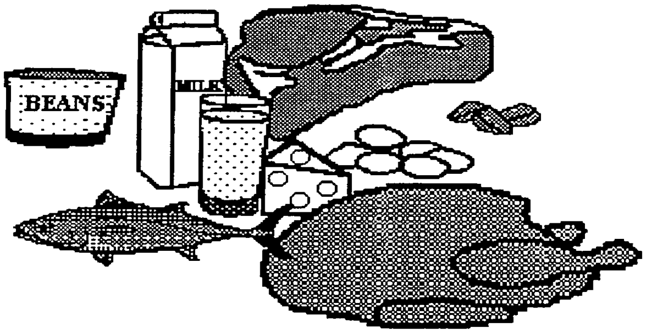
(c) Eggs. (f) Cereals.

c. Proteins: Protein is a reparative food of complicated molecules composed of chains of amino acids.

(1) The protein structure is made up of 25 different amino acids. Eleven of these are important for growth while eight are essential for normal tissue maintenance.

(2) Common protein food sources are:

PROTEIN SOURCES



(a) Eggs.

(b) Dairy products.

(c) Meat.

(d) Poultry.

(e) Fish.

(f) Legumes (peas and beans, nuts and cereals with animal products, especially eggs, being better sources of complete protein).

(3) A pure protein diet may cause fatalities in 3-8 weeks from "rabbit starvation". This refers to those who have tried to live on relatively fat-free rabbit meat only. Fat must be a part of a normal diet.

7. **PERCENTAGE OF FATS, PROTEINS AND CARBOHYDRATES IN A SUMMER MOUNTAINOUS ENVIRONMENT**.

a. Requirements:

(1) 20% Protein.

(2) 35% Fats.

(3) 45% Carbohydrates.

b. When troops move to higher altitudes and/or are doing strenuous activity, carbohydrates should definitely be increased to at least 70 - 80% of energy intake. (Experienced mountaineers find carbohydrates more palatable at altitude).

8. **VITAMINS.** Vitamins are essential to the metabolic functioning of the body and are even more important in a cold weather environment because of an increase in metabolism and stress. Because the body cannot make vitamins, they are supplied in the food we consume. A daily multivitamin tablet supplement is recommended in a cold weather environment, but mega doses (more than 10 times the RDA) may be harmful.

a. Water-soluble vitamins are not stored in the body and need to be consumed daily. They are not stable to cooking and oxidation.

(1) B complex, Niacin, Pantothenic acid, Biotin, Choline, Folic Acid and C. (Note: Vitamin C facilitates absorption of iron from food.)

b. Fat-soluble vitamins can be stored in the body and are more stable to cooking and oxidation.

(1) A, D, E and K.

9. FOODS THAT MAKE YOU FEEL WARM.

a. Hot Beverages. Increases peripheral vasodilatation.

b. Adequate Dietary Iron. Mild iron deficiency increases chilling, thus decreasing cold tolerance.

c. Fat in the Diet. Fat slows gastric emptying and anecdotal evidence suggests less chilling and more restful sleep at night.

d. Carbohydrates. Keeps energy levels up. "Tired" is associated with "Cold".

e. Spices. Red pepper (Tabasco sauce) and monosodium glutamate increase peripheral vasodilatation, while capsicum and capsaicin, which are found in Cayenne, produces the same result when applied externally to the feet.

f. Water. Dehydration leads to lethargy, which tends to reduce food intake resulting in less heat production.

10. INCREASING COLD TOLERANCE.

a. Frequent Feedings. A high carbohydrate diet is superior to a high protein diet in increasing tolerance to cold.

(1) Diets deficient in both calories and protein reduce physical work capacity in the cold. The provision of both components is required to maintain work capacity.

11. HIGH FAT DIETS AND SUSCEPTIBILITY TO FROSTBITE.

a. High fat diets consumed at frequent (2 hour) intervals, maintain body temperatures better than high carbohydrate diets, but not if normal (4 hour) intervals are observed between meals.

b. Fat enriched diets lead to a propensity toward increased arterial thrombosis and increased platelet aggregation, which translates into increased potential for thrombosis.

c. Frostbite injuries are associated with disruption of the microcirculation, progressive micro vascular thrombosis, alteration of platelet function, and fibrin deposition in affected areas.

d. Therefore, diets high in (saturated) fat may predispose to frostbite.

CAUTION! A high-fat diet is important in a high-altitude, cold-weather environment. The benefits associated with the high-energy source called Fat far outweigh the risks of arteriosclerosis from the diet itself. A high-fat diet is appropriate in this specific environment during the time frame of cold, high-altitude exposure. In garrison, at sea level, a high fat diet should be avoided in order to maintain a healthy lifestyle.

12. IRON DEFICIENCY AND THERMOREGULATION.

a. Iron deficiency results in 9% less heat production.

b. Consuming only 1/3 of the RDA for iron results in a 29% greater heat loss during cold exposure. "The furnace is going, but the windows are open" is a phrase that helps describe this effect.

c. Iron absorption is increased by consuming iron rich foods:

(1) Lean meat.

(2) Poultry.

(3) Beets.

(4) Beans.

(5) Green leafy vegetables.

(6) Fish.

(7) Vitamin C.

d. Bottom line, IRON improves the body's response to cold.

13. WATER REQUIREMENTS.

a. On average, water makes up about 60% of the one's entire body weight. The average sedentary person excretes about 2.7 quarts of water each day. Of this total, 1.3 quarts are lost in the urine, 1.1 quarts through the skin and lungs and 10 ounces in the stool.

b. At high altitude, and during strenuous exercise, the amount of water lost through the skin and lungs due to the cold, dry air increases greatly.

c. Cold weather decreases the sense of thirst, which may lead to a state of chronic, mild dehydration. At temperatures below freezing and at elevations above the snow line, the lack of liquid water and the time and effort required to melt snow compound the problem.

d. Prevention of excessive water loss: (FMST.07.01c)

(1) Force fluids. Drink 6-8 quarts of water daily.

(2) Observe for dark urine and other symptoms of dehydration. (Headache, nausea/vomiting, dizziness, constipation, etc.)

(3) Limit caffeine to 1-2 cups per day.

(4) Do not rely on thirst as an indicator of hydration status.

NOTE: Eating snow or ice will cause extreme inflammation of the mucous membranes of the mouth after two days. Warm canteens of water placed in your sleeping bag will give you water to drink in the morning. They will initially act as hot water bottles. (Place them upright, as they tend to leak ...keep bag dry.)

e. Health Problems Associated with Excessive Water Loss:

(1) Dehydration.

(2) Constipation.

(3) Hypothermia.

(4) Frostbite.

(5) Heat Exhaustion.

f. The importance of hydration is essential while in a cold weather environment. If these guidelines are followed then complications arising from poor hydration should be prevented.

14. **SPECIAL PURPOSE MILITARY RATIONS**.

RATION	APPLICATION
Ration, Cold Weather, RCW.	Cold weather operations where weight and freezing are a problem.
MRE Supplement Packet.	Cold weather calorie supplements for the MRE.
Ration, Light Weight, RLW.	Long range patrols, reconnaissance, and assault.
Nutrition Sustainment Module, NSM.	Calorie dense food, bar ration for mission lasting 3-5 days where soldier must carry his own food.

Family of Operational Rations, FOR.	Modular rations that allow an optimum mix of meals for tactical operations under all climatic conditions.

15. FIELD STRIPPING OF MRE'S.

a. Tips on how to conserve space and weight:

(1) Remove the entire contents from the plastic wrapper.

(2) Remove the cardboard, and all materials that you will not use.

(3) Be sure to place the toilet paper and other materials from the accessory pack either back in your pocket or into the brown packaging.

(4) Carefully repack the stripped meal back into the wrapper and seal with tape.

(5) Your meal will be half its original size and two-thirds its original weight.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

FMST.07.09
03/31/02

WILDERNESS PATIENT ASSESSMENT

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVE: Given a casualty in a cold weather environment and the necessary equipment and supplies, perform a patient assessment in a mountainous environment to determine the nature and extent of injury per the reference. (FMST.07.09)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES:

(1) Without the aid of references, from a given list, choose when CPR may be legally discontinued, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.09a)

(2) Without the aid of references and from a given list, choose which situations CPR may not be started in a remote wilderness environment, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.09b)

(3) Without the aid of references, in the proper sequence, correctly perform a patient assessment in the proper sequence in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.09c)

OUTLINE

1. INTRODUCTION.

a. An organized prioritized assessment of a wilderness trauma victim is essential to proper care. A modified Advanced Trauma Life Support (ATLS) assessment system will be introduced in this chapter.

2. TRIAGE.

a. Two situations of triage may exist in a wilderness environment.

(1) The number of patients and the severity of their injuries do not exceed the ability of the care-giver and his/her equipment to render care. In this situation, treat life-threatening problems first.

3

(2) The number of patients and the severity of their injuries exceed the capacity of the care-giver and his/her equipment to render care. In this situation, those with the greatest chance of survival are treated first

3. CPR: URBAN vs. WILDERNESS SPECIFICS.

a. In a remote wilderness situation where advanced life support assistance may be hours or days away, CPR probably has no chance of success. In addition, administering CPR under wilderness conditions may put group members in serious danger, due to physical hazards and the effects of exhaustion.

b. Based on the above, several suggestions regarding CPR in remote wilderness areas can be made. Even though the following suggestions seem reasonable, they should be viewed as recommendations, without legal force, and not doctrine. At the present time, a rescuer who begins CPR is legally obligated to continue unless or until one of the following conditions is fulfilled:

(1) CPR may be discontinued legally when: (FMST.07.09a)

(a) The patient revives.

(b) ACLS is started by higher authority.

(c) Relieved by another rescuer.

(d) Too exhausted to continue.

(e) Pronounced dead by proper authority.

(2) In a remote wilderness environment, CPR may not be started under one of the following situations: (FMST.07.09b)

(a) The patient is in cardiac arrest caused by trauma.

(b) The patient is a drowning victim who has been immersed for over an hour.

(c) The patient is in cardiac arrest and advanced life support is more than an hour away, especially if the patient must be carried out.

(d) The patient's cardiac arrest was unwitnessed and the time of onset is unknown.

(e) The patient appears to be dead, based on rigor mortis, lethal injuries, or a body temperature below 60°F.

(f) Giving CPR would be hazardous to rescuers.

(3) After 30 minutes of CPR with no signs of life, further CPR is probably useless and may reasonably be discontinued. Administering CPR to a victim who is being evacuated by litter or sled is very difficult, if not impossible. Unless an ambulance or helicopter can be brought in rapidly, chances of survival are slim.

(4) Exceptions include patients in cardiac arrest caused by hypothermia; patients with another illness or injury complicated by hypothermia (avalanche burial and near drowning in cold water), and patients in cardiac or respiratory arrest caused by lightning injury. In these cases, the outlook is probably more favorable and CPR should be aggressively administered.

4. **PATIENT ASSESSMENT** (FMST.07.09c). There are different considerations to think about in a wilderness setting. The environment plays a major role in treatment, care and even the extraction of the patient. Not only do we have to be mindful of the enemy situation, by keeping tactical. We also have to take into consideration the elements. Snow, rain ice, and the terrain can and will pose a great danger to the patient and the rescuers. We must protect the patient from the elements. We can do this by placing an insulating barrier between the patient and the ground. Also exposing one body part at a time and recovering as you move on will help to fight hypothermia.

A) SCENE SIZE-UP.

1) Determine scene safety:

a. Rescuers: Your safety is priority. You are no good to the team as a casualty.

b. Patient: Protect the patient from further injuries, enemy, and the elements.

c. Bystanders: They can cause many accidents. Limit the personnel on scene.

d. Tactical: Have the Marines maintain security and find cover for the rescuer and the patient.

e. Fire: Forest fires can pose a formidable threat.

f. Electrical: Make sure to shut off electricity first. Rushing in injures many rescuers.

g. Special Rescues: Swift water and high angle rescues are very dangerous and only trained professionals should attempt the rescue.

2) Determine the mechanism of injury / nature of illness:

a. Obtain SAMPLE and Mechanism of Injury (MOI) history from patient, witnesses, or other caregivers.

S = Signs and/or Symptoms.
A = Allergies.
M = Medications.
P = Past Illnesses.
L = Last Meal.
E = Events of Injury.

MOI = What, when, where, and how injury occurred.

b. Environment: Survey the area to get clues. (i.e. falling rocks, next to a cliff, broken branches, etc…)

c. Bystanders: Ask them what they saw.

3) Determine number of patients:

a. Survey area for number of patients.

b. Look for the hidden patients. Patients could be buried in rock, sand or snow. They also could be spread out in bushes and trees. One of the most over looked places is in the bystanders. Be sure to have people search and identify all patients.

4) Request additional help / Organize help if needed:

a. Medical assistance: Due to the lack of medical personnel and equipment, you might need to request additional help.

b. Technical assistance: When the scope of care is over your ability or higher than the casevac corpsman can provide, you should request higher trained personnel on the casevac bird.

c. Organize help at the scene: Use the people around you to help out.

5) Consider stabilization of the spine:

a. If indicated from: Falls of 10 feet or greater, high speed collisions, unwitnessed loss of consciousness, etc…

b. Designate an assistant: Use the bystanders / marines. Tell them exactly what you want them to do and show them how to do it.

c. Improvise control: If you are alone you can use the patient’s boots, sand bags, rocks, etc as forms of temporary control.

B) INITIAL ASSESSMENT.

1) Make general impressions of the patient: What can you obtain from the patient's condition as you walk up? Is the patient talking, or unconscious?

2) Determine responsiveness / level of consciousness.

a) Use AVPU.

b) Assess pupils for size, equality, and reactivity.

3) Determine chief complaint / Apparent life threats.

4) Assess Airway and breathing.

a) Assessment of airway.

- Perform chin lift or jaw thrust maneuver, with C-Spine precautions.
- Clear the airway of foreign bodies.
- Insert an oropharyngeal or nasopharyngeal airway.
- Use of other airways as needed, and as equipment and training allow.

b) Assessment of breathing.

- Expose the neck and chest, assure immobilization of the head and neck.
- Determine the rate and depth of respirations.
- Auscultate the chest bilaterally. (Ear to chest wall, if necessary)
- Check for symmetry. (Rise and fall of the chest)

c) Management.

- Ventilate. (Face-mask, bag-valve-mask, if available)
- Alleviate tension pneumothorax.
- Seal open pneumothorax.
- Administer high concentration oxygen, if available.

5) Assess Circulation.

a) Assess and control major bleeding.

- Identify and control major bleeding.
- Pulse: Quality, rate, and regularity.
- Pulse Pressure: Check radial, then carotid.
- Skin color: cyanosis, pallor and temperature.

b) Management.

- Insert two large bore IV's with saline locks. IV fluid replacement, if indicated.
- Place in shock position.
- Prevent hypothermia.

6) Identify priority patients and make transportation decisions.

a) Triage patients at this point.

b) Make transportation decisions. In this type of environment it is possible that a casevac vehicle might not gain access to your position. At this point you will have to organize how the patient will be transported out. Also, you might have to set up relay points and rewarming stations.

C) DETAILED PHYSICAL EXAM: This is the head to toe assessment. We will find and treat all secondary injuries at this time. When performing this exam in the wilderness, you will need to expose one body part at a time and cover it back up as you go. When assessing the patient, you are looking for deformities, contusions, abrasions, penetrations/punctures, bruising, tenderness, lacerations, and swelling (DCAP-BTLS).

1) Head.

a. Assessment.

- Inspect and palpate entire head and face for lacerations, contusions, and fractures.
- Re-evaluate pupils.
- Re-evaluate level of consciousness.
- Assess eyes for retinal hemorrhage, optic disc bulging, visual acuity disturbances, and contact lenses.
- Evaluate cranial nerve function.
- Inspect ears and nose for CSF leakage, hemorrhage
- Inspect mouth, tongue, and teeth.

b. Management.

- Maintain airway, continue ventilation, and oxygenate as indicated.
- Control hemorrhage.
- Prevent secondary brain injury.
- Remove Contact Lenses.

2) Assess the neck.

a. Assessment.

- Inspect for signs of blunt trauma, penetrating injuries, tracheal deviation, and use of accessory muscles during respiration, and jugular vein distention.
- Palpate for tenderness, deformity, swelling, or subcutaneous emphysema.

b. Management.

- Maintain open airway.
- Maintain immobilization and protection of cervical spine.
- Mark trachea.

3) Assess the chest.

3

a) Assessment.

- Inspect chest wall for signs of blunt trauma, penetrating injuries, and use of accessory muscles during respiration.

- Auscultate the chest wall and posterior bases for breath sounds.
- Auscultate for heart sounds.
- Palpate the entire chest wall for evidence of blunt trauma, penetrating injuries, flail chest, tenderness, crepitus, or subcutaneous emphysema.
- Percuss for hyperresonance or dullness.

c. Management.

- Needle thoracenthesis, if tension pneumothorax is suspected and proper training and equipment are present.
- Three-sided dressing for open chest wounds.
- Pericardiocentesis, if cardiac tamponade is suspected and proper training and equipment are present.

4) Abdomen.

a. Assessment.

- Inspect abdomen for signs of blunt trauma, penetrating injuries, and internal bleeding.
- Auscultate for the presence / absence of bowel sounds.
- Palpate the abdomen to elicit subtle tenderness, rebound, or guarding.

- Check pelvis for stability.

b b. Management.

c

- Correctly dress wounds.
- Keep patient NPO until definitive care is delivered.

5) Perineum / Rectum / Penis / Vagina.

d a) Assessment.

e

(1) Perineum.

- Contusions / hematomas.
- Lacerations.

(2) Rectum.

- Blood. Sphincter tone.
- High-riding prostate.

(3) Penis.

- Urethral bleeding.

(4) Vagina.

- Bleeding.
- Lacerations.

6) Musculoskeletal.

a) Assessment.

- Inspect extremities for evidence of blunt / penetrating injury. (deformities, altered range of motion).
- Palpate extremities for tenderness, crepitus, and abnormal movements.
- Palpate all pulses.
- Assess pelvis for stability. (Fractures) - Palpate spine for tenderness, crepitus, step-off's, depressions, and abnormal movements.

b) Management.

- Splint all suspected fractures in the position of function or comfort.

- Reduce dislocations as soon as possible, depending on training.
- Maintain immobilization and alignment of cervical, thoracic, and lumbar spine.

7) Reassess the vitals signs.

a) Assessment.

- Assess the vitals, pulse rate, breathing rate, pulse pressure.
- Re-evaluate the pupils and level of consciousness (GCS).
- Evaluate extremities for motor and sensory deficits.

b) Management.

- Maintain adequate immobilization of entire patient, as indicated.

5. **PATIENT PACKAGING AND EVACUATION.**

a. See the Mountain Casualty Evacuation chapter.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

FMST.07.13
03/30/02

STUDENT HANDOUT

HIGH-ALTITUDE ILLNESSES

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVE: Given a simulated casualty, in a high altitude wilderness environment, treat high altitude health problems, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.13)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES:

(1) Without the aid of references, select from a given list the definition of acute mountain sickness, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.13a)

(2) Without the aid of references, select from a given list the four main mechanisms of acute mountain sickness, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.13b)

(3) Without the aid of references, select from a given list the most common and prominent symptom of acute mountain sickness, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.13c)

(4) Without the aid of references, select from a given list the field management of acute mountain sickness, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.13d)

(5) Without the aid of references, select from a given list the seven high altitude health preventive measures, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.13e)

(6) Without the aid of references, select from a given list the correct definition of high altitude cerebral edema, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.13f)

(7) Without the aid of references, select from a given list the pathophysiology of high altitude cerebral edema, in accordance with the references. (WMC.6.4g)

4

(8) Without the aid of references, select from a given list five of the symptoms of high altitude cerebral edema, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.13h)

(9) Without the aid of references, select from a given list the field management of high altitude cerebral edema, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.13i)

(10) Without the aid of references, select from a given list the correct definition of high altitude pulmonary edema, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.13j)

(11) Without the aid of references, select from a given list three of the nine symptoms of high altitude pulmonary edema, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.13k)

(12) Without the aid of references, select from a given list the field management of high altitude pulmonary edema, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.13l)

(13) Without the aid of references, select from a given list choose the most important treatment for both high altitude cerebral edema and high altitude pulmonary edema, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.13m)

OUTLINE

1. ACCLIMATIZATION.

a. Successful acclimatization depends on three factors:

(1) Degree of hypoxic stress (i.e. altitude)

(2) Rate of onset of hypoxic stress (i.e. ascent rate)

(3) Individual Physiology (i.e. genetic differences between individuals)

b. Physiologic Changes:

(1) Respiratory - Hypoxic Ventilatory Response (HVR)

- Hypobaric hypoxia
- Triggers carotid body
- Central respiratory center stimulated
- Ventilatory rate increases

HVR can be measured:

- "High" leads to successful acclimatization and superior performance.
- "Low" tends to be found in victims of altitude illnesses.
- HVR can be influenced by depressants (ETOH) and stimulants. (caffeine), and progesterone.
- **May** be negatively influenced by physical conditioning.

(2) Respiratory – Fast response: minutes to hours

- HVR leads to increased Ventilatory rate.
- Increased ventilations "blows off' C02."
- Low C02 levels yield a respiratory alkalosis and rising pH.
- Elevation of pH feeds back to depress the central respiratory center.
- No further immediate rise in ventilatory rate (a brake is placed on any further increase in respiration.)

(3) Renal – Slower response: kidneys respond over the next 24 - 48 hours:

- Kidneys respond to alkalosis by inducing a bicarbonate diuresis.
- PH slowly declines - brake on central respiratory center eases.
- Respiratory rate gradually rises over 4 - 7 days to new baseline.
- Final respiratory rate is altitude dependent.

(4) Cardiovascular - changes are a result of increased sympathetic tone (due to hypoxia).

- Increased: Blood Pressure, venous tone and Cardiac output (increased heart rate and contractility.)
- Stroke Volume declines in first 1 - 3 days due to bicarbonate diuresis.
- Left ventricular pressures are normal, usually; therefore, wedge pressures are usually normal.

(5) Pulmonary Circulation - critical in understanding the pathophysiology of HAPE.

- Ascent results in global Hypoxic Pulmonary Vasoconstriction.
- Elevated Pulmonary Artery Pressure (PAP) occurs.
- Exertion at altitude worsens this Pulmonary Hypertension.
- Damage to pulmonary vascular endothelium leading to leaky capillaries.

(6) Cerebral Circulation - critical in understanding pathophysiology of HACE

- Hypoxia -----------Vasodilatation
- Hypocapnia ----------Vasoconstriction
- Hypoxia is the dominant influence and vasodilatation results.
- On average, Cerebral Blood Flow (CBF) increases 20-40% on ascent to 12.000ft.

(7) Hemopoietic Response

- Erythropoietin levels increase within hours of ascent.

- New immature Red Blood Cells (RBC) seen within days.
- New mature RBC's present within 4-10 days
- RBC mass increase seen over weeks to months (altitude dependent).
- Early changes due to hemoconcentration.
- Polycythemia is a potential danger – this can lead to a condition known as CMS, or Chronic Mountain sickness.

(8) Muscle Tissue

- Intramuscular capillary and mitochondrial density increases after three weeks exposure to altitude.

(9) Sleep Pattern

- Stage 1 increase, Stage 2 unaffected
- Stage 3 & 4 decreases
- Rapid Eye Movement (REM) decreases
- Arousals increase
- Periodic Breathing (Cheyne-Stokes).
    - Increased respiratory rate leads to respiratory alkalosis
    - Elevated pH depresses central respiratory center
    - Apnea
    - 02 saturation declines, C02 levels rise
    - Carotid body stimulated
    - Ventilatory rate rises

(10)Summary: Physiologic changes seen at altitude result from the body's responses to hypo baric hypoxia. It has been speculated that man would be limited to an 8000-foot elevation limit without supplemental oxygen if not for the acclimatization process. As Messner and Haebler demonstrated on Mt. Everest, the process of acclimatization enables man to explore the entire planet.

2. ACUTE MOUNTAIN SICKNESS (AMS).

a. Definition - AMS is an acute, self-limiting illness, which results when an unacclimatized individual ascends rapidly to high altitude. (FMST.07.13a)

(1) It is rare below 8,000 feet but will occur in approximately 42% of persons rapidly exposed to altitudes greater than 10,000 feet in elevation.

(2) Aerobic fitness is no predictor for risk of AMS with exposure to altitude. There is some evidence that prior aerobic fitness leads to increased AMS incidence, most likely due to excessively rapid ascent or over-exertion at altitude. Elite athletes may also be at increased risk due to depressed cardiovascular and Ventilatory responses to exertion.

(3) Prior ascents to altitude without symptoms of AMS are no guarantee against having symptoms of AMS with future ascents. However, those with past AMS are at an increased risk of AMS with repeat exposure to high altitude. Generally, there is no correlation between the severity of the illness and increasing altitudes. The incidence is slightly increased in younger persons.

(4) There is still much we do not know about altitude-induced physiologic changes. Current explanations in the literature center around genetic differences in hypoxic ventilatory response and vascular endothelium release of inflammatory mediators and Nitric Oxide.

b. Pathophysiology of AMS: The physiologic changes associated with the symptom complex known as AMS are linked to: (FMST.07.13b).

(1) Poor ventilatory response: An individual's Hypoxic Ventilatory Response (HVR) dictates how well he/she will respond to the hypobaric hypoxia of altitude. Those with a brisk HVR will do well, whereas those with a blunted response tend to suffer the symptoms of AMS. A poor ventilatory response leads to hypoxia and hypercapnia (elevated C02 levels). These two combine to augment cerebral blood flow by inducing cerebral vasodilatation.

(2) Fluid retention: The increased sympathetic tone associated with hypobaric hypoxia explains many of the changes seen in the renal system at altitude. Low Renal Blood Flow, increased anti-diuretic hormones, low Glomerular Filtration Rates, and decreased Urine Output all contribute to a Net Fluid Gain. This retained fluid redistributes within the body's fluid spaces. As a result, intravacular and extravascular fluid shifts occur, especially in the brain, lung, and peripheral interstitial tissues.

(3) Increased Intra-cranial Pressure: Increased cerebral blood flow coupled with CNS inflammation resulting in increased vascular permeability leads to increased intra-cranial pressure and associated symptoms.

(4) Altered Pulmonary Mechanics. On ascent to altitude, there is an increase in extravascular lung water. This is thought to be mediated, in part, by a phenomenon known as hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction. Blood vessels in the lungs constrict when they are exposed to low oxygen levels, this global vasoconstriction leads to increased right-sided heart pressures. The result of increased right-sided heart pressures causes fluid to leak from the vascular space into the alveoli, which results in impaired gas exchange. This has been demonstrated via Pulmonary Function Testing bronchoalveolar lavage, right sided-heart catheterization and arterial blood gas analysis showing decreased Vital Capacity, decreased Peak Expiratory Flows, pulmonary exudates rich in proteins and Increased Alveolar-Arterial oxygen Gradients. One study showed a 54% increase in estimated lung mass. It is not uncommon to hear crackles in all lung fields when auscultating asymptomatic individuals. The presence of intra-alveolar fluid inhibits the diffusion of oxygen

across the alveolar membrane, thereby reducing oxygenation across the pulmonary capillary membrane.

Signs and Symptoms of AMS. Symptoms tend to occur within the first 1- 3 days of exposure to altitude. Symptoms should resolve spontaneously within 15 - 24 hours, if ascent is arrested. The three most prominent symptoms are Headache, Nausea and Vomiting. (FMST.07.13c) Although nonspecific, headache must be present to make a diagnosis of AMS. 95% of AMS victims will complain of one or more of these three. Other common complaints include dizziness, anorexia, drowsiness, malaise, weakness, and insomnia. It is possible that findings of dyspnea on exertion and mental status changes along with ataxic gait may accompany the classic AMS signs and symptoms. These are clear indications for descent, as these are the hallmark signs of progression to HACE and the development of HAPE. Again, headache is the most common and prominent symptom of AMS. The Lake Louise Consensus criteria was created to give clinicians formal guidance in diagnosing AMS. The criteria require the presence of headache plus one or more symptoms from the above list. (i.e. nausea, vomiting, anorexia, insomnia, dizziness, fatigue, and dyspnea on exertion.)

c. Field Management (FMST.07.13d)

(1) Stop any further ascent. Light duty. No tobacco.

(2) Symptomatic Treatment. Mild analgesics such as Aspirin or Tylenol for the headache, Compazine or Phenergan for nausea/vomiting.

(3) Other Meds: Acetazolamide (Diamox), Dexamethasone (Decadron), and oxygen. The effects of Diamox and Decadron are additive when used together and are a very effective means for treating AMS.

(4) Hyperventilate: It is unrealistic to try to consciously control one's respiratory rate over any appreciable period of time. It is nearly impossible to maintain conscious hyperventilation while functioning in the field.

(5) Descend. If none of these methods help, then individuals should descend 1,000-3,000 feet. This will usually result in marked relief of symptoms. Most cases, however, improve in 1-2 days with symptomatic treatment.

(6) ALL PATIENTS WITH AMS MUST BE EVALUATED FOR HAPE AND HACE.

HOW?

- Field sobriety test.
- Mini-mental status exam.
- Auscultation of lung fields.

d. Preventive Measures: (FMST.07.13e)

(1) The best approach to high-altitude travel is staged, gradual ascent, when moving at altitudes greater than 3000 meters. Gradual ascent means no faster than 3000 ft/day up to 14,000 and no greater than 1,000 ft/day over 14,000 ft.

(2) Avoid any alcohol and/or sedatives during the first two nights.

(3) Maintain adequate fluid intake.

(4) Work high - Sleep low.

(5) High Carbohydrate Diet (approximately 70% of diet).

(6) Avoid overexertion, but remember that mild exercise assists acclimatization.

(7) No smoking.

(8) Pharmacological options: Prevention of AMS is possible with Acetazolamide (Diamox). It dramatically lowers the incidence of AMS when taken prophylactically. The usual dose is 125 mg PO BID starting 24-48 hours before ascent and should be continued for 3-4 days after the start of the mission. It is also effective when used as a treatment especially when combined with Decadron. In individuals with contraindications or allergies to Diamox use Decadron (dosed PO/IM/IV 4 mg Q6).

3. HIGH ALTITUDE CEREBRAL EDEMA (HACE).

a. Definition. HACE is a high-altitude illness characterized by swelling of the brain. (FMST.07.13f)

(1) HACE can occur as low as 8,000 feet, but typically occurs at more than 12,000 feet.

(2) HACE, considered by most, to be a progression of AMS, occurs as a failure to heed the warnings of AMS signs and symptoms and continue ascent.

b. Pathophysiology. Increased cerebral blood flow along with the fluid shifts mentioned above lead to vasogenic edema (leaky blood vessels) inside the confined space of the skull. It is also thought that inflammation plays a key role in the development of HACE and occurs as follows. Hypoxia triggers the release of inflammatory mediators (likely Transforming Growth Factor Beta, TGF-β and Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor, VEGF.) These mediators cause increased vascular permeability that result in fluid accumulation within the brain – edema and increased intracranial pressure. Once this pressure nears arterial pressure, cerebral blood flow will be impaired. Eventually, intra-cranial pressure will rise further with a concomitant increase in the risk of brain herniation leading to marked alterations in mental status, ataxia and even cranial nerve palsies. Increased CSF production further compounds the problem. (FMST.07.13g)

c. Differential Diagnosis: Other illnesses are possible in individuals ascending to altitude. Your differential should include the following when neurologic deficits are involved:

    (1) Cerebrovascular spasm and Transient Ischemic Attacks.

    (2) Cerebral vascular thromboembolic events.

    (3) Intra-cranial hemorrhage (aneurysm, AVM).

    (3) Hypothermia.

    (4) Meningitis

    (5) Encephalitis

    (6) "Hangover"

d. Signs and Symptoms:

    (1) Early signs and symptoms are those found in AMS. (i.e. H/A, NV)

    (2) When the above warning signs go unheeded the true signs and symptoms of HACE can quickly follow: (FMST.07.13h)

        (a) Ataxia (loss of muscle coordination leading to difficulty maintaining balance), especially prominent in the victim's gait.

        (b) Mental Status Changes, poor judgement, personality change which may progress to stupor, coma and death relatively rapidly without proper treatment.

        (c) Lassitude, confusion, hallucinations, convulsions, behavioral aberrations.

        (d) Paralysis of one or more extremities (see Differential Diagnosis).

    (3) The most important impediment to early recognition of HACE is its insidious onset. Early signs and symptoms frequently go unrecognized or are ignored by patients, as well as their companions, who also may be suffering to some degree from the effects of altitude.

e. Field Treatment (FMST.07.13i)

(1) Early recognition is the KEY. Look for Ataxia and Mental Status Changes.

(2) Treatment should be immediate since fatalities can occur within a few hours in severe cases.

(3) Once diagnosed, the patient should be placed in the most comfortable position possible, descent should be directed immediately and administration of high concentration O2 should be given, in route, if available.

(4) Decadron (early), 10mg PO/IM/IV followed by 4 mg Q6. Diamox can also be used 125-250 mg BID.

(5) Consider diuretics – use carefully.

(6) If loss of consciousness, think airway management and ABC's.

(7) Casevac to an advanced medical facility ASAP!

(8) A Gamow Bag can be a lifesaver if decent is not immediately possible. Perform 4-6 compressions per day each treatment should last 40-60 minutes.

NOTE: The Gamow Bag is a one-man portable hyperbaric chamber. It weighs 14.5 lbs., is operated by a foot-pump, and is made of nylon with an airtight zipper. With the HAPE or HACE victim inside, the bag is pressurized with the foot-pump to an internal pressure of 2 psi. This is the equivalent to a 5000 - 6000-foot descent in regards to the partial pressure of oxygen inside the bag. Air is circulated within the bag via the foot-pump. This can be a life-saving resource in the event a victim is caught at altitude and cannot descend due to weather or other uncontrollable variables.

f. Prevention

(1) Preventive measures are the same as those discussed for AMS.

(2) Decadron can be used as a prophylactic medication along with Diamox, in cases of unavoidable rapid ascent to extreme altitude. However one must continue this regimen, while at altitude, or face rapid onset of symptoms once the medication is stopped.

4. **HIGH ALTITUDE PULMONARY EDEMA (HAPE)**.

a. Definition. HAPE is a high-altitude illness that is characterized by filling of the lungs with edema fluid. (FMST.07.13j)

(1) HAPE rarely occurs below 12,000 feet.

(2) HAPE victims in the past were commonly described, after autopsy, as victims of "pneumonia" and "Inflammation of the lungs". Since 1960, medical science has had the technology to investigate the complexities of the physiological changes associated with hypobaric hypoxia.

(3) Incidence: Occurs in 1-2 % of people brought rapidly to 12,000ft.

(4) Commonly occurs within 2-4 days of ascent.

(5) Risk for developing HAPE remain the same as above:

- (a) Rate of ascent
- (b) Sleeping altitude
- (c) Level of exertion
- (d) Gender (M>F)
- (f) Individual physiology

b. Pathophysiology of HAPE:

(1) Hypoxic Pulmonary Vasoconstriction

- (a) Normal part of the acclimatization process (elevated PAP).
- (b) Adaptive at sea level (i.e. lobar pneumonia).
- (c) Maladaptive at altitude (global hypoxia).
- (d) Tends to be uneven, leading to high pressure/high flow area.

(2) Overperfusion

- (a) Localized areas exposed to high pressure and high flow.
- (b) Shearing forces and stress failure at the microvascular level.
- (c) Endothelial damage to capillaries leads to inflammatory response and increased vascular permeability.
- (d) Elevated hydrostatic pressure combined with increased vascular permeability leads to leakage of protein rich fluids into the alveoli and decreased oxygenation

(3) Nitric Oxide deficiency

Individuals prone to HAPE may have a deficiency in the amount of Nitric Oxide produced in the vascular endothelium resulting in more profound hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction.

c. Pathologic Findings of HAPE: Postmortem studies of victims of HAPE have yielded some interesting results:

    (1) Grossly, the lungs are congested and swollen, as seen with other causes of pulmonary edema. Average lung weight on autopsy is 2-4 times normal. Histologically, one sees pulmonary edema with a protein rich exudate filling the alveoli. It is also common to find the alveolar spaces filled with hyaline membranes.

    (2) The left heart is completely normal in appearance. However, the right ventricle, right atrium, and pulmonary arteries are distended and dilated.

    (3) Greater than 50% of HAPE victims are found to have evidence of HACE.

d. Signs and Symptoms. These tend to occur within 2-4 days of arrival at altitude. Usually the symptoms of AMS are present before or occur with the symptoms of HAPE. (FMST.07.13k)

    (1) Early signs:

        (a) Dry cough, frequently occurring at night.

        (b) Dyspnea on Exertion (DOE), especially with ambulation uphill.

        (c) Mild chest pain - usually perceived as an ache beneath the sternum.

        (d) Decreased work performance and increased recovery time between events.

        (e) Peripheral or Central Cyanosis.

    (2) Later signs:

        (a) Dyspnea at Rest.

        (b) Productive cough which yields large amounts of pink, frothy sputum.

        (c) Rapid pulse and respiratory rates.

        (d) Audible crackles on auscultation.

        (e) **Mental status changes**, **Ataxia**, Loss of Consciousness.

(f) CXR findings:

- Prominent pulmonary arteries.
- Normal heart size.
- Patchy infiltrates.

ECHO findings:

-Non-cardiogenic pulmonary edema -increased PAP
-Tricuspid regurgitation.
-Normal left ventricle
-Prominent pulmonary arteries -enlarged right atrium
-Enlarged right ventricle.

NOTE: Crackles heard on lung exam, as an isolated finding is NOT an indication for descent or grounds for the diagnosis of HAPE. It is common (up to 15% of climbers on Mt. Rainier) to find asymptomatic rales in climbers at altitudes of 10,000-12,000ft. Concern is heightened when crackles occur in constellation with other signs and symptoms.

e. Field Treatment (FMST.07.13l)

(1) The most important emergency care measure is immediate descent to a lower altitude, since fatalities can occur within 6-12 hours in severe cases.

(a) A descent of at least 2,000-3,000 feet can be a definitive treatment if the condition is caught early enough.

(2) The patient should be placed in the most comfortable position (usually sitting) and given **high-flow O2 if available**. It is important to minimize activity, as exertion increases pulmonary artery pressures. Remember oxygen is Lasix for the lungs.

(3) Medication regimens include:

(a) Nifedipine (10mg PO initially then 30mg SR Q12) – calcium channel blocker - pulmonary artery/arteriole dilator. SR=sustained relief.

(b) Diamox and Decadron may be appropriate regimens, depending on your medication availability.

(c) Morphine (5mg IV initially decreased PAP) as a last resort.

(4) Oxygen is always appropriate, however, it is not always available.

(5) Gamow Bag can be a lifesaver if decent is not immediately possible.

f. Prevention Measures. Preventive measures are the same as those discussed for AMS.

(1) Acetazolamide (Diamox) has been proven to be successful in the prevention of HAPE. 125 - 250 mg PO bid helps prevent HAPE in individuals with recurrent episodes.

(2) Nifedipine (30 mg SRq12h) - also effective in individuals with recurrent HAPE.

(3) It should be noted that a history of HAPE is NOT a contraindication to the individual participating in high-altitude activities. Each case should be evaluated individually.

NOTE: Remember decent is the most important treatment for both HACE and HAPE. (FMST.07.13m)

5. SYSTEMIC EDEMA AT HIGH ALTITUDES.

Occasionally, certain individuals, especially women, will develop edema of the face, hands, and feet at altitude. This edema usually tends to occur in the absence of other symptoms. In susceptible persons, repeat episodes are common. The edema goes away upon return to lower altitude. There is no need for descent in these cases because the patient is usually able to tolerate the edema and continues to function well. However, they should be examined carefully to rule out the presence of HAPE or HACE. Diuretics are usually not warranted. It is also probably reasonable to restrict salt intake. The only indication for descent is if the edema is causing functional disability, i.e. inability to don one's boots, or facial edema severe enough to restrict vision.

6. SICKLE CRISIS.

Persons with sickle cell trait are at risk for developing sickling attacks when exposed to hypoxic stress, as might occur at high altitudes. However, sickling can occur at lower elevations. Individuals with Mediterranean family ties should be considered at risk for having sickle cell trait. The trait is more likely in black individuals as well. Any patient complaining of Left Upper Quadrant pain, SOB, and/or arthralgia at altitude should have sickling crisis included in the differential diagnosis regardless of race. It has been known to occur in white females as well. It has been recommended by some that individuals with sickle cell trait should be restricted to an altitude of 8,000 feet and below. However, more liberal recommendations exist, suggesting that the individual and their symptoms dictate ultimate altitude.

7. ALTITUDE THROAT.

At higher altitudes, mouth breathing is often increased during exertion. Inhalation of this cold, dry air can result in drying of the mucous membranes in the throat and upper airway. This condition responds to humidified air, salt-water gargles or lozenges. If exudate or edema is present, throat culture and/or antibiotics may be warranted.

8. **HIGH ALTITUDE FLATUS EXPULSION HAFE).**

Ascent to altitude can result in rapid expansion of intestinal gas, due to the decreased pressure of altitude. This produces abdominal discomfort and the passage of colonic gas. This condition is not associated with serious consequences; however, it may create tension amongst tent-team members. Treatment consists of oral administration of anti-flatulence such as simethicone, Mylanta II, or Gaviscon. Know and avoid your gas producing foods!

9. **HIGH ALTITUDE RETINAL HEMORRHAGE.**

Up to 60% of individuals ascending to altitudes greater than 18,000 feet will develop asymptomatic retinal hemorrhages. On fundoscopic exam, there will be hyperemia of the disc and dilation and tortuosity of the vessels. "Flame" hemorrhages and "cotton wool spots" can be seen on exam. The only indication for descent in an individual with retinal hemorrhages is loss of visual acuity. This usually results when a large hemorrhage involves the macular region of the retina. Remember that Carbon Monoxide poisoning can present with retinal hemorrhage as well.

10. **THROMBOEMBOLIC EVENTS.**

Thromboembolic disease occurs with increased frequency at higher altitudes. It is believed that the common circumstances of volume depletion due to dehydration and Polycythemia due to altitude exposure predispose individuals to coagulopathic events. In addition, extended periods of inactivity due to “going to ground” during storms contribute to this predisposition. There does not seem to be any direct influence of hypobaric hypoxia on the body's normal coagulation system.

11. **ACETAZOLAMIDE.**

Acetazolamide (Diamox) is a Carbonic Anhydrate Inhibitor, which is especially active in the brain, the lung, and the kidney.

a. Kidney:

(1) Uptake of bicarbonate ion is inhibited.

(2) Bicarbonate diuresis is induced.

(3) Metabolic acidosis ensues within one hour of medication.

(4) Sequence mimics and accelerates the natural acclimatization process.

(5) Enhanced HVR is the end result.

(6) Diuresis addresses problems associated with fluid retention.

b. Brain:

(1) Direct effects at the level of the Central Respiratory Center.

(2) Diminishes periodic breathing during sleep.

(3) Fewer episodes of apnea and extreme hypoxemia.

(4) CSF production is inhibited and CSF absorption is enhanced.

c. Side Effects:

(1) Polyuria.

(2) Flattens taste of carbonated beverages.

(3) Peripheral paraesthesias, myopia, impotence, nausea, and drowsiness.

(4) Contraindicated for Sulfa Allergic and G6PD-deficient individuals (reversible when medication is discontinued.)

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

FMST.07.35
03/13/02

STUDENT HANDOUT

HEAT ILLNESSES

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVE: Given a casualty in a wilderness environment, and necessary equipment and supplies, manage common heat related injuries to prevent death or further injury per the reference (FMST.07.35)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES:

(1) Without the aid of references, given a list of heat illnesses match the definition to the correct condition, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.35a)

(2) Without the aid of references, select from a given list the correct field treatment for heat cramps, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.35b)

(3) Without the aid of references, select from a given list the correct field treatment for heat exhaustion, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.35c)

(4) Without the aid of references, select from a given list the correct field treatment for heat stroke, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.35d)

1. **CAUSES OF HEAT ILLNESSES**. Heat illness is caused by one of or a combination of the following factors:

a. Excessive environmental heat and humidity.

b. Faulty heat dissipation mechanisms within the body.

c. Stressed heat dissipation mechanisms.

d. Prolonged strenuous physical activity with inadequate fluid and electrolyte replacement.

2. **THERMOREGULATION**. The body is constantly adjusting itself in order to maintain its optimal temperature. This is called thermoregulation. A basic physics principle applies, in that heat is transferred from a higher to a lower temperature. What this means is that when the environmental temperature is higher than the skin temperature, the body gains heat, but when the environmental temperature is lower, the body loses heat. As a result, elevated environmental temperature adds to the heat burden of the body and can interfere with heat dissipation.

a. Heat Transfer Mechanisms. Keeping in mind the above principle we will now discuss the four methods of heat transfer.

   1) Conduction: This is heat exchange between two surfaces in direct contact. An example would be lying on a hot or cold surface.

   2) Convection: This is heat exchange from a surface to a gas or liquid, usually air or water. The amount of heat transferred depends on many variables, such as density, flow rate and surface area exposed.

   3) Radiation: This is heat transfer between the body and its surroundings. All matter either absorbs heat or emits thermal radiation. The sun emits heat and the body absorbs it. A interesting fact is that highly pigmented skin while protective against UV radiation absorbs about 20% more heat than lightly pigmented skin.

   4) Evaporation: This is the heat flow from the body surface to the environment by sweating.

b. If the body is unable to maintain thermal equilibrium by radiation, convection, and conduction and core temperature rises, sweating must occur to permit heat loss by vaporization of water. Since gastric emptying of water is about 1L/hr and sweat rates can exceed 1L/hr, a healthy diet along with constant replenishment of water lost is imperative to prevent illness.

3. **PREDISPOSING FACTORS**.

a. An underlying illness such as infection.

b. The temperature and humidity of previous days effect the likelihood of becoming a heat casualty.

c. Most heat illnesses occur during the morning hours.

d. Thirst is not an accurate indication of hydration; therefore you must drink even when you don't feel thirsty.

e. People usually do not voluntarily drink as much water as they lose.

f. All persons in the heat should be considered dehydrated, unless they have been forced to drink more than they desired.

4. **PREVENTIVE MEASURES**.

   a. Drink 6-8 qts every day to replace fluids lost by sweating or from other bodily functions.

   b. Consumption of a solute rich meal or a fluid replacement beverage about 2 hours before exercise can potentially counteract the sweat/salt losses.

5. **EARLY SIGNS OF HEAT RELATED ILLENSSES**. Changes in cognitive functions appear to occur frequently prior to the physical symptoms of heat illnesses. It is therefore imperative that medical personnel and leaders watch for confusion and impaired ability to function or work in the members of their group.

6. **SPECIFIC HEAT RELATED ILLNESSES**.

   a. Heat Induced Syncope. (FMST.07.35a) This event is caused by the gravitational displacement of blood into the legs of an upright and stationary person combined with hemodynamic displacement of blood into peripheral circulation to support heat transfer at the body surface.

      1) Prodromal symptoms.

         (A) Restlessness

         (B) Sighing

         (C) Dysphoria

         (D) Nausea

         (E) Yawning

      2) Treatment.

         (A) The fainting is usually brief and responds to horizontal positioning.

         (B) Rest in a cool, shaded area.

         (C) Oral fluids.

         (D) Persons should be cautioned against standing in hot environments and advised to flex leg muscles repeatedly while standing still to enhance venous return and warned to sit or lie down if warning signs reappear.

   b. Heat Cramps. These are painful spasms of muscles, caused by sweating resulting in excessive loss of body salt. Generally, the spasms involve voluntary skeletal muscle subjected to prior exertion. This can occur even if a person is replacing water loss, but not salt losses.

1) Precipitating Factors: Cramps are preceded by several hours of sustained effort, combining heavy sweating in hot surroundings, with the ingestion of large volumes of water.

2) Symptoms: Painful muscle cramps in the arms, legs, and abdomen.

3) Treatment: (FMST.07.35b)

    (A) Rest in a cool, shaded area.

    (B) Gentle massage of affected muscles (may relieve spasms) or place the affected muscle in a stretch.

    (C) Generally, heat cramps respond quickly to salt solutions.

        1.) 1/4 to 1/2 teaspoon of salt in a quart of water (sip).

        2.) In severe cases IV isotonic saline 0.9% NaCL.

NOTE: Salt tablets are not recommended due to the gastric irritation they cause.

c. Heat Exhaustion. This occurs when body salt losses and dehydration from sweating are so severe that a person can no longer maintain adequate blood pressure. It tends to develop over several days, that present ample opportunity exists for electrolyte and water imbalances to occur. Some 20% of cases are found to also have some form of gastroenteritis. Additionally, 60% of heat exhaustion casualties will also have symptoms of heat cramps.

1) Problems in recognition.

    (A) Early signs may go unrecognized or be mistaken for malingering.

    (B) Headache and visual disturbances may mimic prodromal of migraine headache.

    (C) Dizziness and syncope may lead to an evaluation for arrythmia.

    (D) Chills, ^ temperature, and sweating may lead to an evaluation for infection.

    (E) Altered mental status or ataxia may lead to an evaluation for Meningitis or high altitude medical problem.

2. Symptoms:

(A) Headache

(B) Fatigue

(C) Piloerection

(D) Nausea/Vomiting

(E) Profuse sweating

(F) Dizziness

(G) Hyperirritability, Anxiety

(H) Chills

(I) Heat cramps

3. Clinical Findings:

(A) Tachycardia

(B) Hypotension

(C) Core temperature may be normal or elevated. Spontaneous cooling may occur, usually with profuse sweating. This will not happen with Heat stroke.

(D) Hyperventilation

(E) Syncope

(4) Treatment is based on symptoms and focuses on reduction of body temperature and rehydration. (FMST.07.35c)

(A) Lay down in a cool, shaded area.

(B) If body temperature is elevated, lower by any means available.

(C) Sprinkling with water and fanning.

(D) Ice bags over superficial great vessels and fanning.

(E) Periodic toweling of the skin renews the evaporative process.

(F) If patient is alert, orally rehydrate with cool water or commercially available rehydration mixture. Goal is 2L over 1st 2 hours.

(G) If patient is not alert, rehydrate via IV with LR.

(H) Victim must rest and continue to be rehydrated over next 24 to 36 hours.

d. Heatstroke (Hyperthermia). " A true medical emergency". This is a failure of the body's cooling mechanisms that rid the body of excessive heat build-up. Prior to 1950 the mortality rate was 40 to 75%. Long term survival of victims is directly related to the speed of effective treatment measures. Traditionally, the diagnosis of Heatstroke required the following 3 signs: a core temperature > 104°F(41°C), altered mental status, and cessation of sweating. Although, this symptom complex does represent full-blown Heatstroke adherence to this strict criteria may delay critical interventions. Unless an alternative etiology is obvious, the previously healthy person who collapses after physical exertion in hot weather should be considered to have exertional Heatstroke. Treat for Heatstroke whenever you suspect it and always suspect it in the heat.

1. Symptoms:

   (A) Headache
   (B) Shortness of breath
   (C) Nausea/ vomiting
   (D) Low BP
   (E) Skin may be wet or dry
   (F) Constricted pupils
   (G) Seizures
   (H) Dry mouth
   (I) Core temp > 104°F (41°C)
   (J) Weakness/ dizziness
   (K) Hot, red skin
   (L) Tachycardia
   (M) Confusion, Aggression, Combative
   (N) Coma

2. Clinical Findings.

   (A) CNS: altered mental status, agitation, ataxia, delirium, hallucinations, convulsions, seizures, coma, pupillary constriction.

   (B) Cardiovascular: hypotension (a late and ominous finding), shock, sinus tachycardia with ST segment & T wave abnormalities.

   (C) Pulmonary: hyperventilation, pulmonary edema.

   (D) Renal: acute renal failure, hematuria, pyuria, proteinuria, UA casts.

   (E) Gastrointestinal: nausea, vomiting, +/- disseminated intravascular coagulation, hematemesis, melena.

   (F) Hematologic: WBC 20-30 thousand, < platelets, < clotting factors.

   (G) Hepatic: increased liver function tests.

3. Emergency Treatment. (FMST.07.35d)

(A) Rapid reduction of body core temperature by any means available until core temperature is 102°F.

1) Ice water bath (controversial).
2) Cool water bath.
3) Pouring or hosing cool water over victim and fanning.
4) Placing ice bags at neck, armpits, groin, forehead, chest etc..

(B) Maintain ABC's.

(C) Monitor core temperature.

(D) IV access infuses RL or normal saline 500cc/hr x 4hrs. (watch for pulmonary edema).

(E) Control seizures with valium.

(F) Transport STAT. Cool enroute.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

FMST.07.15
04/01/02

STUDENT HANDOUT

COMBAT CASUALTY CARE

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVE: Given a simulated casualty in a simulated combat environment, treat the casualty in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.15)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES:

(1) Without the aid of references, choose from a given list the three correct phases of care of tactical casualty management, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.15a)

(2) Without the aid of references, given a simulated casualty and the necessary equipment, conduct combat casualty care, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.15b)

OUTLINE

1. Summary of Findings and Recommendations.

a. Pre-hospital care of combat casualties is divided into three phases: (FMST.07.15a)
    1. Care under Fire.
    2. Tactical Field Care
    3. Combat Casualty Evacuation (CASEVAC) Care.

b. Suppression of hostile fire may take temporary precedence over the rendering of care in the Care under Fire phase.

c. Cervical spine immobilization is not required for victims of penetrating head or neck trauma.

d. CPR should not be attempted on the battlefield for victims of blast or penetrating trauma who have no pulse, respirations, or other signs of life.

e. The use of tourniquets is encouraged in the Care under Fire phase. The tourniquet is removed and bleeding controlled with direct pressure in subsequent phases when feasible.

f. The nasopharyngeal airway is the airway of first choice for unconscious patients until the CASEVAC phase.

g. For patients with airway obstruction in the Tactical Field Care phase unrelieved by a nasopharyneal airway, the next airway maneuver is cricothyroidotomy.

h. Endotracheal intubation is not the standard of care until the CASEVAC phase.

i. Evaluation of the laryngeal mask airway and the Combitube for use by SOF corpsmen and medics is recommended.

j. Progressive, severe respiratory distress in the setting of unilateral blunt or penetrating chest trauma on the battlefield should result in a presumptive diagnosis of tension pneumothorax and decompression of that hemithorax with needle thoracostomy.

k. Chest tube insertion is not indicated until the CASEVAC phase of care.

l. Oxygen is not expected to be carried onto the battlefield, but CASEVAC assets should have it.

m. No IV fluids are to be given until the CASEVAC phase unless the patient is in hypovolemic shock from a bleeding site which has now been controlled. Fluid resuscitation is not necessary for patients who are not in shock and not appropriate for patients in hypovolemic shock from uncontrolled hemorrhage (penetrating wounds of the chest and abdomen).

n. Saline locks may be used instead of IV's if fluid resuscitation is not required.

o. 18 gauge catheters may be used instead of 14 or 16 gauge.

p. Hespan (1000cc) is the fluid of choice for initial resuscitation of patients with controlled hemorrhagic shock.

q. Morphine is to be used IV (5mg) instead of IM.

r. IV cefoxitin is to be used as soon as possible for patients with penetrating abdominal trauma, grossly contaminated wounds, massive soft tissue trauma, open fractures, or any patient in whom a long delay until definitive treatment is expected.

s. Casualties should not be completely undressed for a secondary survey in the field. Removal of clothing should be limited to that necessary to expose known or suspected wounds.

t. More specific combat casualty care planning should be carried out and based on specific mission-oriented scenarios.

u. The establishment of Combat Casualty Transport Teams and their use on CASEVAC assets is recommended.

v. Electronic monitoring should be routinely used on CASEVAC assets unless conditions prohibit.

w. MAST trousers are not recommended as a standard of care in any phase.

2. Phases of Care:

   a. Phase One: Care Under Fire

      1. Return fire as directed or required.

      2. Keep yourself from getting shot.

      3. Try to keep the casualty from sustaining additional wounds.

      4. Stop any massive external hemorrhage with a tourniquet.

      5. Take the casualty with you when you leave.

   b. Phase Two: Tactical Field Care

      1. Airway management

         - Unconscious casualty without airway obstruction: > Nasopharyngeal airway.

         - Unconscious casualty with airway obstruction: > Cricothyroidotomy.

         - Cervical spine immobilization is not necessary for casualties with penetrating head or neck trauma.

      2. Breathing

         - Consider tension pneumothorax and decompress with needle thoracostomy if a casualty has unilateral penetrating chest trauma and progressive respiratory disstress.

      3. Bleeding

         - Control any remaining bleeding with a tourniquet or direct pressure.

4. IV

   - Start an 18 gauge IV or saline lock.

5. Fluid Resuscitation

   - Controlled hemorrhage without shock: > No fluids necessary.

   - Controlled hemorrhage with shock: > Hespan 1000cc

   - Uncontrolled (infra-abdominal or thoracic) hemorrhage: > No IV fluid resuscitation.

6. Inspect and dress wound.

7. Check for additional wounds.

8. Analgesia as necessary: > Morphine (5mg) IV, wait 5minutes, repeat as necessary.

9. Splint fractures and recheck pulses.

10. Antibiotics

    Cefoxitin 2gm slow IV push (over 3-5 minutes) for penetrating abdominal trauma, grossly contaminated wounds, massive soft tissue trauma, open fractures, or any patient in whom a long delay until CASEVAC or definitive treatment is expected.

11. Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation

    CPR on the battlefield for victims of blast or penetrating trauma who have no pulse, no respirations, and no other signs of life will not be successful if attempted.

c. Phase Three: Combat Casualty Evacuation (CASEVAC) Care

1. Airway management

   Unconscious casualty without airway obstruction: > Nasopharyngeal airway, endotracheal intubation, Combitube or laryngeal mask airway.

   Unconscious casualty with airway obstruction: > Cricothyroidotomy if endotracheal intubation and/or other airway devices are unsuccessful.

2. Breathing

Consider tension pneumothorax or hemothorax and decompress with needle thoracostomy if a casualty has unilateral penetrating chest trauma and progressive respiratory distress.

Consider chest tube insertion if a suspected tension pneumothorax is not relieved by needle thoracostomy

Oxygen.

3. Bleeding

Consider removing tourniquets and using direct pressure to control bleeding if possible.

4. IV

Start an 18 gauge IV or saline lock if not already done.

5. Fluid resuscitation

No hemorrhage or controlled hemorrhage without shock: > Lactated Ringer's at 250cc/hr.

Controlled hemorrhage with shock: > Hespan 1000cc initially.

Uncontrolled (infra-abdominal or thoracic) hemorrhage: > No IV fluid resuscitation.

Head Wound patient: > Hespan at KVO unless there is concurrent controlled hemorrhagic shock.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

FMST.07.37
04/01/02

STUDENT HANDOUT

BURN MANAGEMENT

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVE. Given a casualty in a wilderness environment, and necessary equipment and supplies, treat burn injuries to prevent death or further injury per the reference. (FMST.07.37)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES

1. Without the aid of references, given a list of the depths and appearances of burns, match them to the type of burn, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.37a)

2. Without the aid of references, given a list choose the major burns that require rapid casualty evacuation, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.37b)

3. Without the aid of references, given a list choose the first step in the treatment of burn injuries, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.37c)

OUTLINE

1. **GENERAL:** Each year there are about 2 million individuals burned severely enough to seek medical attention. Around 70,000 require hospitalization. Deaths are on the decrease largely due to the increase in the use of smoke detectors. It has been estimated that 90% of all burn injuries are preventable. Children and young adults are frequently affected by burn injuries.

2. **PHYSIOLOGY:** For non-chemical burns, the primary events of injury occur during the time of heat contact. Coagulation necrosis takes place within cells and denaturation of collagen in the dermis. Blood vessels are completely destroyed or endothelium damage is severe enough to cause clotting which leads to ischemic necrosis of remaining viable cells. Burn wounds are not static. Surrounding the "coagulation zone" is a zone of capillary and small vessel stasis. Circulation becomes stagnant from a strip formed by red blood cells, and aggregation of platelets and white blood cells. The fate of the burn wound depends on the progression of this zone of stasis.

7

3. In patients with burns less than 10% of the total body surface area (TBSA), the inflammatory process is generally limited to the burn site itself. As burns approach 20% TBSA, the local

response becomes systemic. Burns of 30% TBSA or greater, often lead to multiple organ system failure, which in a patient with a severe burn almost invariably leads to a fatal outcome, often due to acute renal failure.

Cardiovascular changes begin immediately after a burn. The degree of these changes depends initially on the size of the burn and to a lesser extent the depth of the burn. Burns less than 15% TBSA can be fluid resuscitated with crystalloid fluids. As burns pass 20% TBSA, massive shifts of fluid and electrolytes occurs. This results in massive fluid shift from the intravascular to the extravascular space. Unless intravascular volume is repleted, classic hypovolemic shock occurs.

3. **TYPES OF BURNS**

a. Scald Burns: Scalding is the most common cause of burns, usually resulting from hot water. Water at 140°F creates a deep partial-thickness or full-thickness burn in three seconds. At 156°F the same burn occurs in one second. Freshly brewed coffee is generally about 180°F. Boiling water always causes a deep burn. Soups and sauces are thicker, remaining in contact with the skin longer. Exposed areas tend to burn less deeply than areas covered with a thin layer of clothes. Clothing retains heat and keeps liquid in contact with the skin longer. Immersion scalds are deep and cause severe burns resulting from longer contact time. These burns are more common in children and elderly patients because of their thin skin. Burns from hot oils are generally deep partial-thickness or full-thickness. Temperatures for cooking oils reach around 400°F, and tar can be up to 500°F.

b. Flame Burns: The next most common burn injuries are flame burns. Although household injuries have gone down with the advent of smoke detectors, a high number of burn injuries still occur from careless smoking, improper use of flammable liquids, automobile accidents, and clothing ignited from stoves or space heaters.

c. Flash Burns: Flash burns result from intense heat for a brief time caused by explosions of natural gas, propane, gasoline, and other flammable liquids.

d. Contact Burns: These burns usually result from direct contact of hot metals, plastics, glass, or coals. Contact burns are usually limited in size, but are deep wounds. With the increase of wood stove usage, this type of burn injury is on the rise in children. Contact burns, dealing with an unconscious patient or involving molten materials, are usually fourth degree. The most common contact burn in the wilderness is from hot coals.

e. Electrical Burns: Electrical burns are actually thermal burns from very high-intensity heat. When electricity encounters resistance from the body it turns into heat. Severity of the burn depends on the portion of the body affected relative to the amperage. The smaller the body part, the more intense the heat is, and the part is less able to dissipate the heat. Consequently the fingers and toes are almost always destroyed with severe damage to the foreams. Larger areas can dissipate the current enough to prevent extensive damage. Arc burns take the most direct route, not the path of least resistance. These are deep and destuctive burns which mostly occur at the joints.

Electrical burns may have other associated injuries that should not be overlooked on the initial assessment. Fall related injuries are common. The intense muscle contraction resulting from electrocution can cause fractures of the lumbar vertebrae, humerus, or femur, and also may cause dislocation of the hips and shoulders. The casualty may have cardiac symptoms of a myocardial contusion or infarction. There can be a conduction system failure or an actual rupture of the heart wall. If there are no signs present of cardiac problems intially after a shock of 110 or 220 volts there is a minute chance they will appear later. Nervous system damage is possible whenever a current passes from one side of the body to the other more than likely affecting the spinal cord.

f. Chemical Burns: Usually caused by strong acids or alkalis and are most often the result of industrial accidents, home use of drain cleaners, assault, and improper use of harsh solvents. Chemical burns continue to burn until they are inactivated by reaction with tissue or dilution by flushing with water. Acids tend to tan the skin, creating an impermeable barrier that limits futher penetration. Alkalis combine with cutaneous lipids and saponify[1] the skin until they are neutralized. The appearance of the wound can be misleading. Unless the observer can be 100% sure, all chemical burns should be considered full thickness.

g. NBC Burns: Nuclear weapons cause burns in two ways: by direct absorption of thermal radiation through exposed surfaces (flash burns); or by the indirect action of fires caused by the weapon (flash burns). The first step in treatment is to prevent contamination to the rescuers and other patients.Vesicants such as mustard gas cause skin burns with edema and blister formation. Burns resulting from vesicants should be flushed with copious amounts of water. Absorbent powder (flour, talcum powder, Fuller's earth) can be used if water is scarce. The powders should be wiped away with a moist towel. The military uses M258A1 kits for skin decontamination. White Phosphorus ignites spontaneously when exposed to air. Remove the air with an air-tight seal; mud is optional. A brief rinse with 1% copper sulfate[2] will impead further oxidation.

4. **CLINICAL PRESENTATION:** The severity of the burn injury is related to the size of the burn, the depth of the burn, and the part of the body that is burned.

a. Burn Size: Burns are the only quantifiable form of trauma. The burn size is the single most important factor in predicting mortality, need for specialized care, and the complications expected from the burn. We can measure burn size with the "rule of nines". The "rule of nines" is where areas of the body represent approximately 9% of a person's total body surface area (TBSA), each leg 18% (the front of the leg 9%, and the back of the leg 9%), the front of the torso represents 18%, the back of the trunk is 18%, the head represents 9%, and the perineum 1%. For infants and small children under four years of age, the head represents a larger percentage 18%, and the legs a smaller percentage 13%, each arm 9%, front troso 13%, back troso 13%, and the perineum 1%. The percentage of the burn area and that of the unburned area need to add up to equal 100%. For smaller burn areas, use the Rule of Palmar Surface: the patient's palmar surface equals about 1% TBSA.

---

[1] Saponify: to convert fat into soap by treating it with an alkali.

[2] Navy uses sodium bicarbonate instead of copper sulfate

b. Burn Depth: The depth of the burn is either described in degree: first, second, third or fourth, or by the depth of the injury. The following describes burns in terms of partial-thickness or full-thickness. While these descriptions appear to separate burns into defined categories, many burns have a mixture of characteristics making a precise diagnosis difficult.

(1) First-Degree: These burns involve the epidermis only and do not blister. They are most commonly caused by ultraviolet light. An example would be a sunburn. The burned skin is painful and red. It should heal in 7 days without scarring.

(2) Superficial Second-Degree, or Superficial Partial-Thickness: These burns include the epidermis and upper layers of the dermis. They characteristically form blisters, under which the skin is red and moist, these burns are painful to the touch. Blisters can take up to two days to appear. These burns are usually caused by hot liquids. Wounds should heal in 14 to 21 days; they may scar depending on the extent of the burn.

(3) Deep Second-Degree, or Deep Partial-Thickness: Burns that involve deeper layers of the dermis. There is damage to hair follicles and sweat glands. They are characterized with a molted pink and white color with blisters forming immediately. These wounds may be less sensitive to touch than the surrounding normal skin, or maybe tender to touch. The patient often complains of discomfort rather than pain. Capillary refill may be slow or absent, when pressure is applied to the wound. These burns are caused by hot liquids, oil, steam, or flame. They may be difficult to distinguish from Third-Degree/Full-Thickness burns. Healing takes 3-9 weeks. Scarring is probable, the degree is related to the amount and the depth of dermal injury. Surgical grafting may be required.

(4) Third-Degree, or Full-Thickness: Involves the entire thickness of the skin, epidermis through the dermis, down to subcutaneous fat. All structures of the epidermis and dermis are destroyed. The wound is classically described as leathery, firm, and depressed when compared to normal skin. The tissue is charred, pale, and insensitive to light and touch. It is often misdiagnosed as a Deep Second-Degree/Deep Partial-Thickness due to the similar clinical findings. This burn will not spontaneously heal. Surgical repair and/or skin grafts are necessary. There is significant scarring.

(5) Fourth-Degree: These burns involve all layers of the skin, subcutaneous fat, muscle, and bone. These are devastating, life threatening injuries. They almost always have a charred appearance, and often only the cause of the burn gives a clue to the amount of underlying tissue destruction. (FMST.07.37a)

c. Burn Classification: The American Burn Association has devised a classification of burns, dividing them into major, moderate, and minor burns. Patients are placed in groups related to their risk. Low-risk patients are between the ages of 10 and 50 years old. High-risk patients are less than 10 and greater than 50 years old. Poor-risk are patients with underlying medical illnesses such as heart disease, diabetes, or chronic pulmonary problems.

(1) Minor Burns: Imply outpatient treatment. Minor burns involve TBSA of less than 15% in the low-risk group, or less than 10% TBSA in the high-risk group; full-thickness burns of less than 2% TBSA in anyone; and no other injuries.

(2) Moderate Burns: Are partial-thickness burns of 15-25% TBSA in the low-risk group, 10-20% TBSA in the high-risk group; full-thickness burns of equal to or less than 10% TBSA in anyone; burns not involving the hands, face, feet, perineum, or circumferential limbs.

(3) Major Burns: Defined as partial-thickness burns greater than 25% TBSA in the low-risk group, or greater than 20% TBSA in the high risk group; full-thickness burns of greater than 10% TBSA in anyone; burns involving the hands, face, feet, or perineum; burns crossing major joints; circumferential limb burns; burns complicated by inhalation injury; electrical burns; burns complicated by fractures or other forms of trauma; and burns in poor-risk patients. These burns require rapid casualty evacuation. (FMST.07.37b)

5. TREATMENT:

a. Initial Care:

(1) The first step in the treatment of burn injuries is to stop the burning process. (FMST.07.37c) Remove patients from heat, remove all their clothes that are affected by hot liquids, shut off electricity (very important), remove chemicals by flushing the affected area for 10 to 15 minutes, and decontamination of NBC. Heat can continue to injure tissue for a surprisingly long time. No first aid will be effective until the burning process has stopped.

(2) Manage the ABC's. Once an airway has been established give oxygen. If qualified, consider intubation earlier rather than later.

(3) Assess for associated injuries such as fractures or lacerations and inhalation injury.

(4) Remove clothing and jewelry from the burn area. This will help prevent constriction from swelling of the burn tissue. Do not try to remove anything that has adhered to the wound.

(5) Evaluate the Burn (depth, extent, pain).

b. General Treatment for the Patient:

(1) Gently wash the burn with tepid water and mild soap to remove any debris and to clean the skin surface around the burn site. Pat dry. Remove the skin from blisters that have popped open (do not open blisters unless necessary for function of hands or feet).

(2) Dress burn with a thin layer of antibiotic ointment.

(3) Cover the burn with Second Skin (if the burn is small enough) or cover with a thin layer of gauze, or clean, dry clothing. Burns on the face, neck and hands may be left open to the air after applying silvadene ointment. Covering the wound reduces pain and evaporative losses, but do not use an occlusive dressing.

(4) When evacuation is imminent, do not redress or reexamine the injury. If evacuation is prolonged, redress once a day. Remove old dressings, reclean (removing the old ointment), and apply fresh ointment and a clean dry covering. (Note: if stuck, soak off old dressings with clean, tepid water.)

(5) Do not pack wounds, which are larger than 20% of the body surface area, in ice. Do not leave wet coverings on burns for more than two hours at a time to reduce the risk of hypothermia.

(6) Stabilize the body temperature. When skin is lost, so is the patient's ability to thermoregulate.

(7) Have the patient drink as much fluid as he or she can tolerate without vomiting. Include some salt in the oral fluids, but do not make these solutions stronger than . 9%. This is the equivalent of a pinch of salt per 8 ounce glass.

(8) IV therapy as follows, Baxters (Parkland) Formula: In the first 24 hours give Ringers Lactate, 4ml times the weight in kilograms times the percent TBSA burned. Half of the solution is given in the first eight hours. The second half is given over the next 16 hours. The second 24 hours should be given fluids to maintain blood pressure, colloids (usually in the form of albumin) are the preferred choice.

4 x wt (kg) x TBSA= amount LR given in the first 24 hours

Example a 70kg patient with 50% TBSA this is the formula for IV therapy for the first 24 hours.

4 x 70kg x 50% = 14,000ml in 1ST 24 hours
7,000ml hours 1-8
3,500ml hours 9-16
3,500ml hours 17-24

c. General Management of the Burn: Caring for the wound itself is often the least important aspect of burn care. All burn wounds are sterile for the first 24 to 48 hours. Burn management is aimed at keeping the wound clean and reducing the pain.

(1) Elevate burned extremities to minimize swelling. Swelling retards healing and encourages infection. Have the patient gently and regularly move burned areas as much as possible.

(2) Burns are tetanus-prone wounds. Check on the last known tetanus shot. The patient may need a renewal.

(3) Ibuprofen is probably the best over the counter analgesic for burn pain (including sunburn).

(4) If you have no ointment or dressings, leave the burn alone. The burn's surface will dry into a scab like covering that provides a significant amount of protection.

6. **INHALATION INJURIES:** Half of all fire-related deaths are from smoke inhalation. Smoke inhalation doubles the mortality rate for any burn. Smoke inhalation is a general term for carbon monoxide poisoning, thermal airway injury, and smoke poisoning.

a. Carbon Monoxide Poisoning: Carbon monoxide (CO) is a colorless, odorless, tasteless gas that has an affinity for hemoglobin 200 times greater than that of oxygen. Carboxyhemoglobin (COHb) levels are measured as the percentage of hemoglobin bound to carbon monoxide. The following COHb levels correlate with clinical symptoms:

<10%	No symptoms
20%	Headache, nausea, vomiting, loss of dexterity
30%	Confusion, lethargy, ECG ST depression
40%	Coma
50%	Death

The half-life of COHb is 4 to 5 hours at room air, 90 minutes with 100% oxygen, and 20 to 25 minutes at 3 ata in a hyperbaric chamber. Treatment for less than 40% COHb is a 100% oxygen. At 40% or greater the hyperbaric chamber should be used. If patient is still in a coma after COHb levels are normal, prognosis is poor, and it has been experience that they rarely awaken.

b. Thermal Airway Injury: Injury to the respiratory tract from inhalation of hot gas or steam. The lower respiratory tract is usually not damaged, unless there was an inhalation of flame or steam. Any patients who were in an explosion, with burns of the hands, face, and upper torso are at risk. Signs of carbon such as soot in the pharnyx should alert the caregiver to airway injury. Maintaining the airway is the important issue here.

c. Smoke Poisoning: Is the inhalation of noxious gases that are the products of combustion. Cyanide poisoning is known to occur in victims of smoke inhalation. Other toxic gases released are sulfur dioxide, hydrogen chloride, phosgene, and ammonia. These gases cause damage to the respiratory tract similar to chemical burns. Physical signs include facial burns, intraoral or pharyngeal burns, singed nasal hairs, soot in mouth or nose, hoarseness, carbonaceous sputum, and expiratory wheezing.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS

! ! "

STUDENT HANDOUT

TRIAGE

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVE# $ % & ' (& &
) && % ' (& & ((( ) * * (&
+ ,

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES#

, * * (& ' % & (* &)* (' &
- & ((( ) * * (& + ,

", * * (& ' % & . *
(& & -. / 0 1 ((( ) * * (& + -,

, * * (& ' % & (* & * ' . (& *
' && (& . & ((( ) * * (& + (,

OUTLINE

DEFINITION# & + & (* - ., & * %
(&& ((& & * & & - &* * . '
% (

/ 1 2# & . & & * ' & ' &3& * ' (& % (/
* 4 - 5 & ' ' 4 ' *) 3 (* 1 (*
& ' & & -) & & ' & 6 (& &
4 ' & * (& & (% 6 (& ((&&
. % && &* - * ' & (- 6 (% -

7 (& (& * (& (((& . - & *) #

+ , * ' ' & &(

15

+", * ' (. & .

+ , * . & . -% & . *) &

+ , ' ' & . (') *#

+ , 8 - - . & ((&&

+-, / ' - * (& & '

- * (- & ' &) * * (& . * '& + , *& & .
((&)* * 4 % ' & * 9 . 0 9 9 0 9) -
5

+ , * (&' (&) * * (& . ' & ' 3 & %
' &#

+ , :& * (& .) 3) (& ;

+-, : & % .) & &(% & 5 ' ' . ;

+(, 7 & * (& . . * ' ' ' +- & *.6 (,;

+", 1 (* (& . * & - & 0 + 0 ,
(& * ( ) (' ' . ' * & * 1 (
* (* : (* :: % &

" **NATO TRIAGE CATEGORY CODES** + -,

0 (* ' (' (. + , * & +0 1, ('
(& & (&& -. % ' 5 (. &
* % - % & . & -. - * < & / 0 1 (&
* & (& & & * . & = '
+ 0 / 0 $, / "> #

+ , : ' ' ' +$, +?27 , (* & 5
' (. & % & . * & (&&* - '
(& ' &* ((. * & &) * * * (* (&
& %% ' 6 ' & #

+ , ? & . -& (

+-, 0((&& - * ' *

+(, 2 ' (. '

+", 7 . ' +$ ", +@2AA1 , (* & - . ' (& ' ' 4 & . -)* & (' & . & (') * . ' * (((& . & . & & ' & (* & & - = : B & & ' & - (& (* = & ((' &&) - 5 26 ' & #

+ , A ' &( ) &

+-, (& ' 4 - &

+(, : - ' ! * ((* & 4 &

+ , < (' (' 4 - &

+ , ' ' +$, +$?22/ , (* &) * % . ' 4 &)* ((% . (* '& %&)* (- * -. & ' 6 ' & #

+ , (&

+-, 0- & &

+(, (& &' - &

+ , - &

+ , 26 (' +$, + A<2 , *& (' && &)* * % (% & & ' 4 &)* & ') - ' (& ' (' ( ) *) (* (& %% : . * . ' . ' 3 * %. ' & ' (') & & < * ' &&(& .& & (* .) (% & % ' * 6 ' & % - & & ') ' . % % * & & & ((&(& * & &&* - - % . &* - % * (' * && - . * & %% & ' 4 & ' &) .& - 3 ' 26 ' & #

+ , % ' 4 &

+-, % * & 4 &

+(, A & &

+ , & & % - &

TREATMENT CONCEPTS

* (' & - ') * & (& (' - (& . (+) .
' ' * ' * (& & * & & ((&
& &(& % ('), - % & * & ' &*
- *) ((&#

+ , 0& *.6 * ' * . * ' . (& & * . ' &&
(& . & + (,

+", 1 (% ((. (* ' * & * (&
*

+ , A * & . % ' - & % (% & * ((
& (' ((&

+ , 0 (& . & (& & (* *) 4 . * & -

+ , .& ' (& - (& (& -. *) (* & ('

+ , ' - (&) (* ' (& (&& . (' &&
(& &

- 8 & ' * * & 6 ((& ' ') ( ) &&
* - & (& '

+ , & 8 .#

+ , 0& *.6 #

(* (-& (*) .

" (3 (* &)

& ' * 6

6 ('

&& % * ' ' * 6

+-, * (3#

26& * ' *

" 4 * ' * + * ((- ' % (,

B &(4 &! % &(

(4 &

&& % ' &(4 . 2 ' - = *

* (3 && - & C

+", (8 .#

+ , B &(4 &#

8 $: (

" 8 ((. &.& '

$. (

* (( ) &) ! & *.6

+-, B &(4 & 5 #

5 (& &

+(, & * 4 &#

: (& && (&(& &&

+ , 4 - &#

8 * (3 && - & * " C 0 *) &3
" C 0 * * * &3

" & % % * &3

& % % * (* & ! '

(' ' - - &

+ , * 8 .#

+ , & 4 & 5 - * (' &&

+-, && 4 &

+(, 7 - ' (&& .) * && * ' 4 ' &('

+ , A && (& & (&

+ , 2 . 4 &

+ , 6 (4 &) ! & * . 6

+ , & " C * (& * * . "

TRIAGE TOOLS

' (!$ &) ' (: (. & ' . ' * & * % - &
& * (&& (& (& & 1 ' * * * &)
(((& * ' (!$ &) ' (% & & * % - '
& % & ' & & . (* &) 6 & 8 (.
(. && ' - &((* & ((& & * 3 * & % % &
((- ((

$ &) ' (

2 . #

, & D
", % (D
, D "
, / D

- B - ? & &

, 1 D
", & D
, :) & D
, : (' * & %) & D "
, / D

(? & &

, 1- .& ' ' D

", A (= 8 D
, *) 8 D
, 6 + , D 26 & + , D "
, / D

* & * . 5 #

, D
", " D
, > D "
, D
, E D

" ' (

? & . ? #

, " " ' D
", " ' D
, ' D "
, ' D
, / D

- .& (8#

, F> ' ' G D
", ' ' G D
, ' ' G D "
, ' ' G D
, / D

(* &

' (H $ D C & % % + ",

" D
D >>
> D
D
D
" D "

D "
D

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

FMST.07.08
04/03/02

STUDENT HANDOUT

PREVENTIVE MEDICINE AND WATER PURIFICATION

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVE. Given a unit in a mountainous environment and the necessary equipment and supplies, perform preventive medicine, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.08)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES.

1) Without the aid of references, from a given list select the five important areas of personal hygiene, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.08a)

2) Without the aid of references, from a given list select the correct steps taken to ensure proper immunization prior to deployment, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.08b)

3) Without the aid of references, from a given list select the three methods of water purification, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.08c)

4) Without the aid of references, from a given list select the four forms of halogens used for water purification, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.08d)

5) Without the aid of references, from a given list select the definition of giardia, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.08e)

6) Without the aid of references, from a given list select the most common drug used to treat giardia infection in the United States, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.08f)

7) Without the aid of references, from a given list select the three important reasons for proper waste disposal, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.08g)

8) Without the aid of references, from a given list select the correct methods of waste disposal, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.08h)

16

1. **PERSONAL HYGIENE** Your body's defense mechanisms break down due to the physical demands of the arduous terrain, environment, stress and metabolic changes. Personal

hygiene becomes the key to prevent the spread of communicable diseases. Five important areas are: (WMC.6.17a)

a. Body.

(1) The body should be washed frequently in order to minimize the chances of small cuts and scratches developing into full blown infections and as a defense against parasitic infections.

(2) A daily bath or shower consisting of soap and hot water is ideal. However, when this is not possible, you should:

(a) Give yourself a "sponge bath" using soap and water, making sure particular attention is given to body creases, i.e., armpits, groin area, face ears, hands and feet.

(b) If water is in extremely short supply, you should take an "air bath" by:

(1) Remove all clothing and hang it up to air.

(2) Expose the body for two hours to the sunlight, which is ideal, but the effects will basically be the same if done indoors or during an overcast day. BE CAREFUL NOT TO SUNBURN!

(3) Shaving. Shaving at night before bedtime is preferable because shaving will remove facial oils, which aid in protecting the face from a harsh cold environment during the day.

b. Hair.

(1) Clean frequently.

(2) Inspect at least once a week for parasites. Have your mountain buddy inspect the areas not within your view. This is particularly important during the summer season. Any time the area you are operating in an area that contains wild life there is the possibility of parasites like fleas and ticks.

c. Hands. Hand washing with soap and water will cut down in the transmission of viral and parasitic infections via the person-person and fecal-oral route.

(1) Keep fingernails trimmed and clean to prevent accidentally scratching yourself and to prevent harborage for bacteria.

d. Feet. Are your prime sources of transportation, so take care of them!

(1) Inspect frequently for:

(a) Blisters.

(b) Infections, bacterial and fungal.

(2) Preventive measures:

(a) Keep your feet dry, change socks frequently.

(b) Use antifungal foot powder.

(c) Antiperspirants. Pretreatment for 2 weeks prior to field with an antiperspirant containing Aluminum Chlorhydrate. This will aid in the prevention of athlete's foot.

e. Oral Hygiene. The mouth and teeth should be cleaned at least daily to prevent tooth decay and gum disease.

(1) Ideally with:

(a) Tooth brush.

(b) Tooth paste.

(c) Dental floss.

(2) If these items are not available:

(a) A "chew stick" made from a clean twig about 8" long and finger width. Chew one end until it becomes frayed and brush-like, then use as a toothbrush.

(b) Field expedient dental floss can be pulled from the center lines of paracord.

(c) The gums should be stimulated at least once daily by rubbing them vigorously with a clean index finger.

2. **IMMUNIZATIONS (NAVMEDCOMINST 6230.3)**. In addition to being required, immunizations are your best front line defense against communicable disease.

a. Eight weeks prior to deployment: (WMC.6.17b)

(1) Ensure Basic Series Completed (BSC) on required immunizations.

(2) Determine if additional immunizations/chemophylaxis will be required in that geographical area of operations.

(3) Identify and flag health risk personnel: i.e. TB converters (NAVMEDCOMINST 6224.1), hepatitis (NAVMEDCOMINST 6230.1A), mononucleosis, parasitic infections and anemic personnel.

(4) Review medical intelligence reports:

(a) EPMU, Navy Environmental Preventive Medicine Unit.

(b) G-2, USMC.

(c) NAVDISVECTOECOLCONCEN, Navy Disease Vector Ecology and Control Centers.

(d) CDC - Center For Disease Control.

(e) WHO - World Health Organization.

3. **WATER.** A satisfactory source is one where quantity and quality is enough to supply the needs of all the troops. Water or ice taken from the environment should be considered contaminated and must be purified with available means. Be aware that cold weather slows the chemical reaction time of purification measures.

a. Sources.

(1) Rivers

(2) Streams

(3) Ponds

(4) Lakes

(5) Ice

(6) Snow

b. Water Source Selection. The choice of a water source is influenced by:

(1) Not contaminated by: (Check all to one mile upstream).

(a) Sewage

(b) Enemy pollution

(c) Chemicals

(d) Biologicals

(e) Radiologicals

NOTE: Check condition of vegetation or for dead animals.

(2) Quantity.

(3) Ease of procurement.

(4) Ease of purification.

(5) Freedom from turbidity.

(6) Excessive organic or non-organic contamination.

(7) Should be easily protectable.

4. **PURIFICATION.** Simply consists of removing or destroying enough impurities to make water safe and pleasant to drink.

a. The first step in purifying is to select a treatment method. (All figures are based on one quart of water.) The three different purifying methods are: (WMC.6.17c)

(1) Boiling. The standard recommendation is to bring the water to a rolling boil for 1 minute at sea level for complete sterilization of the water. Recent research showed that additional boiling time for sterilization was not necessary and that boiling for two minutes at any altitude rendered water safe for consumption.

(2) Halogens. The number of tablets and contact time must be considered. All charts based on one-quart canteen. (WMC.6.17d)

(a) Iodine tablets.

TYPE WATER	TABLETS	CONTACT TIME
CLEAR	1	25 MIN
CLOUDY	2	25 MIN
COLD	2	25 MIN

(b) Chlorine bleach. The strength of the solution, number of drops and contact time must be considered.

PERCENT	CLEAR WATER	CLOUDY WATER	COLD WATER
1%	10GTTS/30 MIN	20GTS/30 MIN	10GTTS/60MIN
4-6%	2GTTS/30 MIN	4GTTS/30 MIN	2GTTS/60 MIN
7-10%	1 GTTS/30 MIN	2GTTS/30 MIN	1 GTTS/60 MIN

(c) Iodine solution. The strength, number of drops and contact time must be considered.

PERCENT	CLEAR WATER	CLOUDY WATER	COLD WATER
2%	5GTTS/30 MIN	10GTTS/30 MIN	8GTTS/60 MIN

(d) Betadine solution.

CLEAR WATER	CLOUDY WATER	COLD WATER
8GTTS/30 MIN	16GTTS/30 MIN	8GTTS/60 MIN

(1) Filtration Most filters are not small enough to completely disinfect water. They remove particulate debris, which allows lower halogen dose and improved appearance and taste of "dirty" water. Filters clog quickly if the water is dirty or has a lot of suspended particles. NEVER USE FILTERS AS YOUR SOLE METHOD OF WATER PURIFICATION.

(a) Maximum Filter Pore Size:

1) Parasitic eggs and larvae: 20 micrometers (um).

2) Giardia, E. histolytica: 5 um.

3) Cryptosporidium: 1 um

4) Enteric bacteria: 0.2 um.

5) Viruses: 0.01 um (too small for field water filtration).

5. GIARDIA

a. Definition. (WMC.6.17e) An intestinal flagellate protozoa that can cause clinical illness in humans.

(1) Found worldwide in tropical and temperate areas, the infectious cysts are passed by humans and animals and can be transmitted by direct fecal-oral route or waterborne contamination (cysts maintain viability for months in cold water). Due to these factors, Giardia is both a common cause of diarrhea in travelers to foreign countries, and campers in the United States where it has become endemic and is now considered the most common human parasite.

(2) It is found with increasing frequency in formerly "pristine" mountain streams, rivers and lakes and outbreaks have occurred in remote recreational areas and resorts throughout the western mountain states.

(3) Giardiasis is currently a risk for anyone drinking untreated surface water in the western mountains and for communities with water treatment techniques inadequate for eliminating the cysts.

b. Pathophysiology. The organism has two forms: Trophozoite and cyst.

(1) These may be passed in the stool of an infected person. The trophozoites die within one hour outside the body, however the cysts are very hardy, retaining infectivity more than two months in cold water. If the cysts are ingested, excystation is encouraged by stomach acid, and the motile trophozoite attaches by suction disc to the wall of the duodenum and proximal jejunum, where they may cause symptoms of illness.

(2) Water, ice, or food prepared with contaminated water, are the major sources of infection, but direct person-to-person transmission can occur from sexual contact or hand-to-mouth contamination.

(3) Incubation time: 5 - 25 days (7 - 10 medium). Most infections are thought to be asymptomatic carrier states, however, a wide array of clinical syndromes may occur.

c. Symptoms.

(1) A number of people have abrupt onset of explosive diarrhea accompanied by abdominal cramps, foul gas, vomiting, fever and malaise. This commonly lasts three to four days before developing the more common subacute syndrome. In most individuals, the onset is more insidious, and symptoms are persistent or recurrent.

(2) Stools become mushy, greasy and malodorous. Over a period of weeks, watery diarrhea may alternate with soft stools and even constipation. Upper GI symptoms accompany stool changes, mid and upper abdominal cramping, substernal burning, acid indigestion, sulfurous belching, nausea and foul flatus, distention with an early "full" feeling are all typically increased after a meal.

(3) Symptoms of anorexia, fatigue and weight loss are common, but fever and vomiting are infrequent except during an acute onset of illness.

d. Laboratory Parameters.

(1) The "typical" victim should suggest a diagnosis of giardiasis. This individual may have a history of camping, vacationing at a mountain resort, or foreign travel. Symptoms of upper abdominal discomfort, foul gas and soft stools arose one or two weeks after a short trip or during a lengthy one and have fluctuated for weeks. Sometimes improving, the individual held off visiting the doctor, only to have the symptoms recur. Work or school is not interrupted, however, physical discomfort and embarrassment from the gas are concerns.

(2) Laboratory confirmation of giardiasis can be difficult. Stool samples are the first means of diagnosis. Trophozoites may be found in fresh, watery stools, but disintegrate rapidly. Cysts remain in fresh stools for at least 24 hours. Cysts passage, however, is extremely variable and not related to clinical symptoms. Three samples, taken every other day, should be examined for a definite diagnosis.

(3) Average duration of symptoms has varied from three to ten weeks. Acquired resistance has been shown. Immunity is suspected, but not proven and human reinfection definitely occurs.

e. Treatment. (WMC.6.17f) Complete cure of most Giardia infections can be achieved 90% of the time with *Metronidazole* (flagyl) 250 mg three time s a day for 5 days.

f. Prevention There is no safe or effective chemoprophylactic drug and prevention should be practiced by travelers and campers. The purity of American wild waters can no longer be assumed and in developing countries, even tap water should be suspected. In addition to choosing a technique for individual field water disinfection, individuals must become more responsible for prevention of water contamination. This requires attention to personal latrines and camper trailer waste disposal, a subject that most people do not want to touch.

6. **WASTE**. The importance of proper waste disposal cannot be over emphasized.

a. It serves to: (WMC.6.17g)

(1) Eliminate harborage for rodents and vermin.

(2) Prevents attraction of rodents and vermin.

(3) Prevents a pathogenic contamination source.

b. Two basic types of waste are organic and non-organic. The basic ways to dispose of them are burning, burying, or hauling it away. (WMC.6.17h)

(1) Organic wastes:

(a) Human waste - Burn or haul away to a designated waste pit area.

(b) Urine - Use only assigned marked areas.

(c) Edible garbage - Burn. It should not be left exposed for animals, vermin or the enemy.

(d) Paper -Burn.

(e) Contaminated bandages - Sterilize/burn.

(2) Non-organic waste:

(a) Metals - Haul away or bury.

(b) Liquids - Burn or bury.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

FMST.07.19
04/03/02

STUDENT OUTLINE

REQUIREMENTS FOR SURVIVAL

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVE Given a survival situation in any type of environmental condition and minimal equipment and resources, apply the requirements for survival to facilitate individual or group survival and recovery per the references. (FMST.07.19)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES

1. Without the aid of references and from a given list, choose one of the survival stressors, in accordance with the references. (WMC.A1.a)

2. Without the aid of references and from a given list, choose one of the priorities of work in a survival situation, in accordance with the references. (WMC.A1.b)

1. REQUIREMENTS FOR SURVIVAL

a. This mental "mind-set" is important in many ways. We usually call it the "will to survive" although you might call it "attitude" just as well. This basically means that, if you do not have the right attitude, you may still not survive.

A1

b. A guideline that can assist you is the acronym " SURVIVAL".

(1) **S**ize up.

   (a) Size up the situation.

      1. Conceal yourself from the enemy.

      2. Use your senses to hear, smell, and see to determine and consider what is developing on the battlefield before you make your survival plan.

   (b) Size up your surroundings.

      1. Determine the rhythm or pattern of the area.

      2. Note animal and bird noises and their movement.

      3. Note enemy traffic and civilian movement.

   (c) Size up your physical condition.

      1. Check your wounds and give yourself first aid.

      2. Take care to prevent further bodily harm.

      3. Evaluate condition of self and unit prior to developing survival plan.

   (d) Size up your equipment.

      1. Consider how available equipment may affect survival senses; tailor accordingly.

(2) **U**ndue haste makes waste.

   (a) Plan your moves so that you can move out quickly without endangering yourself if the enemy is near.

(3) **R**emember where you are.

   (a) If you have a map, spot your location and relate it to the surrounding terrain.

   (b) Pay close attention to where you are and where you are going. Constantly orient yourself.

(c) Try to determine, at a minimum, how your location relates to the following:

1. The location of enemy units and controlled areas.

2. The location of friendly units and controlled areas.

3. The location of local water sources.

4. Areas that will provide good cover and concealment.

(4) **V**anquish fear and panic.

(a) Realistic and challenging training builds self-confidence and confidence for a unit's leadership.

(b) The feeling of fear and panic will be present. The survivor must control these feelings.

(5) **I**mprovise and improve.

(a) Use tools designed for one purpose for other applications.

(b) Use objects around you for different needs. (i.e. use a rock for a hammer)

(6) **V**alue living.

(a) Place a high value on living.

(b) Refuse to give into the problem and obstacles that face you.

(c) Draw strength from individuals that rise to the occasion.

(7) **A**ct like the natives.

(a) Observe the people in the area to determine their daily eating, sleeping, and drinking routines.

(b) Observe animal life in the area to help you find sources of food and water.

NOTE: Remember that animal reactions can reveal your presence to the enemy. Animals cannot serve as an absolute guide to what you can eat and drink.

(8) **L**ive by your wits, **but for now**, learn basic skills.

(a) Practice basic survival skills during all training programs and exercises.

2. **STRESS**. Stress has many positive benefits. Stress provides us with challenges: it gives us chances to learn about our values and strengths. Too much stress leads to distress. While many of these signs may not be self-identified, it remains critical that all survivors remain attentive to each other's signs of distress. Listed are a few common signs of distress found when faced with too much stress:

   a. Difficulty in making decisions (do not confuse this sign for a symptom of hypothermia).

   b. Angry outbursts.

   c. Forgetfulness.

   d. Low energy level.

   e. Constant worrying.

   f. Propensity for mistakes.

   g. Thoughts about death or suicide.

   h. Trouble getting along with others.

   i. Withdrawing from others.

   j. Hiding from responsibilities.

   k. Carelessness.

3. **SURVIVAL STRESSORS**. (FMST.07.19a) **Any** event can lead to stress. Often, stressful events occur simultaneously. These events are not stress, but they produce it and are called "stressors". In response to a stressor, the body prepares either to "fight or flee". Stressors add up. Anticipating stressors and developing strategies to cope with them are the two ingredients in the effective management of stress. It is essential that the survivor be aware of the types of stressors they will encounter.

   a. Injury, Illness, or Death: Injury, illness, and death are real possibilities a survivor has to face. Perhaps nothing is more stressful than being alone in an unfamiliar environment where you could die from hostile action, an accident, or from eating something lethal. Illness and injury can also add to stress by limiting your ability to maneuver, get food and drink, find shelter, and defend yourself.

   b. Uncertainty and Lack of Control: Some people have trouble operating in settings where everything is not clear-cut. The only guarantee in a survival situation is that nothing is guaranteed. This uncertainty and lack of control also add to the stress of being ill, injured, or killed.

c. Environment: A survivor will have to contend with the stressors of weather, terrain, and the variety of creatures inhabiting an area. Heat, cold, rain, winds, snow, mountains, insects, and animals are just a few of the challenges awaiting the Marine working to survive. Depending on how a survivor handles the stress of environment, his surroundings can be either a source of food and protection or a cause of extreme discomfort leading to injury, illness, or death.

d. Hunger and Thirst: Without food and water a person will weaken and eventually die. Getting and preserving food and water takes on increasing importance as the length of time in a survival setting increases. With the increased likelihood of diarrhea, replenishing electrolytes becomes critical. For a Marine used to having his provisions issued, foraging can be a significant source of stress.

e. Fatigue: It is essential that survivors employ all available means to preserve mental and physical strength. While food, water, and other energy builders may be in short supply, maximizing sleep to avoid deprivation is a very controllable factor. Training data collected at MCCDC demonstrates that individuals who lack sleep for 24 hours or more suffer a 25% decrease in effective performance. Further, sleep deprivation directly correlates with increased fear. Effective survival is highly unlikely when fatigue builds to a level where staying awake becomes a stressful evolution.

f. Isolation: Although Marines complain about higher headquarters, we become used to the information and guidance it provides, especially during times of confusion. Being in contact with others provides a greater sense of security and a feeling someone is available to help if problems occur. A significant stress in survival situations is that often a person or team has to rely solely on its own resources.

4. **NATURAL REACTIONS**. Man has been able to survive many shifts in his environment throughout the centuries. His ability to adapt physically and mentally to a changing world kept him alive. The average person will have some psychological reactions in a survival situation. These are some of the major internal reactions you might experience with the survival stresses.

   a. Fear: Fear is our emotional response to dangerous circumstances that we believe have the potential to cause death, injury, or illness. Fear can have a positive function if it encourages us to be cautious in situations where recklessness could result in injury. Unfortunately, fear can also immobilize a person. It can cause us to become so frightened that we fail to perform activities essential for survival.

   b. Anxiety: Anxiety can be an uneasy, apprehensive feeling we get when faced with dangerous situations. When used in a healthy way, anxiety urges us to act to end, or at least master, the dangers that threaten our existence. A survivor reduces his anxiety by performing those tasks that will ensure his coming through the ordeal alive. Anxiety can overwhelm a Marine to the point where he becomes easily confused and has difficulty thinking.

c. Anger and Frustration: Frustration arises when a person is continually thwarted in his attempts to reach a goal. The goal of survival is to stay alive until you can reach help or until help can reach you. To achieve this goal, Marines must complete some tasks with minimal resources. One outgrowth of frustration is anger. Getting lost, damaged or forgotten equipment, the weather, inhospitable terrain, enemy patrols, and physical limitations are just a few sources of frustration and anger. Frustration and anger encourage impulsive reactions, irrational behavior, poorly thought-out decisions, and, in some instances, an "I quit" attitude. If the Marine does not properly focus his angry feelings, he can waste much energy in activities that do little to further either his chances of survival or the chances of those around him.

d. Depression: Depression is closely linked with frustration and anger when faced with the privations of survival. A destructive cycle between anger and frustration continues until the person becomes worn down-physically, emotionally, and mentally. When a person reaches this point, he starts to give up, and his focus shifts from "What can I do" to "There is nothing I can do." If you allow yourself to sink into a depressed state, then it can sap all your energy and, more important, your will to survive.

e. Loneliness and Boredom: Man is a social animal and enjoys the company of others. Loneliness and boredom can be another source of depression. Marines must find ways to keep their minds productively occupied.

f. Guilt: The circumstances leading to your survival setting are sometimes dramatic and tragic. It may be the result of an accident or military mission where there was a loss of life. Perhaps you were the only, or one of a few, survivors. While naturally relieved to be alive, you simultaneously may be mourning the deaths of others that were less fortunate. Do not let guilt feelings prevent you from living.

5. **PRIORITIES OF WORK IN A SURVIVAL SITUATION.** (FMST.07.19b) Each survival situation will have unique aspects that alter the order in which tasks need to be accomplished. A general guideline is to think in blocks of time.

a. First 24 hours: The first 24 hours are critical in a survival situation. You must make an initial estimate of the situation. Enemy, weather, terrain, time of day and available resources will determine which tasks need to be accomplished first. They should be the following:

(1) Shelter.

(2) Fire.

(3) Water.

(4) Signaling.

b. Second 24 hours: After the first 24 hours have passed, you will now know you can survive. This time period needs to be spent on expanding your knowledge of the area. By completing the following tasks, you will be able to gain valuable knowledge.

    (1) Tools and weapons: By traveling a short distance from your shelter to locate the necessary resources, you will notice edible food sources and game trails.

    (2) Traps and snares: Moving further away from your shelter to employ traps and snares, you will be able to locate your shelter area from various vantagepoints. This will enable you to identify likely avenues of approach into your shelter area.

    (3) Pathguards: Knowing the likely avenues of approaches, you can effectively place noise and casualty producing pathguards to ensure the security of your shelter area.

c. Remainder of your survival situation. This time is spent on continuously improving your survival situation until your rescue.

6. **GROUP SURVIVAL.** In-group survival, the group's survival depends largely on its ability to organize activity. An emergency situation does not bring people together for a common goal; rather, the more difficult and disordered the situation, the greater are the disorganized group's problems.

a. Groups Morale: High morale must come from internal cohesiveness and not merely through external pressure. The moods and attitudes can become wildly contagious. Conscious, well-planned organization and leadership on the basis of delegated or shared responsibility often can prevent panic. High group morale has many advantages.

    (1) Individual feels strengthened and protected since he realizes that his survival depends on others whom he trusts.

    (2) The group can meet failure with greater persistency.

    (3) The group can formulate goals to help each other face the future.

b. Factors that Influence Group Survival: There are numerous factors that will influence whether a group can successfully survive.

    (1) Organization of Manpower - Organized action is important to keep all members of the group informed; this way the members of the group will know what to do and when to do it, both under ordinary circumstances and in emergencies.

(2) Selective Use of Personnel - In well-organized groups, the person often does the job that most closely fits his personal qualifications.

(3) Acceptance of Suggestion and Criticisms - The senior man must accept responsibility for the final decision, but must be able to take suggestion and criticisms from others.

(4) Consideration of Time - On-the-spot decisions that must be acted upon immediately usually determines survival success.

(5) Check Equipment - Failure to check equipment can result in failure to survive.

(6) Acquiring survival knowledge and skills increases survival Knowledge and Skills - Confidence in one's ability to survive.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

FMST.
07.20
04/03/02

STUDENT OUTLINE

SURVIVAL KIT

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVE. In a summer mountainous environment, construct a survival kit, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.20)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES

(1) Without the aid of references, choose from a given list in the criteria for a survival kit, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.20a)

(2) Without the aid of references, choose from a given list one example of each criteria for a survival kit, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.20b)

1. COMPONENTS FOR A SURVIVAL KIT

a. The environment is the key to the types of items you will need in your survival kit. How much equipment you put in your kit depends on how you will carry the kit. A kit on your body will have to be much smaller than one carried in a vehicle.

b. Always layer your survival kit, keeping the most important items on your body.

c. In preparing your survival kit, select items that can be used for more than one purpose.

A2

d. Your survival kit does not need to be elaborate. You only need functional items that will meet your needs and a case to hold them. The case might be a first aid case, an ammunition pouch, or another suitable case. This case should be:

  (1) Water repellent or waterproof.

  (2) Easy to carry or attach to your body.

  (3) Suitable to accept various sized items.

  (4) Durable.

e. When constructing a survival kit, you should have the following components: (FMST.07.20a)

  (1) Fire starting items.

  (2) Water procurement items.

  (3) Food procurement items.

  (4) Signaling items.

  (5) First aid items.

  (6) Shelter items.

2. **ITEMS CONTAINED WITHIN EACH COMPONENT** (FMST.07.20b)

a. Fire Starting Items.

(1) Matches.

(2) Magnifying glass.

(3) Flint and Steel.

(4) Lighter.

(5) Potassium Permanganate, with a container of sugar or anti-freeze.

(6) Prepackaged Tinder.

  (a) Commercially Manufactured

  (b) Cotton Balls and Petroleum Jelly

b. Water Procurement Items

(1) Water Disinfecting Chemicals.

(a) Iodine Tablets

(b) Betadine Solution

(c) Iodine Solution

(2) Metal Container. (Serves for boiling water)

(a) Canteen Cup

(b) Survival Kit Container

(c) Any suitable can that contained no petroleum products.

(3) Water Carrying Items.

(a) Canteen

(b) Plastic Bag

(c) Plastic/Metal/Glass Container which contained no petroleum products

c. Food Procurement Items

(1) Fish.

(a) Various sized hooks

(b) Various sized sinkers/weights

(c) Metal leaders and swivels

(d) Small weighted jigs

(e) Fishing line

i. Think about the size of fish for that environment when selecting weights and sizes.

(2) Game.

- (a) Snares
  - i. Commercially Manufactured
  - ii. Aircraft Cable
  - iii. Tie Wire
- (b) Bait
  - i. MRE Cheese Spread or Peanut Butter Package
- (c) 550 Cord for Gill Net and Trap Construction
  - i. Engineer/Marking Tape
  - ii. Sling shot rubber and pouch

d. Signaling Items

- (1) Day.
  - (a) Mirror
  - (b) Whistle
  - (c) Pyrotechnics (Smoke, Pen Flares)
  - (d) Air Panels
- (2) Night.
  - (a) Pyrotechnics (Pen Flares, Star Clusters)
  - (b) Lights (Flashlight, Strobe, Chemlight)
  - (c) Whistle

e. Shelter Items

- (1) Cordage.
  - (a) 550 Cord
  - (b) Wire
  - (c) Communication wire

    - (d) Tie wire

- (2) Finger Saw.
- (3) Sewing Kit with Needles for construction/repair of clothing.
- (4) Tentage.
    - (a) Poncho
    - (b) Tarp
    - (c) Space blanket
    - (d) Plastic trash bags

f. First Aid Items

- (1) Band-Aids.
    - (a) Steristrips
    - (b) Adhesive Tape
    - (c) Non-stick pads, 4x4's, Gauze, Battle Dressings
    - (d) Muslin Bandage
- (2) Ointments.
    - (a) Burn
    - (b) Anti-septic
- (3) Miscellaneous.
    - (a) Salt
    - (b) Sugar
    - (c) Eye Wash
    - (d) Alcohol prep pads
    - (e) Suture Kit

        - (f) Scalpel
        - (g) Vile of Yarrow

- g. Miscellaneous items
    - (1) Fingernail clippers
    - (2) Compass
    - (3) Notebook with pen or pencil
    - (4) Wood eye screws and nails
    - (5) Surgical tubing

NOTE: It is assumed that the Marine is always carrying a high quality fixed bladed knife, a multi-tool knife, and a sharpening stone.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

FMST.07.23
04/05/02

STUDENT OUTLINE

SIGNALLING AND RECOVERY

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVE Given a survival situation in any type of environmental condition and minimal equipment and resources, signal for aid to facilitate individual or group recovery per the references. (FMST 07.23)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES

(1) Without the aid of references and from a given list, choose the audio international distress Signal, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.23a)

(2) Without the aid of references and from a given list, choose the visual international distress signal, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.23b)

(3) Without the aid of references and given a list of messages, match in writing the international code symbols to each corresponding message, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.23c)

OUTLINE

1. **SIGNALING DEVICES**. The equipment listed below are items that may be on your body or items inside an aircraft. Generally, these items are used as signaling devices while on the move. They must be accessible for use at any moment's notice. Additionally, in a summer mountainous environment, Marines may experience areas that are snow covered and must be familiar with the effects that snow will have on specific signaling devices.

    a. Pyrotechnics. Pyrotechnics include star clusters and smoke grenades. When using smoke grenades in snow pack, a platform must be built. Without a platform, the smoke grenade will sink into the snow pack and the snow will absorb all smoke. A rocket parachute flare or a hand flare has been sighted as far away as 35 miles, with an average of 10 miles. Pyrotechnic flares are effective at night, but during daylight their detectability ranges are reduced by 90 percent.

A3

b. M-186 Pen Flare: The M-186 Pen Flare is a signaling device carried in the vest of all crew chiefs and pilots. Remember to cock the gun prior to screwing in the flare.

c. Strobe Light: A strobe light is generally carried in the flight vests of all crew chiefs and pilots. It can be used at night for signaling. Care must be taken because a pilot using goggles may not be able to distinguish a flashing strobe from hostile fire.

d. Flashlight: By using flashlights, a Morse code message can be sent. A SOS distress call consists of sending three dots, three dashes, and three dots. Keep repeating this signal.

e. Whistle: The whistle is used in conjunction with the audio international distress signal. It is used to communicate with forces on the ground.

f. AN/PRC-90 & AN/PRC-112: The AN/ PRC 90 survival radio is a part of the aviator's survival vest. The AN/PRC-112 will eventually replace the AN/PRC-90. Both radios can transmit either tone (beacon) or voice. Frequency for both is **282.8 for voice**, and **243.0 for beacon**. Both of these frequencies are on the UHF Band.

g. Day/Night Flare: The day/night flare is a good peacetime survival signal. The flare is for night signaling while the smoke is for day. A red cap identifies the older version flare with three nubbins while the new generation has three rings around the body for identification during darkness. The flare burns for approximately 20 second while the smoke burns for approximately 60 seconds.

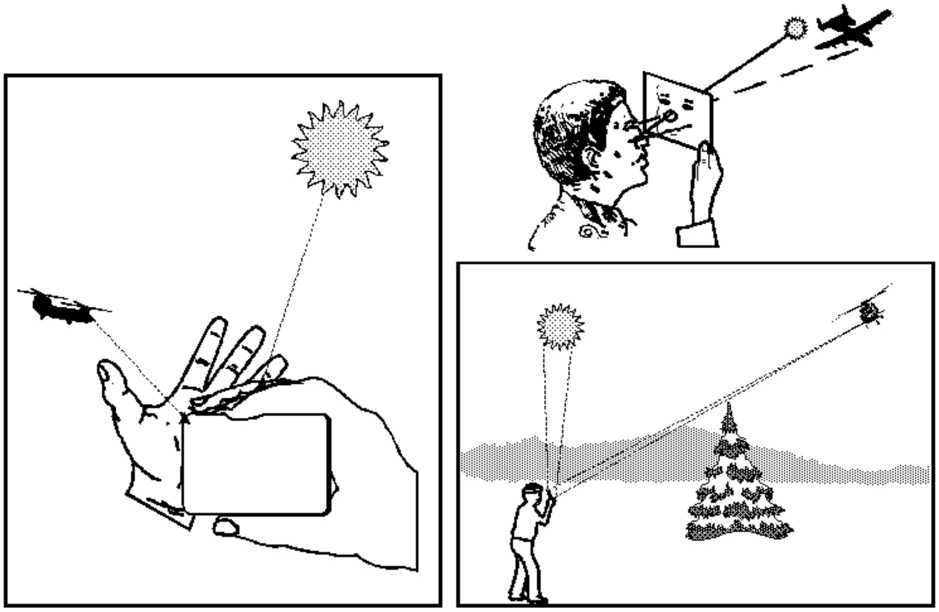
NOTE: Once one end is used up, douse in water to cool and save the other end for future use.

h. Signal Mirror: A mirror or any shiny object can be used as a signaling device. It can be used as many times as needed. Mirror signals have been detected as far away as 45 miles and from as high as 16,000’, although the average detection distance is 5 miles. It can be concentrated in one area, making it secure from enemy observation. A mirror is the best signaling device for a survivor; however, it is only as effective as its user. Learn how to use one now, before you find yourself in a survival situation.

   (1) Military signal mirrors have instructions on the back showing how to use it. It should be kept covered to prevent accidental flashing that may be seen by the enemy.

   (2) Any shiny metallic object can be substituted for a signal mirror.

   (3) Haze, ground fog, or a mirage may make it hard for a pilot to spot signals from a flashing object. So, if possible, get to the highest point in your area when flashing. If you can't determine the aircraft's location, flash your signal in the direction of the aircraft noise.



AIMING THE SIGNAL MIRROR

2. METHODS OF COMMUNICATION

a. Audio: Signaling by means of sound may be good, but it does have some disadvantages.

(1) It has limited range unless you use a device that will significantly project the sound.

(2) It may be hard to pinpoint one's location due to echoes or wind.

(3) International Distress Signal. (FMST.07.23a) The survivor will make six blasts in one minute, returned by three blasts in one minute by the rescuer.

b. Visual: Visual signals are generally better than audio signals. They will pinpoint your location and can been seen at a greater distances under good weather conditions.

(1) The visual international distress symbol is recognized by a series of three evenly spaced improvised signaling devices. (FMST.07.23b)

3. **IMPROVISED SIGNALING DEVICES**. Improvised signaling devices are generally static in nature. They must be placed in a position to be seen by rescuers. They are made from any resources available, whether natural or man-made.

a. Smoke Generator: The smoke generator is an excellent improvised visual signaling device. It gives the survivor the flexibility to signal in either day or night conditions. This type of signal has been sighted as far away as 12 miles, with an average distance of 8 miles. Smoke signals are most effective in calm wind conditions or open terrain, but effectiveness is reduced with wind speeds above 10 knots. Build them as soon as time and the situation permits, and protect them until needed.

(1) Construct your fire in a natural clearing or along the edge of streams (or make a clearing). Signal fires under dense foliage will not be seen from the air.

(2) Find two logs, 6 - 10 inches in diameter, and approximately five feet long. Place the two logs parallel to each other with 3 - 4 feet spacing.

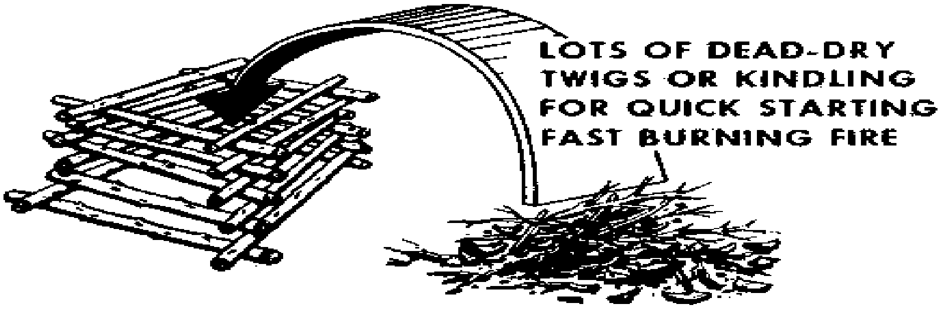
(3) Gather enough sticks, approximately two inches in diameter and four feet long, to lie across the first two logs. This serves as a platform for the fire.

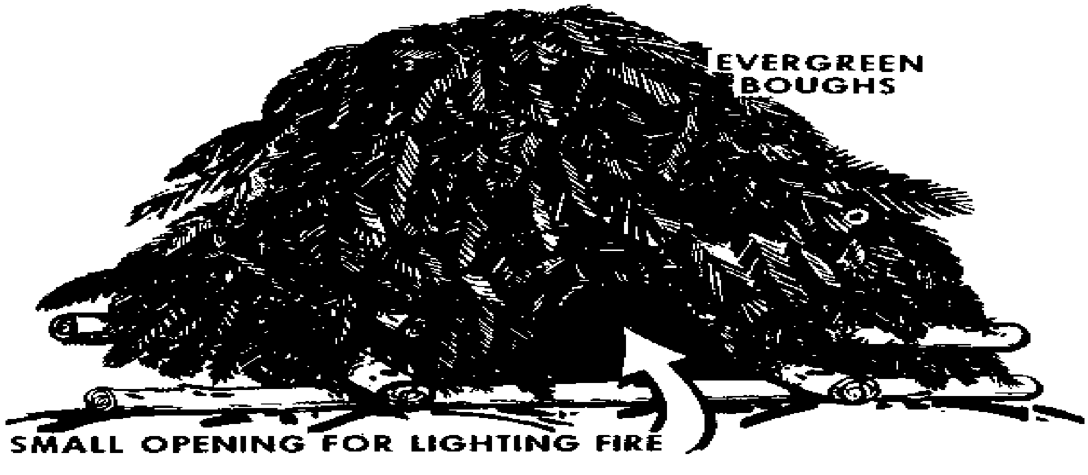
(4) Gather enough completely dry branches to build a pyramid fire. The pyramid fire should be 4 feet by 4 feet by 2 feet high.

(5) Place your tinder under the platform.

(6) Gather enough pine boughs to lay on top of the pyramid fire. This serves to protect the fire and the tinder.

(7) To light, remove the pine bough and ignite the tinder. If available, construct a torch to speed up the lighting process, especially for multiple fires.


LOTS OF DEAD-DRY
TWIGS OR KINDLING
FOR QUICK STARTING
FAST BURNING FIRE


EVERGREEN
BOUGHS
SMALL OPENING FOR LIGHTING FIRE

SMOKE GENERATOR

(8) To create a smoke effect during the day light hours, place the pine bough on the ignited fire.

(9) Placing a smoke grenade or colored flare under the platform will change the color of the smoke generated. Remember that you want the fire to draw in the colored smoke, which will create a smoke color that contrasts with the background will increase the chances of success.

b. Arrangement or alteration of natural materials: Such things as twigs or branches, can be tramped into letters or symbols in the snow and filled in with contrasting materials. To attract more attention, ground signals should be arranged in big geometric patterns.

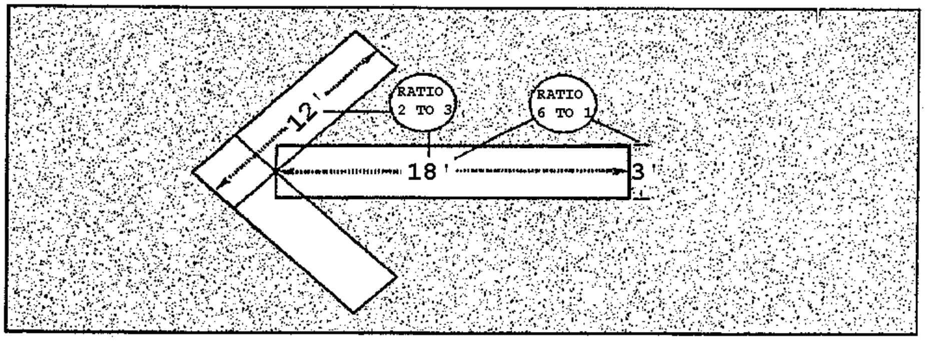
(1) International symbols. The following symbols are internationally known. (FMST.07.23c)

Number	Message	Code symbol
1	REQUIRE ASSISTANCE	V
2	REQUIRE MEDICAL ASSISTANCE	X
3	NO OR NEGATIVE	N
4	YES OR AFFIRMATIVE	Y
5	PROCEED IN THIS DIRECTION	↑

INTERNATIONAL SYMBOLS

(2) Shadows: If no other means are available, you may have to construct mounds that will use the sun to cast shadows. These mounds should be constructed in one of the International Distress Patterns. To be effective, these shadow signals must be oriented to the sun to produce the best shadows. In areas close to the equator, a North—South line gives a shadow anytime except noon. Areas further north or south of the equator require the use of East—West line or some point of the compass in between to give the best result.

(3) Size: The letters should be large as possible for a pilot or crew to spot. Use the diagram below to incorporate the size to ratio for all letter symbols.



SIZE AND RATIO

(4) Contrast: When constructing letter symbols, contrast the letter from the surrounding vegetation and terrain. Ideally, bring material from another location to build the letter. This could be clothing, air panels, space blanket, etc.

(a) On snow, pile bough or use sea dye from a LPP (Life preserver, personal). Fluorescent sea dye markers have been sighted as far away as 10 miles, although the average detection distance is 3 miles.

4. **AIR TO GROUND COMMUNICATIONS**. Air to ground communications can be accomplished by standard aircraft acknowledgments.

a. Aircraft will indicate that ground signals have been seen and understood by:

(1) Rocking wings from side to side: This can be done during the day or in bright moonlight.

b. Aircraft will indicate that ground signals have been seen but not understood by:

(1) Making a complete, clockwise circle during the day or in bright moonlight.

5. **RECOVERY**. Marines trapped behind enemy lines in future conflicts may not experience quick recovery. Marines may have to move to a place that minimizes risk to the recovery force. No matter what signaling device a Marine uses, he must take responsibility for minimizing the recovery force's safety.

a. Placement Considerations: Improvised signaling devices, in a hostile situation, should not be placed near the following areas due to the possibility of compromise:

(1) Obstacles and barriers.

(2) Roads and trails.

(3) Inhabited areas.

(4) Waterways and bridges.

(5) Natural lines of drift.

(6) Man-made structures.

(7) All civilian and military personnel.

b. Tactical Consideration: The following tactical considerations should be adhered to prior to employing an improvised signaling device.

(1) Use the signals in a manner that will not jeopardize the safety of the recovery force or you.

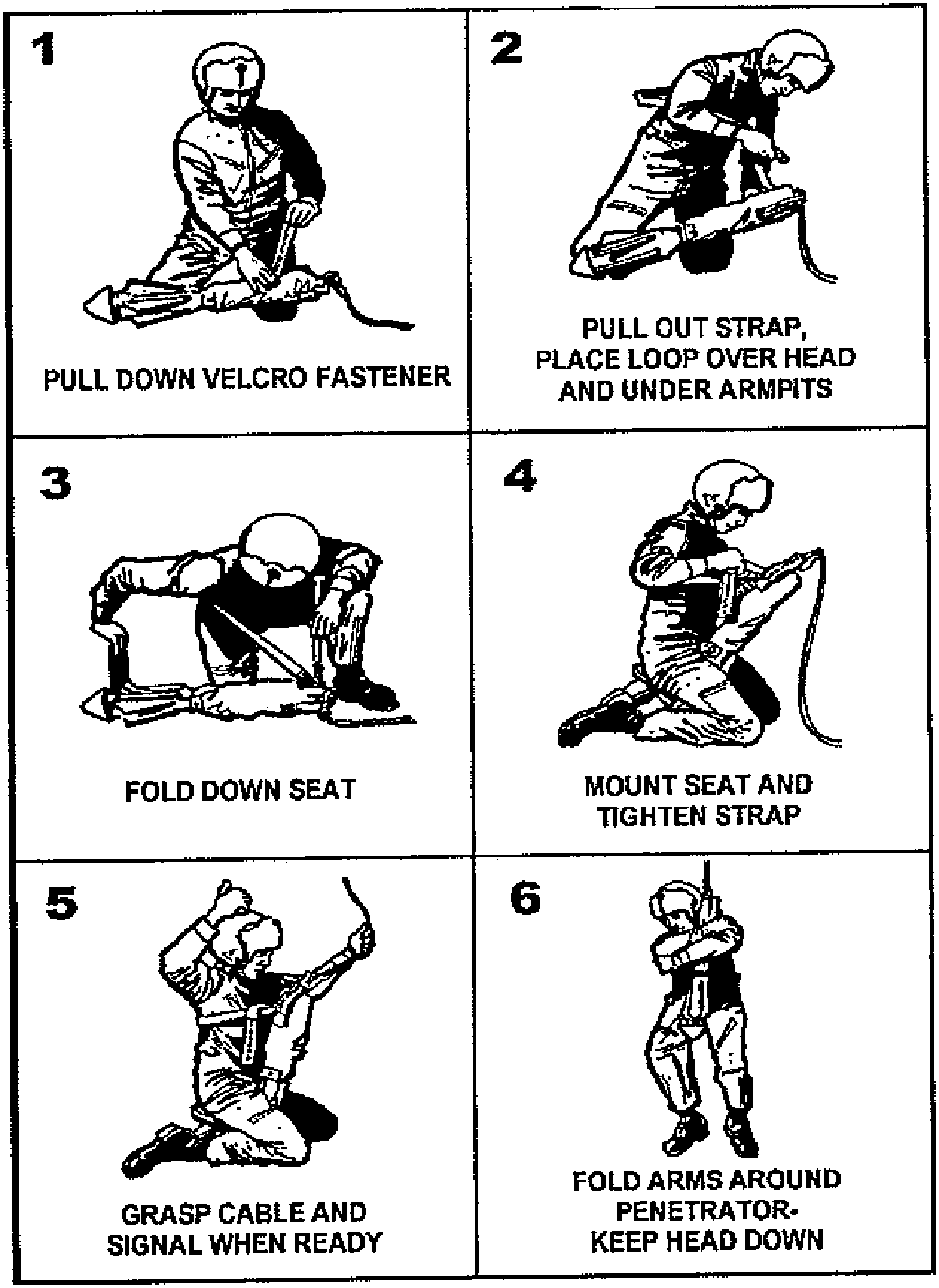
(2) Locate a position, which affords observation of the signaling device and facilitates concealed avenues of escape (if detected by enemy forces). Position should be located relatively close to extract site in order to minimize "time spent on ground" by the recovery force.

(3) Maintain continuous security through visual scanning and listening while signaling devices is employed. If weapon systems are fire and/or observation should cover available, signaling devices.

(4) If enemy movement is detected in the area, attempt to recover the signaling device, if possible.

(5) Employ improvised signaling devices only during the prescribed times, if briefed in the mission order.

c. Recovery Devices: In mountainous terrain, a helicopter landing may be impossible due to ground slope, snow pack, or vegetation. The survivor must be familiar with recovery devices that may be aboard the aircraft.



1 PULL DOWN VELCRO FASTENER

2 PULL OUT STRAP, PLACE LOOP OVER HEAD AND UNDER ARMPITS

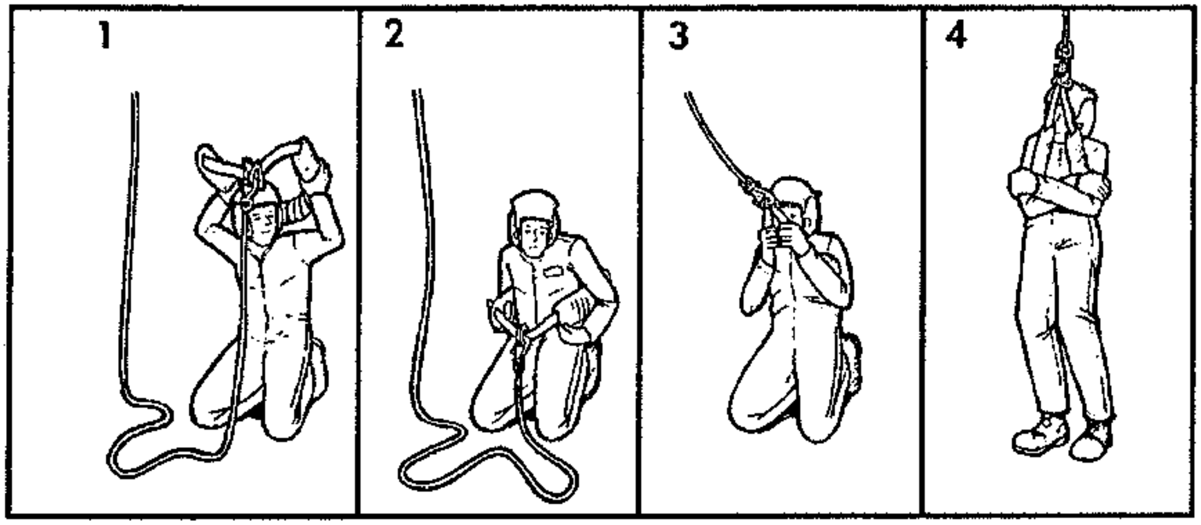
3 FOLD DOWN SEAT

4 MOUNT SEAT AND TIGHTEN STRAP

5 GRASP CABLE AND SIGNAL WHEN READY

6 FOLD ARMS AROUND PENETRATOR- KEEP HEAD DOWN

JUNGLE PENETRATOR



SLING HOIST

d. Recovery by other than aircraft. Recovery by means other than aircraft may occur. Unit Sop's should include signaling and link-up with forces at the following locations:

(1) Border Crossings. The evader who crosses into a neutral country is subject to detention by that country for the duration of the war.

(2) FEBA/FLOT.

(a) Static: Recovery along a static FEBA is always difficult. Under these conditions, enemy and friendly forces can be expected to be densely arrayed and well camouflaged, with good fields of fire. Attempts to penetrate the FEBA should be avoided.

(b) Advancing: Individuals isolated in front of advancing friendly units should immediately take cover and wait for the friendly units to overrun their position.

(c) Retreating: Individuals between opposing forces should immediately take cover and wait for enemy units to pass over their position. After most enemy units have moved on, evaders should try to link up with other isolated friendly elements and return to friendly forces.

(3) Link-up with friendly patrols. Unit authentication numbers and/or locally developed codes may assist the evader to safely make contact in or around the FEBA and when approached by friendly forces.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

FMST.07.21
FMST.07.04
04/07/02

STUDENT OUTLINE

EXPEDIENT SHELTERS AND FIRES

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVES

(1) In a summer mountainous environment, construct expedient shelters, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.21)

(2) In a summer mountainous environment, construct fires, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.04)

b. ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES

(1) Without the aid of references and from a given list, choose the four characteristics of a safe expedient shelter, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.21a)

(2) Without the aid of references and from a given list, choose the four hazards avoid when using natural shelters, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.21b)

(3) Without the aid of references and from a given list, choose one of man-made expedient shelters, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.21c)

(4) Without the aid of references, start a fire using a primitive method, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.04a)

A4

OUTLINE

1. **BASIC CHARACTERISTICS FOR SHELTER**. (FMST.07.21a) Any type of shelter, whether it is a permanent building, tentage, or an expedient shelter must meet six basic characteristics to be safe and effective. The characteristics are:

    a. Protection from the Elements: The shelter must provide protection from rain, snow, wind, sun, etc.

    b. Heat Retention: It must have some type of insulation to retain heat; thus preventing the waste of fuel.

    c. Ventilation: Ventilation must be constructed, especially if burning fuel for heat. This prevents the accumulation of carbon monoxide. Ventilation is also needed for carbon dioxide given off when breathing.

    d. Drying Facility: A drying facility must be constructed to dry wet clothes.

    e. Free from Natural Hazards: Shelters should not be built in areas of avalanche hazards, under rock fall or "standing dead" trees have the potential to fall on your shelter.

    f. Stable: Shelters must be constructed to withstand the pressures exerted by severe weather.

2. **NATURAL SHELTERS**. Natural shelters are usually the preferred types because they take less time and materials construct. The following may be made into natural shelters with some modification.

    a. Caves or Rock Overhangs: Can be modified by laying walls of rocks, logs or branches across the open sides.

    b. Hollow Logs: Can be cleaned or dug out, then enhanced with ponchos, tarps or parachutes hung across the openings.

    c. Hazards of Natural Shelters: (FMST.04.21b)

        (1) Animals: Natural shelters may already be inhabited (i.e. bears, coyotes, lions, rats, snakes, etc.). Other concerns from animals may be disease from scat or decaying carcasses.

        (2) Lack of Ventilation: Natural shelters may not have adequate ventilation. Fires may be built inside for heating or cooking but may be uncomfortable or even dangerous because of the smoke build up.

        (3) Gas Pockets: Many caves in a mountainous region may have natural gas pockets in them.

(4) Instability: Natural shelters may appear stable, but in reality may be a trap waiting to collapse.

3. **MAN-MADE SHELTERS**. (FMST.04.21c) Many configurations of man-made shelters may be used. Over-looked man-made structures found in urban or rural environments may also provide shelter (i.e. houses, sheds, or barns). Limited by imagination and materials available, the following man-made shelters can be used in any situation.

   a. Poncho Shelter.

   b. Sapling Shelter.

   c. Lean-to.

   d. Double lean-to.

   e. A-frame Shelter.

   f. Fallen Tree Bivouac.

4. **CONSTRUCTION OF MAN-MADE SHELTERS**. To maximize the shelter's effectiveness, Marines should take into consideration the following prior to construction.

   a. Considerations.

      (1) Group size.

      (2) Low silhouette and reduced living area dimensions for improved heat conservation.

      (3) Avoid exposed hill tops, valley floors, moist ground, and avalanche paths.

      (4) Create a thermal shelter by applying snow, if available, to roof and sides of shelter.

      (5) Location of site to fire wood, water, and signaling, if necessary.

      (6) How much time and effort needed to build the shelter.

      (7) Can the shelter adequately protect you from the elements (sun, wind, rain, and snow). Plan on worst case scenario.

      (8) Are the tools available to build it. If not, can you make improvised tools?

      (9) Type and amount of materials available to build it.

(10) When in a tactical environment, you must consider the following:

(a) Provide concealment from enemy observation.

(b) Maintain camouflaged escape routes.

(c) Use the acronym BLISS as a guide.

B – Blend in with the surroundings.
L –Low silhouette.
I – Irregular shape.
S – Small.
S – Secluded located.

b. Poncho Shelter: This is one of the easiest shelters to construct. Materials needed for construction are cord and any water-repellent material (i.e. poncho, parachute, and tarp). It should be one of the first types of shelter considered if planning a short stay in any one place.

(1) Find the center of the water-repellent material by folding it in half along its long axis.

(2) Suspend the center points of the two ends using cordage.

(3) Stake the Four Corners down, with sticks or rocks.

c. Sapling Shelter: This type of shelter is constructed in an area where an abundance of saplings are growing. It is an excellent evasion shelter.

(1) Find or clear an area so that you have two parallel rows of saplings at least 4' long and approximately 1 ½' to 2' apart.

(2) Bend the saplings together and tie them to form several hoops, which will form the framework of the shelter.

(3) Cover the hoop with a water-repellent covering.

(4) The shelter then may be insulated with leaves, brush, snow, or boughs.

(5) Close one end permanently. Hang material over the other end to form a door.

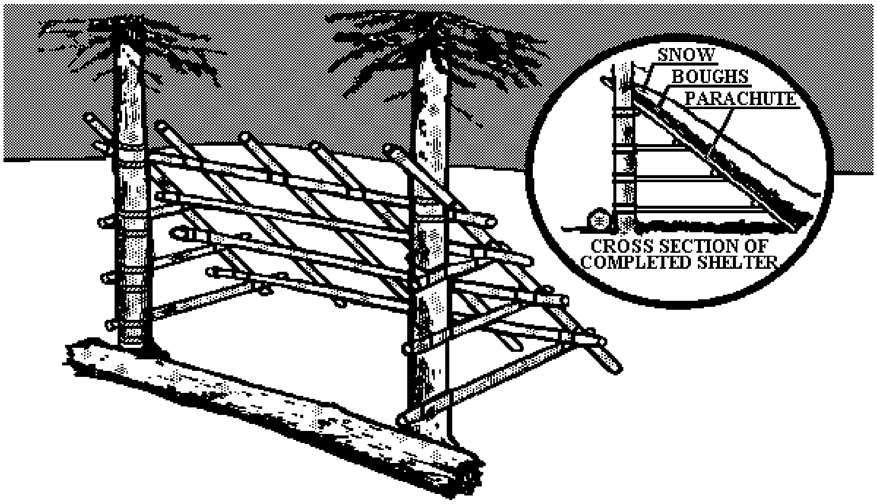
d. Lean-to: A lean-to is built in heavily forested areas. It requires a limited amount of cordage to construct. The lean-to is an effective shelter but does not offer a great degree of protection from the elements.

(1) Select a site with two trees (4-12” in diameter) spaced far enough apart that a man can lie down between them. Two sturdy poles can be substituted by inserting them into the ground the proper distance apart.

(2) Cut a pole to support the roof. It should be at least 3-4” in diameter and long enough to extend 4-6” past both trees. Tie the pole horizontally between the two trees, approximately 1 meter off the deck.

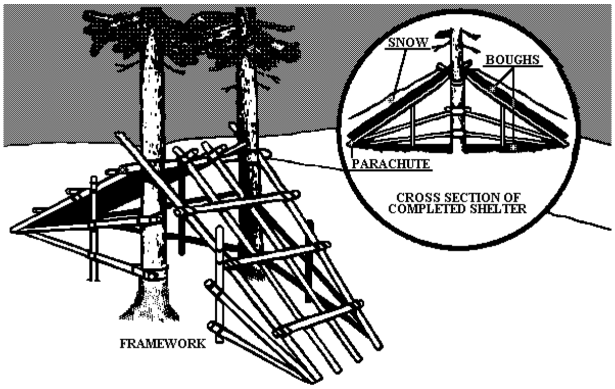
(3) Cut several long poles to be used as stringers. They are placed along the horizontal support bar approximately every 1 ½’ and lay on the ground. All stringers may be tied to or laid on the horizontal support bar. A short wall or rocks or logs may be constructed on the ground to lift the stringers off the ground, creating additional height and living room dimensions.

(4) Cut several saplings and weave them horizontally between the stringers. Cover the roof with water-repellent and insulating material.


SNOW
BOUGHS
PARACHUTE
CROSS SECTION OF COMPLETED SHELTER

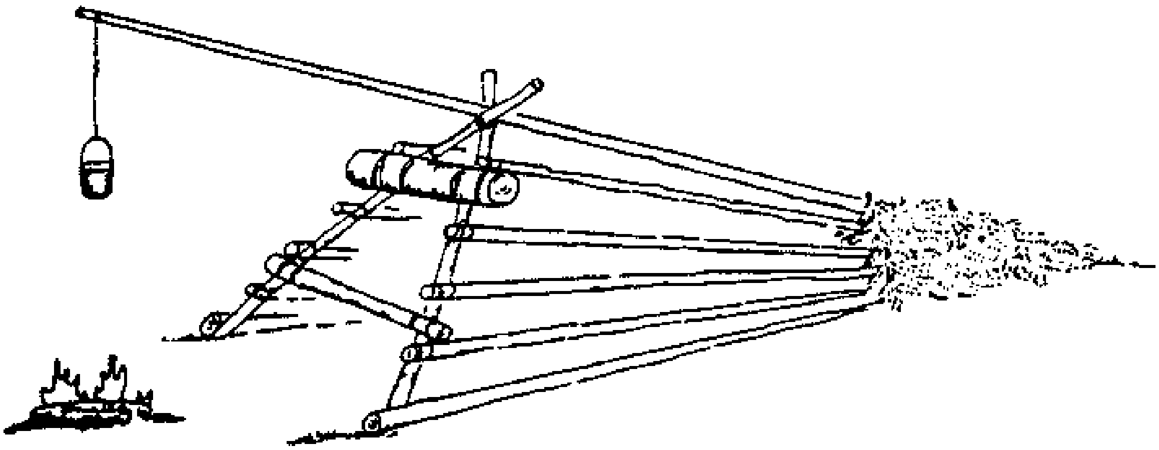
LEAN-TO

e. Double lean-to: The double lean-to shelter is constructed for 2-5 individuals. It is constructed by making two lean-tos and placing them together.


SNOW
BOUGHS
PARACHUTE
CROSS SECTION OF COMPLETED SHELTER
FRAMEWORK

DOUBLE LEAN-TO

f. A-Frame Shelter: An A-Frame shelter is constructed for 1-3 individuals. After the framework is constructed, bough/tentage is interwoven onto the frame and snow, if available, is packed onto the outside for insulation.



A-FRAME

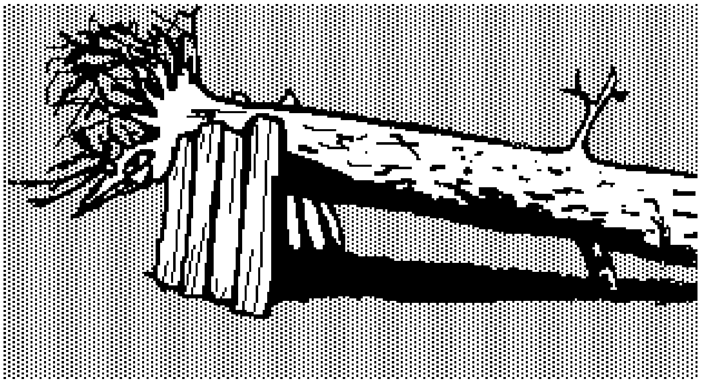
g. Fallen Tree Bivouac: The fallen tree bivouac is an excellent shelter because most of the work has already been done.

(1) Ensure the tree is stable prior to constructing.

(2) Branches on the underside are cut away making a hollow underneath.

(3) Place additional insulating material to the top and sides of the tree.

(4) A small fire is built outside of the shelter.



FALLEN TREE BIVOUAC

5. **REFLECTOR WALLS.** Heating a shelter requires a slow fire that produces lots of steady heat over a long period of time. A reflector wall should be constructed for all open-ended shelters. A reflector wall is constructed with a flat rock or a stack of green logs propped behind the fire. A surprising amount of heat will bounce back from the fire into the shelter.

6. **FIRES**. Fires fall into two main categories: those built for cooking and those built for warmth and signaling. The basic steps are the same for both: preparing the fire lay, gathering fuel, building the fire, and properly extinguishing the fire.

   a. Preparing the fire lay: There are two types of fire lays: fire pit and Dakota hole. Fire pits are probably the most common.

      (1) Create a windbreak to confine the heat and prevent the wind from scattering sparks. Place rocks or logs used in constructing the fire lay parallel to the wind. The prevailing downwind end should be narrower to create a chimney effect.

      (2) Avoid using wet rocks. Heat acting on the dampness in sandstone, shale, and stones from streams may cause them to explode.

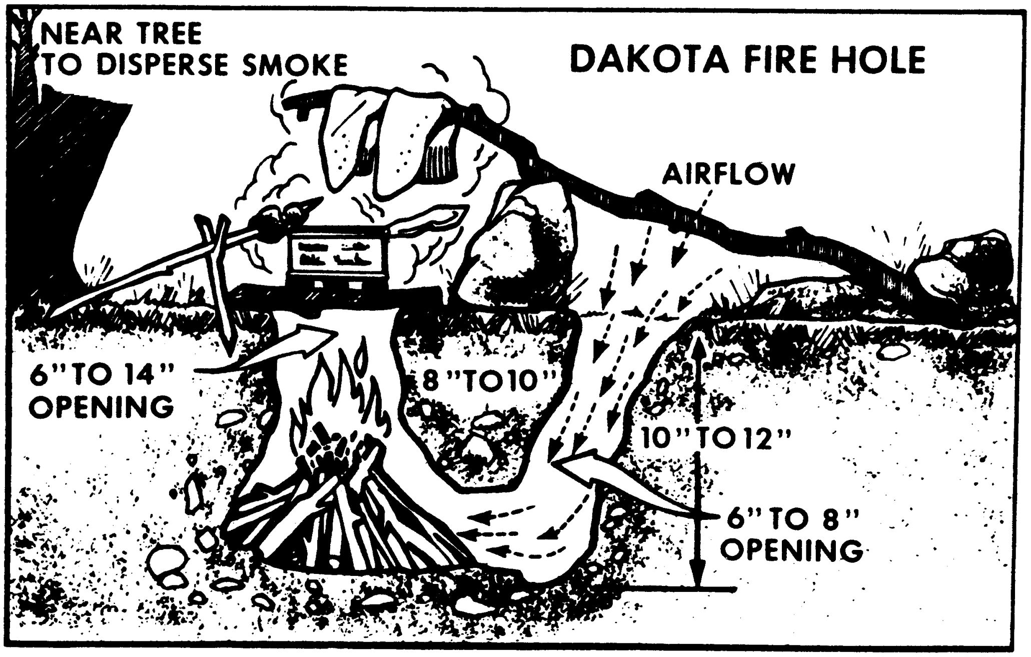
      (3) Dakota Hole: The Dakota Hole is a tactical fire lay. Although no fire is 100% tactical, this fire lay will accomplish certain things:

         (a) Reduces the signature of the fire by placing it below ground.

         (b) Provides more of a concentrated heat source to boil and cook, thus preserving fuel and lessening the amount of burning time.

         (c) By creating a large air draft, the fire will burn with less smoke than the fire pit.

         (d) It is easier to light in high winds.



DAKOTA HOLE

b. Gather Fuel: Many Marines take shortcuts when gathering firewood. Taking a few extra minutes can mean the difference between ease and frustration when building a fire.

   (1) Tinder: Tinder is the initial fuel. It should be fine and dry. Gather a double handful of tinder for the fire to be built and an extra double handful to be stored in a dry place for the following morning. Dew can moisten tinder enough to make lighting the fire difficult. Some examples are:

      (a) Shredded cedar/juniper bark, pine needles.

      (b) Dry grass.

      (c) Slivers shaved from a dry stick.

      (d) Hornet's nest.

      (e) Natural fibers from equipment supplemented with pine pitch (i.e., cotton battle dressing).

      (f) Cotton balls and petroleum jelly or Char-cloth.

NOTE: Sticks used for tinder should be dry and not larger than the diameter of a toothpick.

   (2) Kindling: This is the material that is ignited by the tinder that will burn long enough to ignite the fuel.

(a) Small sticks/twigs pencil-thick up to the thickness of the thumb. Ensure that they are dry.

(b) Due to a typically large resin content, evergreen limbs often make the best kindling. They burn hot and fast, but typically do not last long.

(3) Fuel Wood: Fuel Wood is used to keep the blaze going long enough to fulfill its purpose. Ideally, it should burn slow enough to conserve the woodpile, make plenty of heat, and leave an ample supply of long-lasting coals.

(a) Firewood broken from the dead limbs of standing trees or windfalls held off the ground will have absorbed less moisture and therefore should burn easily.

(b) Refrain from cutting down live, green trees.

(c) Softwoods (evergreens and conifers) will burn hot and fast with lots of smoke and spark, leaving little in the way of coals. Hardwoods (broad leaf trees) will burn slower with less smoke and leave a good bed of coals.

(d) Learn the woods indigenous to the area. Birch, dogwood, and maple are excellent fuels. Osage orange, ironwood, and manzanita, though difficult to break up, make terrific coals. Aspen and cottonwood burn clean but leave little coals.

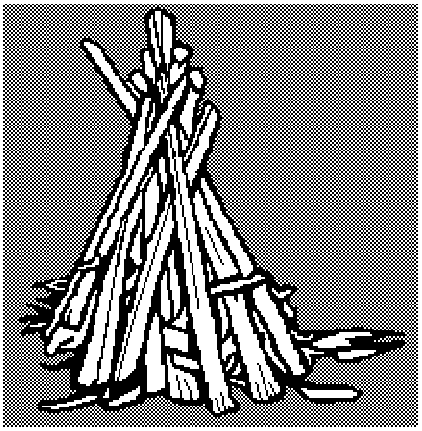
(e) Stack your wood supply close enough to be handy, but far enough from the flames to be safe. Protect your supply from additional precipitation.

(f) If you happen to go down in an aircraft that has not burned a mixture of gas and oil may be used. Use caution when igniting this mixture.

c. Building the Fire. The type of fire built will be dependent upon its intended use, either cooking or heating and signaling.

(1) Cooking Fires. The following listed fires are best used for cooking:

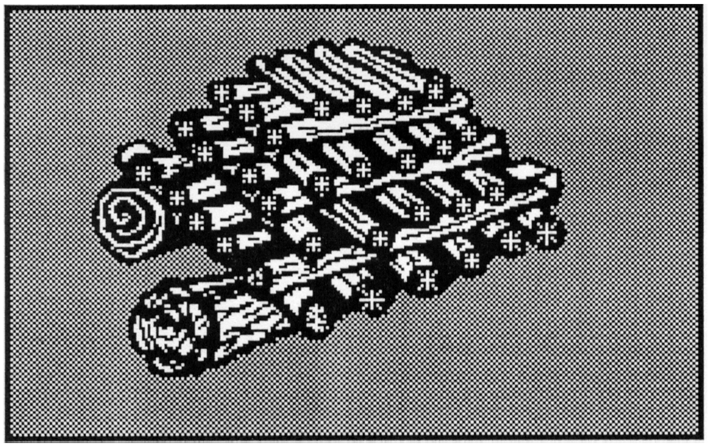
(a) Teepee Fire: The teepee fire is used to produce a concentrated heat source, primarily for cooking. Once a good supply of coals can be seen, collapse the teepee and push embers into a compact bed.



TEEPEE FIRE

(2) Heating and Signaling Fires.

(a) Pyramid Fire: Pyramid fires are used to produce large amounts of light and heat. They will dry out wet wood or clothing.



PYRAMID FIRE

d. Starting Fires. Starting a fire is done by a source of ignition and falls into two categories, modern igniters and primitive methods.

(1) Modern Methods: Modern igniters use modern devices we normally think of to start a fire. Reliance upon these methods may result in failure during a survival situation. These items may fail when required to serve their purpose.

(a) Matches and Lighters. Ensure you waterproof these items.

(b) Convex Lens. Binocular, camera, telescopic sights, or magnifying lens are used on bright, sunny days to ignite tender.

(c) Flint and Steel: Sometimes known as metal matches or "Mag Block". Scrape your knife or carbon steel against the flint to produce a spark onto the tinder. Some types of flint & steel designs will have a block of magnesium attached to the device, which can be shaved onto the tinder prior to igniting. Other designs may have magnesium mixed into the flint to produce a higher quality of spark.

(2) Primitive Methods. Primitive fire methods are those developed by early man. There are numerous techniques that fall into this category. The only method that will be taught at MCMWTC is the Bow & Drill.

(3) Bow & Drill. The technique of starting a fire with a bow & drill is a true field expedient fire starting method, which requires a piece of cord and knife from your survival kit to construct. The components of the bow & drill are bow, drill, socket, and fireboard, ember patch, and bird's nest.

(a) Bow: The bow is a resilient, green stick about 3/4 of an inch in diameter and 30-36 inches in length. The bowstring can be any type of cord, however, 550 cord works best. Tie the string from one end of the bow to the other, without any slack.

(b) Drill: The drill should be a straight, seasoned hardwood stick about 1/2 to 3/4 of an inch in diameter and 8 to 12 inches in length. The top end is tapered to a blunt point to reduce friction generated in the socket. The bottom end is slightly rounded to fit snugly into the depression on the fireboard.

(c) Socket: The socket is an easily grasped stone or piece of hardwood or bone with a slight depression on one side. Use it to hold the drill in place and to apply downward pressure.

(d) Fire board: The fire board is a seasoned softwood board which should ideally be 3/4 of an inch thick, 2-4 inches wide, and 8-10 inches long. Cut a depression 3/4 of an inch from the edge on one side of the fireboard. Cut a U-shape notch from the edge of the fireboard into the depression. This notch is designed to collect and form an ember, which will be used to ignite the tinder.

(e) Ember Patch: The ember patch is made from any type of suitable material (i.e., leather, aluminum foil, and bark). It is used to catch and transfer the ember from the fireboard to the bird's nest. Ideally, it should be 4 inches by 4 inches in size.

(f) Bird's Nest: The bird's nest is a double handful of tinder, which will be made into the shape of a nest. Tinder must be dry and finely shredded material (i.e., outer bark from juniper/cedar/sage brush or inner bark from cottonwood/aspen or dry grass/moss). Lay your tinder out in two equal rows about 4 inches wide and 8-12 inches long. Loosely roll the first row into a ball and knead the tinder to further break down the fibers. Place this ball perpendicular onto the second row of tinder and wrap. Knead the tinder until all fibers of the ball are interwoven. Insert the drill half way into the ball to form a partial cylinder. This is where the ember will be placed.

(4) Producing a fire using the bow & drill.

(a) Place the ember patch under the U-shaped notch.

(b) Assume the kneeling position, with the left foot on the fireboard near the depression.

(c) Load the bow with the drill. Ensure the drill is between the wood of the bow and bow string. Place the drill into the depression on the fireboard. Place the socket on the tapered end of the drill.

(d) Use the left hand to hold the socket while applying downward pressure.

(e) Use the right hand to grasp the bow. With a smooth sawing motion, move the bow back and forth to twirl the drill.

(f) Once you have established a smooth motion, smoke will appear. Once smoke appears, apply more downward pressure and saw the bow faster.

(g) When a thick layer of smoke has accumulated around the depression, stop all movement. Remove the bow, drill, and socket from the fire board, without moving the fireboard. Carefully remove your left foot off the fireboard.

(h) Gently tap the fireboard to ensure all of the ember has fallen out of the U-shaped notch and is lying on the ember patch. Remove the fireboard.

(i) Slowly fan the black powder to solidify it into a glowing ember. Grasping the ember patch, carefully drop the ember into the cylinder of the bird's nest.

(j) Grasp the bird's nest with the cylinder facing towards you and parallel to the ground. Gently blow air into the cylinder. As smoke from the nest becomes thicker, continue to blow air into the cylinder until fire appears.

(5) Trouble Shooting the Bow & Drill

(a) Drill will not stay in depression- Apply more downward pressure and/or increase width/depth of depression.

(b) Drill will not twirl- lessens the amount of downward pressure and/or tighten bowstring.

(c) Socket smoking- Lessen the amount of downward pressure. Wood too soft when compared to hardness of drill. Add some lubrication: animal fat, oil, or grease.

(d) No smoke- Drill and fireboard are the same wood. Wood may not be seasoned. Check drill to ensure that it is straight. Keep left hand locked against left shin while sawing.

(e) Smoke but no ember- U-shaped notch not cut into center of the depression.

(f) Bowstring runs up and down drill- use a locked right arm when sawing. Check drill to ensure that it is straight. Ensure bowstring runs over the top of the left boot.

(g) Birds nest will not ignite- Tinder not dry. Nest woven too tight. Tinder not kneaded enough. Blowing too hard (ember will fracture).

e. Extinguishing the Fire. The fire must be properly extinguished. This is accomplished by using the drown, stir, and feel method.

(1) Drown the fire by pouring at water in the fire lay.

(2) Stir the ember bed to ensure that the fire is completely out.

(3) Check the bed of your fire by feeling for any hot spots.

(4) If any hot spots are found, start the process all over again.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

FMST.07.22
04/07/02

STUDENT OUTLINE

SURVIVAL NAVIGATION

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVE. In a summer mountainous environment, navigate in a survival situation, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.22)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES

(1)Without the aid of references and from a given list, choose one of the considerations for travel, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.22a)

(2)Without the aid of references and from a given list, choose two methods for locating the North Star, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.22b)

OUTLINE

1. **CONSIDERATIONS FOR STAYING OR TRAVELLING**. (FMST.07.22a)

    a. Stay with the aircraft or vehicle if possible. More than likely somebody knows where it was going. It is also a ready-made shelter.

    b. Leave only when:

        (1) Certain of present location; have known destination and the ability to get there.

        (2) Water, food, shelter, and/or help can be reached.

        (3) Convinced that rescue is not coming.

A5

c. If the decision is to travel, the following must also be considered:

    (1) Which direction to travel and why.

    (2) What plan is to be followed.

    (3) What equipment should be taken

    (4) How to mark the trail.

    (5) Predicted weather.

d. If the tactical situation permits leave the following information at the departure point:

    (1) Departure time.

    (2) Destination.

    (3) Route of travel/direction.

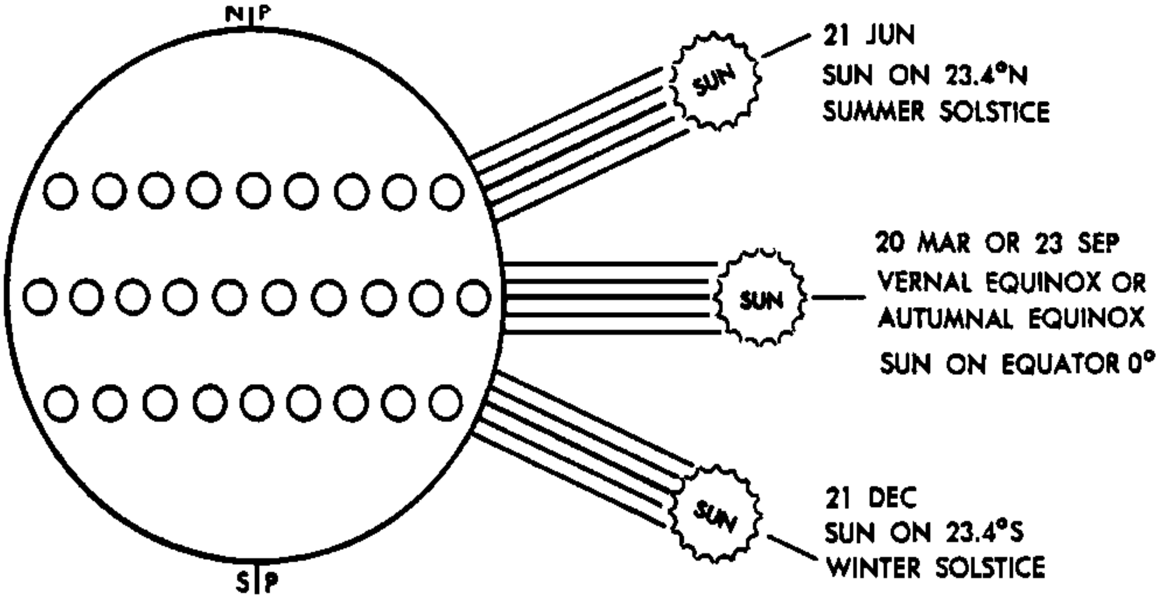
    (4) Personal condition.

    (5) Available supplies.

2. DAYTIME SURVIVAL NAVIGATION

a. Sun Movement. It is generally taken for granted that the sun rises in the east and sets in the west. This rule of thumb, however, is quite misleading. In fact, depending on an observer's latitude and the season, the sun could rise and set up to 50 degrees off of true east and west.

b. The following diagram and terms are essential to understanding how the sun and stars can help to determine direction:



Position of the Sun at Equinox and Solstice

(1) Summer/Winter Solstice: (21 June/21 December) Two times during the year when the sun has no apparent northward or southward motion.

(2) Vernal/Autumnal Equinox: (20 March/23 September) Two times during the year when the sun crosses the celestial equator and the length of day and night are approximately equal.

c. Sun's Movement. As reflected in the diagram above, the sun continuously moves in a cycle from solstice to equinox, throughout each day, however, the sun travels a uniform arc in the sky from sunrise to sunset. Exactly halfway along its daily journey, the sun will be directly south of an observer (or north if the observer is in the Southern Hemisphere). This rule may not apply to observers in the tropics (between 23.5 degrees north and south latitude) or in the Polar Regions (60 degrees latitude). It is at this point that shadows will appear their shortest. The time at which this occurs is referred to as "local apparent noon."

d. Local Apparent Noon. Whenever using any type of shadow casting device to determine direction, "local apparent noon" (or the sun's highest point during the day) must be known. Local apparent noon can be determined by the following methods.

(1) Knowing sunrise and sunset from mission orders, i.e., sunrise 0630 and sunset 1930. Take the total amount of daylight (13 hours), divide by 2 (6 hours 30 minutes), and add to sunrise (0630 plus 6 hours 30 minutes). Based on this example, local apparent noon would be 1300.

(2) Using the string method. The string method is used to find two equidistant marks before and after estimated local apparent noon. The center point between these two marks represents local apparent noon.

e. Sun's Bearing. With an understanding of the sun's daily movement, as well as its seasonal paths, a technique is derived that will determine the true bearing of the sun at sunrise and sunset. With the aid of a circular navigational chart, we can accurately navigate based on the sun's true bearing:

(1) Determine the sun's maximum amplitude at your operating latitude using the top portion of the chart.

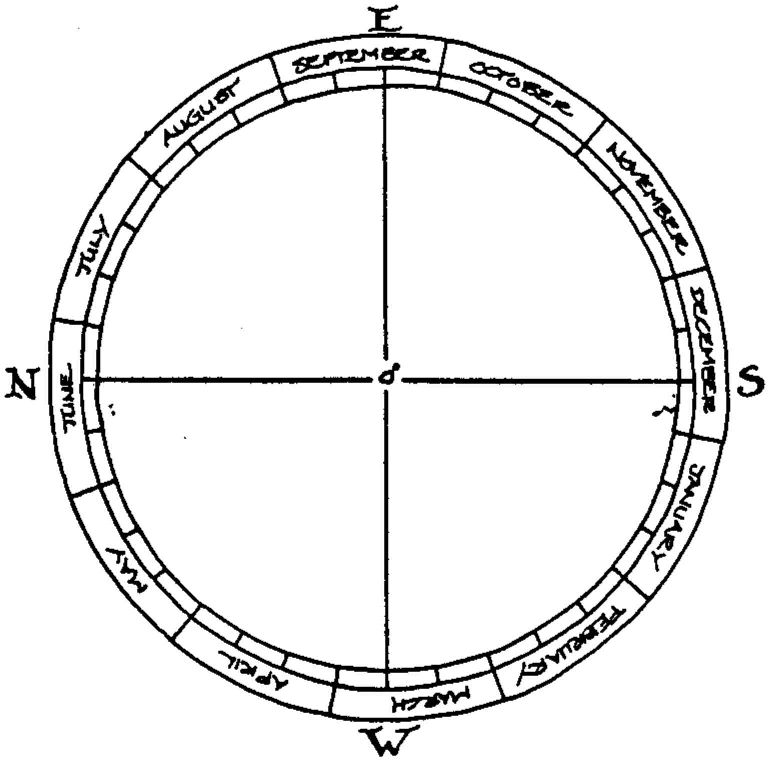
(2) Scale the center baseline of the chart where 0 appears as the middle number; write in the maximum amplitude at the extreme north and south ends of the baseline.

(3) Continue to scale the baseline; you should divide the baseline into 6 to 10 tick marks that represent equal divisions of the maximum amplitude.

(4) From today's date along the circumference, draw a straight line down until it intersects the baseline.

(5) The number this line intersects is today's solar amplitude. If the number is left of 0, it is"north" amplitude; if the number is right of 0, it is a "south" amplitude. Use the formula at the bottom of the chart to determine the sun's bearing at sunrise or sunset.

LATITUDE (N OR S)	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
MAXIMUM AMPLITUDE	24°	24°	24°	25°	26°	27°	29°	31°	34°	38°	44°	53°


E
SEPTEMBER
OCTOBER
NOVEMBER
DECEMBER
S
JANUARY
FEBRUARY
MARCH
W
APRIL
MAY
JUNE
N
JULY
AUGUST
0°

NORTH AMPLITUDES	SOUTH AMPLITUDES
SUNRISE BEARING = 90° − AMPLITUDE	SUNRISE BEARING = 90° + AMPLITUDE
SUNSET BEARING = 270° + AMPLITUDE	SUNSET BEARING = 270° − AMPLITUDE

Circular Navigational Chart

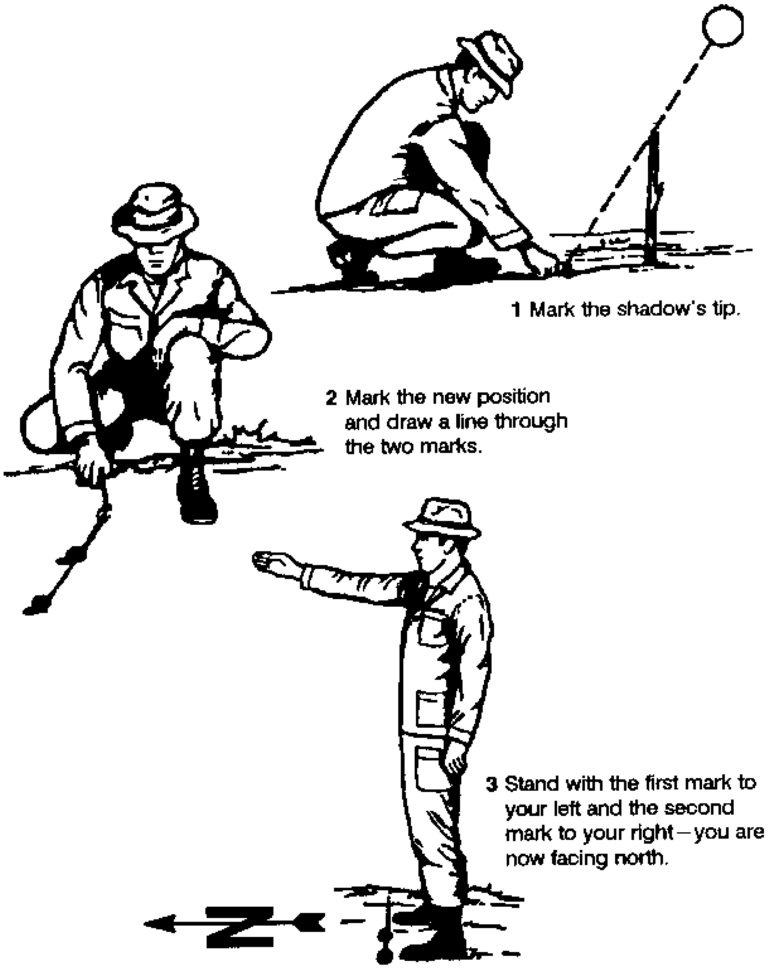
f. Shadow Stick Construction. This technique will achieve a cardinal direction within 10 degrees of accuracy if done within two hours of local apparent noon. Once again, this technique may be impractical near the Polar Regions, as shadows tend to be very long; similarly, in the tropics shadows are generally very small.

(1) Get a straight, 3-6 foot stick free of branches and pointed at the ends and 3-5 small markers: i.e., sticks, rocks, or nails.

(2) Place the stick upright in the ground and mark the shadow tip with a marker.

(3) Wait 10-15 minutes and mark shadow tip again with a marker.

(4) Repeat this until all of the markers are used.


1 Mark the shadow's tip.
2 Mark the new position and draw a line through the two marks.
3 Stand with the first mark to your left and the second mark to your right—you are now facing north.
N

SHADOW STICK METHOD

(5) The markers will form a West—East line.

(6) Put your left foot on the first marker and your right foot on the last marker, you will then be facing north.

3. **POCKET NAVIGATOR** The only material required is a small piece of paper or other flat-surface material upon which to draw the trace of shadow tips and a 1 to 2 inch pin, nail, twig, wooden matchstick, or other such device to serve as a shadow-casting rod.

a. Set this tiny rod upright on your flat piece of material so that the sun will cause it to cast a shadow. Mark the position where the base of the rod sits so it can be returned to the same spot for later readings. Secure the material so that it will not move and mark the position of the material with string, pebbles, or twigs, so that if you have to move the paper you can put it back exactly as it was. Now, mark the tip of the rod shadow.

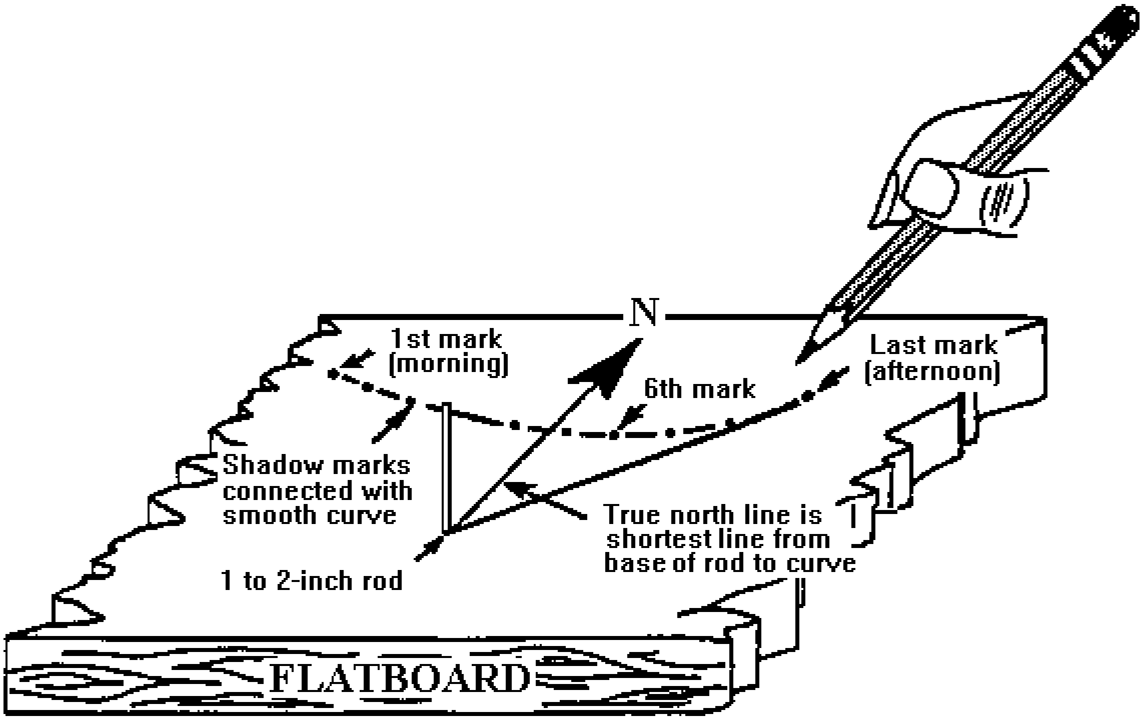
b. As the sun moves, the shadow-tip moves. Make repeated shadow-tip markings every 15 minutes. As you make the marks of the shadow tip, ensure that you write down the times of the points.

c. At the end of the day, connect the shadow-tip markings. The result will normally be a curved line. The closer to the vernal or autumnal equinoxes (March 21 and September 23) the less pronounced the curvature would be. If it is not convenient or the tactical situation does not permit to take a full day's shadow-tip markings, your observation can be continued on subsequent days by orienting the pocket navigator on the ground so that the shadow-tip is aligned with a previously plotted point.

d. The markings made at the sun's highest point during the day, or solar noon, is the north—south line. The direction of north should be indicated with an arrow on the navigator as soon as it is determined. This north-south line is drawn from the base of the rod to the mark made at solar noon. This line is the shortest line that can be drawn from the base of the pin to the shadow-tip curve.

e. To use your pocket navigator, hold it so that with the shadow-tip is aligned with a plotted point at the specified point. I.e.; if it is now 0900 the shadow-tip must be aligned with that point. This will ensure that your pocket navigator is level. The drawn arrow is now oriented to true north, from which you can orient yourself to any desired direction of travel.

f. The pocket navigator will work all day and will not be out of date for approximately one week.


N
1st mark (morning)
6th mark
Last mark (afternoon)
Shadow marks connected with smooth curve
True north line is shortest line from base of rod to curve
1 to 2-inch rod
FLATBOARD

POCKET NAVIGATOR

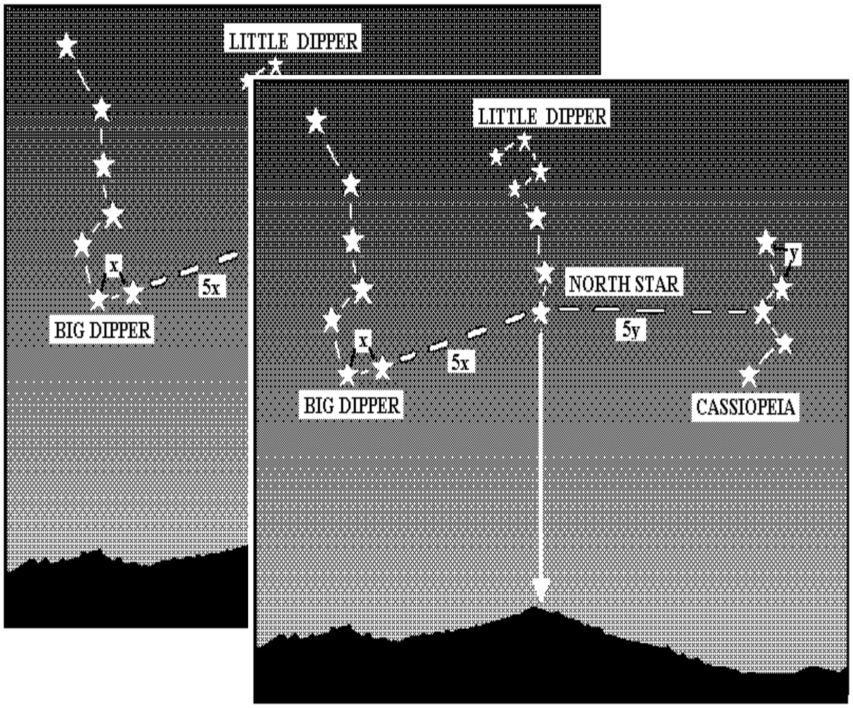
4. NIGHTTIME SURVIVAL NAVIGATION

a. Mark North. To aid you in navigating at night, it is beneficial to watch where the sun goes down. If you're going to start moving after dark mark the northerly direction.

b. Locating the North Star. There are two methods used in locating the North Star. (FMST.07.22b)

(1) Using the Big Dipper (*Ursa Major*). The best indictors are the two "dippers ". The North Star is the last star in the handle of the Little Dipper, which is not the easiest constellation to find. However, the Big Dipper is one of the most prominent constellations in the Northern Hemisphere. The two lowest stars of the Big Dipper's cup act as pointers to the North Star. If you line up these two stars, they make a straight line that runs directly to the North Star. The distance to the North Star along this line is 5 times that between the two pointer stars.

(2) Using Cassiopeia (*Big M or W*). Draw a line straight out from the center star, approximately half the distance to the Big Dipper. The North Star will be located there.

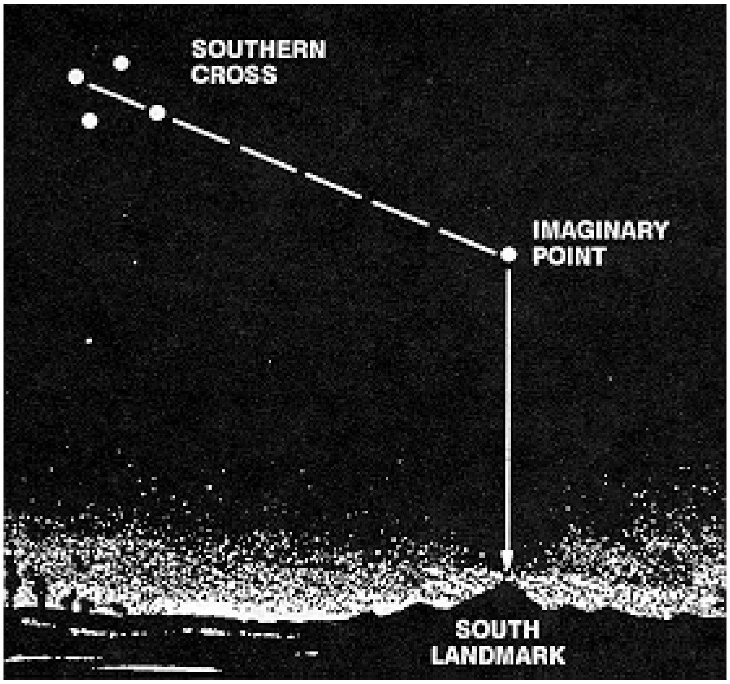


LOCATING THE NORTH STAR

NOTE: Because the Big Dipper and Cassiopeia rotate around the North Star, they will not always appear in the same position in the sky. In the higher latitudes, the North Star is less effective for the purpose of orienting because it appears higher in the sky. At the center of the Arctic Circle, it would be directly overhead and all directions lead south.

c. Southern Cross. In the Southern Hemisphere, Polaris is not visible. There, the Southern Cross is the most distinctive constellation. An imaginary line through the long axis of the Southern Cross, or True Cross, points towards a dark spot devoid of stars approximately three degrees offset from the South Pole. The True Cross should not be confused with the larger cross nearby know as the False Cross, which is less bright, more widely spaced, and has five stars. Two closely spaced, very bright stars that trail behind the crosspiece can confirm the True Cross. These two stars are often easier to pick out than the cross itself. Look for them. Two of the stars in the True Cross are among the brightest stars in the heavens; they are the stars on the southern and eastern arms. The stars on the northern and western arms are not as conspicuous, but are bright.

NOTE: The imaginary point depicted in the picture is the dark spot devoid of stars.



SOUTHERN CROSS

d. Moon Navigator. Like the sun, the moon rises in the east and sets in the west. Use the same method of the shadow stick as you did during the day.

5. **IMPROVISED COMPASSES**. There are three improvised techniques to construct a compass.

   a. Synthetic technique. The required items are a piece of synthetic material, (i.e., parachute cloth), and a small piece of iron or steel that is long, thin, and light. Aluminum or yellow metals won't work (only things that rust will do). A pin or needle is perfect, but a straightened paper clip, piece of steel baling wire or barbed wire could also work.

      (1) Stroke the needle repeatedly in one direction against the synthetic material. Ensure that you lift the material a few inches up into the air at the end of each stroke, returning to the beginning of the needle before descending for another stroke in the same direction. Do this approximately 30 strokes. This will magnetize the needle.

      (2) Float the metal on still water using balled up paper, wood chip, or leaf. Gather some water in a non-magnetic container or a scooped out recess in the

ground, such as a puddle. Do not use a "tin can" which is made of steel. (Aluminum can would be fine.) Place the float on the water, then the metal on it. It will slowly turn to orient itself.

b. Magnet technique. You will achieve the same results by using a magnet. Follow the same steps as you did with the synthetic material. The magnets you are most likely to have available to you are those in a speaker or headphones of a radio.

c. Magnetization through a battery. A power source of 2 volts or more from a battery can be used with a short length of insulated wire to magnetize metal. Coil the wire around a needle. If the wire is non-insulated, wrap the needle with paper or cardboard. Attach the ends to the battery terminals for 5 minutes.

d. Associated problems with improvised compasses. The following are common problems with all improvised compasses.

(1) Soft steel tends to lose its magnetism fairly quickly, so you will have to demagnetize your needle occasionally, though you should not have to do this more than two or three times a day.

(2) Test your compass by disturbing it after it settles. Do this several times. If it returns to the same alignment, you're OK. It will be lined up north and south, though you will have to determine by other means which end is north. Use the sun, stars, or any other natural signs in the area.

(3) Remember that this will give magnetic north. In extreme northern latitudes, the declination angle can be extreme.

6. SURVIVAL NAVIGATION TECHNIQUES

a. Navigator.

(1) Employ a navigation method.

(2) Find the cardinal direction.

(3) Pick a steering mark in the desired direction of travel.

b. Maintain a Log: The possibility may arise when you will not have a map of the area. A log will decrease the chance of walking in circles.

(1) Construction.

(a) Use any material available to you i.e., paper, clothing, MRE box, etc.

(b) Draw a field sketch annotating North, prominent terrain features, and Friendly/enemy position.

(2) Maintenance.

(a) Annotate distance traveled, elevation gained and lost, and cardinal directions.

(b) Maintain and update field sketch as movement progresses.

(c) Ensure readability of your field sketch. (I.e., don't clutter the sketch so much that it can't be read.)

c. During Movement Constantly Refer To.

(1) Log.

(2) Steering marks.

d. Actions If You Become Lost.

(1) Immediate action

(a) Orient your sketch. This will probably make your mistake obvious.

(2) Corrective action

(a) Backtrack using steering marks until you have determined the location of your error.

(b) Re-orient your sketch.

(c) Select direction of travel and continue to march.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

FMST.07.08
04/07/02

STUDENT OUTLINE

WATER PROCUREMENT

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVE Given a unit in a cold weather environment and the necessary equipment and supplies, perform cold weather preventive medicine, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.08)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES

(1) Without the aid of references from a given list, choose one of the techniques for finding incidental water, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.08i)

(2) Without the aid of references from a given list, choose one of the four hazardous fluids to avoid substituting for potable water, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.08j)

(3) Without the aid of references, construct a water-producing device, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.08k)

OUTLINE

1. WATER INTAKE

a. Thirst is not a strong enough sensation to determine how much water you need.

b. The best plan is to drink, utilizing the OVER DRINK method. Drink plenty of water anytime it is available and particularly when eating.

A6

c. Dehydration is a major threat. A loss of only 5 % of your body fluids causes thirst, irritability, nausea, and weakness; a 10% loss causes dizziness, headache, inability to walk, and a tingling sensation in limbs; a 15% loss causes dim vision, painful urination, swollen tongue, deafness, and a feeling of numbness in the skin; also a loss of more than 15% body fluids could result in death.

d. Your water requirements will be increased if:

    (1) You have a fever.

    (2) You are experiencing fear or anxiety.

    (3) You evaporate more body fluid than necessary. (i.e., not using the proper shelter to your advantage)

    (4) You have improper clothing.

    (5) You ration water.

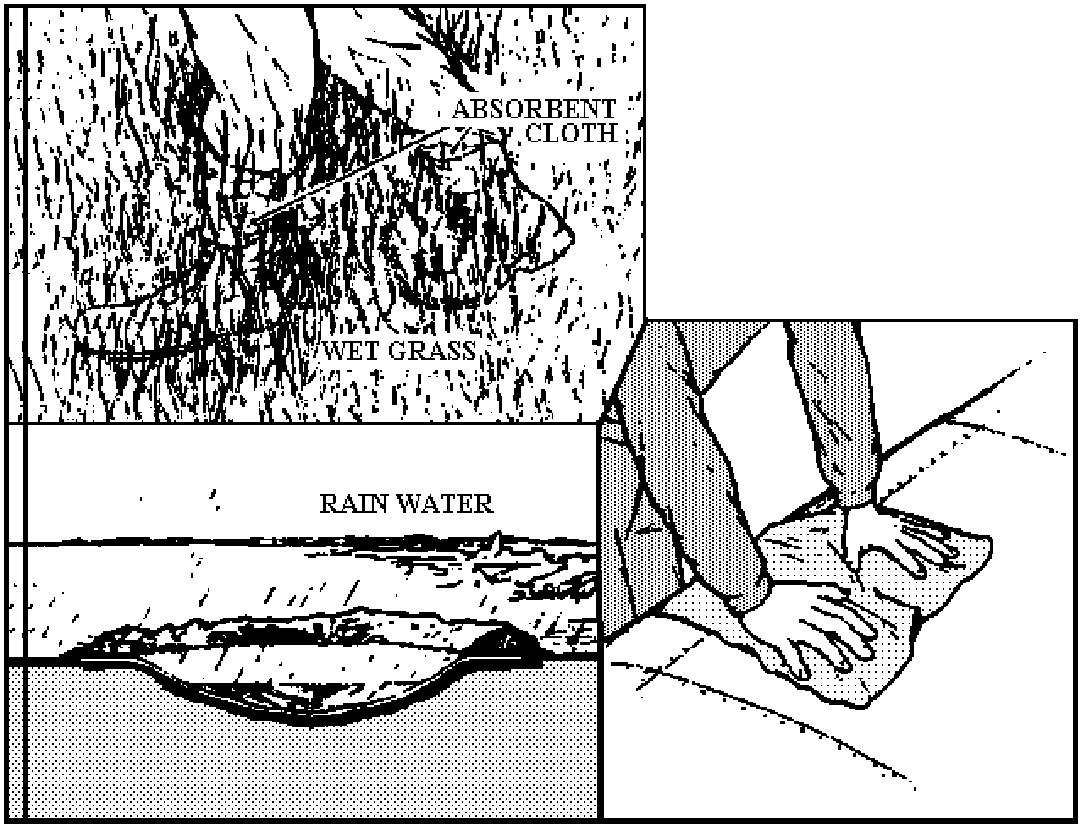
    (6) You overwork.

2. **INCIDENTAL WATER**. (FMST.07.08.i)

a. During movement, you may have to ration water until you reach a reliable water source. Incidental water may sometimes provide opportunities to acquire water. Although not a reliable or replenished source, it may serve to stretch your water supply or keep you going in an emergency. The following are sources for incidental water:

    (1) Dew: In areas with moderate to heavy dew, tying rags or tuffs of fine grass around your ankles can collect dew. While walking through dewy grass before sunrise, the rags or grass will saturate and can be rung out into a container. The rags or grass can be replaced and the process is repeated.

    (2) Rainfall: Rainwater collected directly in clean container or in plants that contain no harmful toxins is generally safe to drink without disinfecting. The survivor should always be prepared to collect rainfall at a moment's notice. An inverted poncho works well to collect rainfall.



3. **HAZARDOUS FLUIDS** (FMST.07.08j)

a. Survivors have occasionally attempted to augment their water supply with other fluids, such as alcoholic beverages, urine, blood, or seawater. While it is true that each of these fluids has a high water content, the impurities they contain may require the body to expend more fluid to purify them. Some hazardous fluids are:

(1) Seawater: Seawater in more than minimal quantities are actually toxic. The concentration of sodium and magnesium salts is so high that fluid must be drawn from the body to eliminate the salts and eventually the kidneys cease to function.

(2) Alcohol: Alcohol dehydrates the body and clouds judgment. Super-cooled liquid, if ingested, can cause immediate frostbite of the throat, and potential death.

(3) Blood: Blood, besides being salty, is a food. Drinking it will require the body to expend additional fluid to digest it.

(4) Urine: Drinking urine is not only foolish, but also dangerous. Urine is nothing more than the body's waste. Drinking it only places this waste back into the body, which requires more fluid to process it again.

4. **WATER QUALITY**. Water contains minerals, toxins, and pathogens. Some of these, consumed in large enough quantities may be harmful to human health. Pathogens are our primary concern. Pathogens are divided into Virus, Cysts, Bacteria, and Parasites. Certain pathogens are more resistant to chemicals and small enough to move through microscopic holes in equipment (i.e., T-shirt, parachute). Certain pathogens also have the ability to survive in extremely cold water temperatures. Pathogens generally do not live in snow and ice. Water quality is divided into three levels of safety with disinfecting as the most desired level, then purified, followed by potable.

    a. Disinfecting. Water disinfecting removes or destroys harmful microorganisms. Giardia cysts are an ever-present danger in clear appearing mountain water throughout the world. By drinking non-potable water you may contract diseases or swallow organisms that could harm you. Examples of such diseases or organisms are Dysentery, Cholera, Typhoid, Flukes, and Leeches.

    b. Remember impure water, no matter how overpowering the thirst, is one of the worst hazards in a survival situation.

    c. The first step in disinfecting is to select a treatment method. The two methods we will discuss are as follows: (FMST.07.08j)

        (1) Heat. The Manual of Naval Preventive Medicine (P-5010) states that you must bring the water to a rolling boil before it is considered safe for human consumption. This is the most preferred method.

            (a) Bringing water to the boiling point will kill 99.9% of all Giardia cysts. The Giardia cyst dies at 60°C and Cryptosporidium dies at 65C. Water will boil at 14,000’ at 86°C and at 10,000’ at 90C. With this in mind you should note that altitude does not make a difference unless you are extremely high.

        (2) Chemicals. There are numerous types of chemicals that can disinfect water. Below are a few of the most common. In a survival situation, you will use whatever you have available.

            (a) Iodine Tablets.

            (b) Chlorine Bleach.

            (c) Iodine Solution.

            (d) Betadine Solution.

            (e) Military water purification tablets. These tablets are standard issue for all DOD agencies. These tablets have a shelf life of four years from the date of manufacture, unless opened. Once the seal is broken, they have a shelf life of one year, not to exceed the initial expiration date of four years.

49703
Month / Year / Batch Number

(3) Water Disinfecting Techniques and Halogen Doses.

Iodination techniques Added to 1 liter or quart of water	Amount for 4 PPM	Amount for 8 PPM
Iodine tablets Tetraglcine hydroperiodide EDWGT Potable Aqua Globaline	½ tablet	1 tablet
2% iodine solution (tincture)	0.2 ml 5 gtts	0.4 ml 10 gtts
10% povidone-iodine solution*	0.35 ml 8 gtts	0.70 ml 16 gtts
Chlorination techniques	Amount for 5 PPM	Amount for 10 PPM
Household bleach 5% Sodium hypochlorie	0.1 Ml 2 gtts	0.2 ml 4 gtts
AquaClear Sodium dichloroisocyanurate		1 tablet
AquaCure, AquaPure, Chlor-floc Chlorine plus flocculating agent		8 PPM 1 tablet

*Providone-iodine solutions release free iodine in levels adequate for disinfecting, but scant data is available.

Measure with dropper (1 drop=0.05 ml) or tuberculin syringe

PPM-part per million gtts-drops ml-milliliter

Concentration of Contact time in minutes at various water temperatures

Halogen

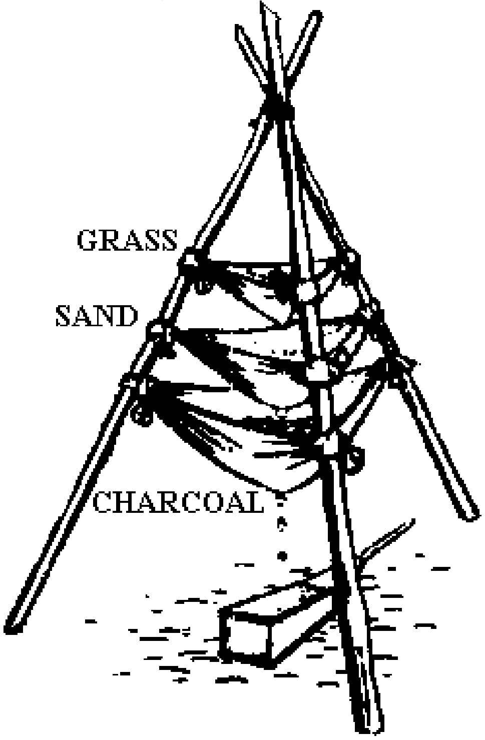
	5 C / 40 F	15 C / 60 F	30 C / 85 F
2 PPM	240	180	60
4 PPM	180	50	45
8 PPM	60	30	15

NOTE: These contact times have been extended from the usual recommendations to account for recent data that prolonged contact time is needed in very cold water to kill *Giardia* cysts.

NOTE: Chemicals may not destroy Cryptosporidium.

d. Purification. Water purification is the removal of organic and inorganic chemicals and particulate matter, including radioactive particles. While purification can eliminate offensive color, taste, and odor, it may not remove or kill microorganisms.

(1) Filtration. Filtration purifying is a process by which commercial manufacturers build water filters. The water filter is a three-tier system. The first layer, or grass layer, removes the larger impurities. The second layer, or sand layer, removes the smaller impurities. The final layer, or charcoal layer (**not the ash but charcoal from a fire**), bonds and holds the toxins. All layers are placed on some type of straining device and the charcoal layer should be at least 5-6 inches thick. Layers should be changed frequently and straining material should be boiled. Remember that this is not a disinfecting method, cysts can possibly move through this system.



WATER FILTER

(2) Commercial Water Filters. Commercial water filters are generally available in most retail stores and may be with you. Understanding what the filter can do is the first step in safeguarding against future illnesses.

(a) A filter that has a .3 micron opening or larger will not stop Cryptosporidium.

(b) A filter system that does not release a chemical (i.e., iodine) may not kill all pathogens.

(c) A filter that has been overused may be clogged. Usage may result in excessive pumping pressure that can move harmful pathogens through the opening.

e. Potable. Potable indicates only that a water source, on average over a period of time, contains a "minimal microbial hazard," so the statistical likelihood of illness is acceptable.

(1) Sedimentation. Sedimentation is the separation of suspended particles large enough to settle rapidly by gravity. The time required depends on the size of the particle. Generally, 1 hour is adequate if the water is allowed to sit without agitation. After sediment has formed on the bottom of the container, the clear water is decanted or filtered from the top. Microorganisms, especially cysts, eventually settle, but this takes longer and the organisms are easily disturbed during pouring or filtering. Sedimentation should not be considered a means of disinfecting and should be used only as a last resort or in an extreme tactical situation.

5. **SOLAR STILLS.** (FMST.07.08k)

a. Solar stills are designed to supplement water reserves. Contrary to belief, they will not provide enough water to meet the daily requirement for water.

b. AboveGround Solar Still. This device allows the survivor to make water from vegetation. To make the aboveground solar still, locate a sunny slope on which to place the still, a clear plastic bag, green leafy vegetation, and a small rock.

(1) Construction.

(a) Fill the bag with air by turning the opening into the breeze or by "scooping" air into the bag.

(b) Fill the bag half to three-quarters full of green leafy vegetation. Be sure to remove all hard sticks or sharp spines that might puncture the bag.

CAUTION

Do not use poisonous vegetation. It will provide poisonous liquid.

(c) Place a small rock or similar item in the bag.

(d) Close the bag and tie the mouth securely as close to the end of the bag as possible to keep the maximum amount of air space. If you have a small piece of tubing, small straw, or hollow reed, inserts one end in the mouth of the bag before tying it securely. Tie off or plug the tubing so that air will not escape. This tubing will allow you to drain out condensed water without untying the bag.

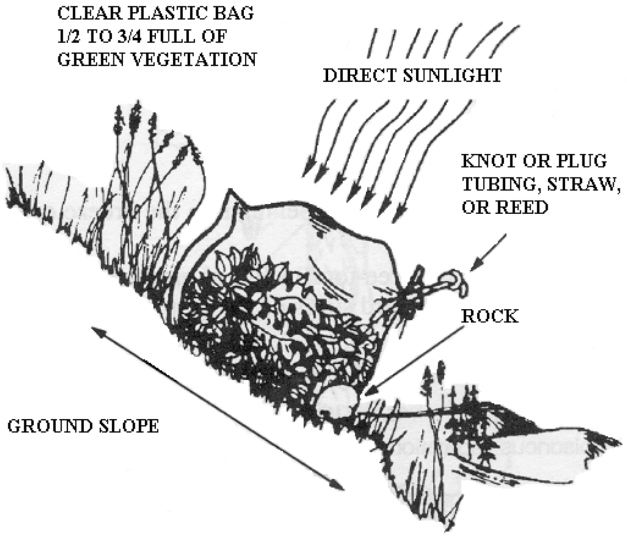
(e) Place the bag, mouth downhill, on a slope in full sunlight. Position the mouth of the bag slightly higher than the low point in the bag.

(f) Settle the bag in place so that the rock works itself into the low point in the bag.

(g) To get the condensed water from the still, loosen the tie and tip the bag so that the collected water will drain out. Retie the mouth and reposition the still to allow further condensation.

(h) Change vegetation in the bag after extracting most of the water from it.

(i) Using 1-gallon zip-loc. bag instead of trash bags is a more efficient means of construction.



ABOVE GROUND SOLAR STILL

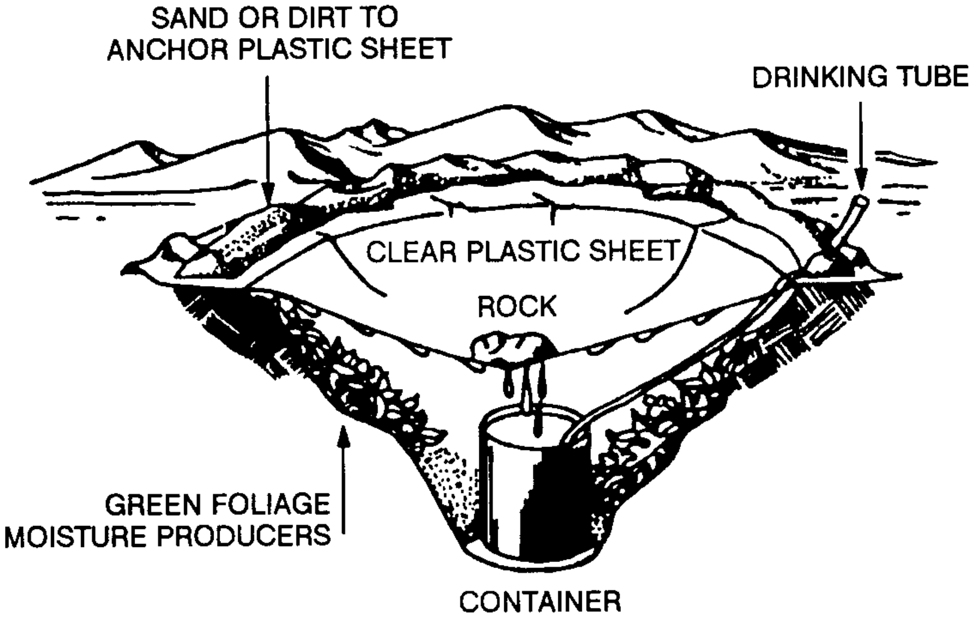
c. BelowGround Solar Still. Materials consist of a digging stick, clear plastic sheet, container, rock, and a drinking tube.

(1) Construction.

(a) Select a site where you believe the soil will contain moisture (such as a dry streambed or a low spot where rainwater has collected). The soil should be easy to dig, and will be exposed to sunlight.

(b) Dig a bowl-shaped hole about 1 meter across and 24 inches deep.

(c) Dig a sump in the center of the hole. The sump depth and perimeter will depend on the size of the container you have to place in it. The bottom of the sump should allow the container to stand upright.


SAND OR DIRT TO ANCHOR PLASTIC SHEET
DRINKING TUBE
CLEAR PLASTIC SHEET
ROCK
GREEN FOLIAGE MOISTURE PRODUCERS
CONTAINER

BELOW GROUND SOLAR STILL

(d) Anchor the tubing to the container's bottom by forming a loose overhand knot in the tubing. Extend the unanchored end of the tubing up, over, and beyond the lip of the hole.

(e) Place the plastic sheet over the hole, covering its edges with soil to hold in place. Place a rock in the center of the plastic sheet.

(f) Lower the plastic sheet into the hole until it is about 18 inches below ground level. Make sure the cone's apex is directly over the container. Ensure the plastic does not touch the sides of the hole because the earth will absorb the moisture.

(g) Put more soil on the edges of the plastic to hold it securely and prevent the loss of moisture.

(h) Plug the tube when not in use so that moisture will not evaporate.

(i) Plants can be placed in the hole as a moisture source. If so, dig out additional soil from the sides.

(j) If polluted water is the only moisture source, dig a small trough outside the hole about 10 inches from the still's lip. Dig the trough about 10 inches deep and 3 inches wide. Pour the polluted water in the trough. Ensure you do not spill any polluted water around the rim of the hole where the plastic touches the soil. The trough holds the polluted water and the soil filters it as the still draws it. This process works well when the only water source is salt water.

(k) Three stills will be needed to meet the individual daily water intake needs.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

WMC
04/07/02

STUDENT HANDOUT

FORAGING PLANTS AND INSECTS FOR SURVIVAL USES

PURPOSE The purpose of this period of instruction is to familiarize the Wilderness Medicine Student with the potential resources for survival sustenance.

OUTLINE

1. GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS. There are few places without some type of edible vegetation. Plants contain vitamins, minerals, protein, carbohydrates, and dietary fiber. Some plants also contain fats. The following are general considerations:

a. Do not assume that because birds or animals have eaten a plant, it is edible by humans.

b. Poor plant recognition skills will seriously limit your ability to survive.

c. Plant dormancy and snowfall make foraging plants difficult during the winter months.

d. Plants generally poison by:

(1) Ingestion: When a person eats a part of a poisonous plant.

(2) Contact: When a person makes contact with a poisonous plant that cause any type of skin irritation or dermatitis.

(3) Absorption: When a person absorbs the poison through the skin, which can interrupt a bodily function.

(4) Inhalation: Poisoning can occur through the inhalation of smoke that contains poisonous plant residue.

A7

e. Plant properties can change throughout the growing season. Plants can be edible during certain periods while poisonous in others.

2. PLANT RECOGNITION. Plant recognition can take years of study to learn. The following is used as a general guideline.

a. Types of plants that should be avoided are:

    (1) All mushrooms.

    (2) Plants with a milky sap.

    (3) White and yellow berries should be avoided, as they are almost always poisonous.

    (4) Plants with shiny leaves should be considered poisonous.

    (5) Plants that are irritants to the skin should not be eaten.

    (6) All beans and peas should be avoided.

b. Edible Plants: There are several edible plants found at the Marine Corps Mountain Warfare Training Center. All are easy to recognize and many of the same plants are located throughout the United States and abroad.

    (1) Wild Onions - Complete plant.

    (2) Dandelion - Roots and leaves.

    (3) Mallow - Leaves, stem and flowers.

    (4) Watercress -Complete plant.

    (5) Cattail - Root, stalk and stem.

    (6) Bull Thistle - The flower.

    (7) Juniper Tree - Berries and cambium layer.

    (8) All Conifers - Cambium layer, needles, and nuts within the cones.

    (9) Currants - Berries.

c. Preparing an edible plant. All edible plants should be boiled twice with a change of water to remove any bitterness, acids, or bacteria that the plant may contain.

3. PLANT TESTING PROCEDURE. Always adopt the following procedure when trying unknown plants as food.

a. Wait 8 hours without eating.

b. Select a plant that grows in sufficient quantity in the local area. Separate the part of the plant you wish to test root, stem, leaf, or flower. Certain parts of plants are poisonous while the, other parts may be edible.

c. Rub a portion of the plant you have selected on your inner forearm. Wait 15 minutes and look for any swelling, rash, or irritation.

d. Boil the plant or plant part in changes of water. The toxic properties of many plants are water-soluble or can be destroyed by heat. Cooking and discarding two changes of water can lessen the amount of poisonous material or remove it completely. These boiling periods should last at least 5 minutes each.

e. Place 1 teaspoon of the prepared plant food in the mouth and chew for 5 minutes, but do not swallow. If unpleasant effects occur (burning, bitter, or nauseating taste), remove the plant from the mouth at once and discard it as a food source. If no unpleasant effects occur, swallow the plant material and wait 8 hours.

f. If after 8 hours no unpleasant effects have occurred (nausea, cramps, and diarrhea), eat two tablespoonfuls and wait 8 hours.

g. In no unpleasant effects have occurred at the end of this 8-hour period, the plant may be considered edible.

h. Completely document and sketch the plant in a logbook to refer to for future use. This will aid in future procurement of this plant. If plant properties have changed, you will have to repeat the plant testing procedure.

NOTE: Have charcoal ready to eat. If any side effects occur, attempt to induce vomiting and immediately eat charcoal. Charcoal will absorb toxins and reduce the chance of Death.

4. MEDICINAL PLANTS One of the many things that hinder a survivor's ability to survive is medical problems. Injuries incurred will reduce survival expectancy and the ability to evade.

a. Coyote Willow: Coyote Willow is a thick forming shrub with clustered stems and very narrow leaves. It habits wet soils, especially riverbanks, sandbars, and silt flats.

(1) Drinking tea made from the inner bark can reduce fever.

(2) The dried and powdered inner bark can be used to stop bleeding.

(3) Administering a half-cup of willow charcoal dissolved in water can treat diarrhea.

(4) The Coyote Willow roots can be mashed and applied to tooth aches.

b. Yarrow: Yarrow is a plant (tall, usually not branched, with many white, slat topped group flowers). Do not confuse Yarrow with Water Hemlock.

(1) Rubbing a handful of crushed Yarrow flowers and leaves on any exposed can make insect repellent skin.

(2) Placing a Yarrow leaf poultice on the wound can stop bleeding.

(3) Relief from many rashes, including poison oak and ivy, can be achieved by applying a Yarrow leaf compress to the effected area.

(4) The Yarrow root can be chewed to relieve the pain of a toothache or break a fever.

(5) A potent anesthetic can be made by scrubbing fresh Yarrow roots in water to clean them. Once the roots are clean, crush them into a spongy mass and apply gently to the wounded area.

c. Tea To make a tea, place the plants in a container and pour in two cups of boiling water. Let the mixture steep for 20 minutes and drink.

d. Poultice: Place plant (Coyote Willow, Yarrow, etc.) in gauze or other similar material and fold it so the gauze will hold the plant in place. Put gauze in a larger cloth, about 6"x8", and roll the sides inward. Fold the cloth over without losing the plant. While boiling water, dip the bottom portion of the cloth containing the plant into the hot water by holding the edges. Keep the plant submerged in the boiling water until it becomes saturated. Bring the cloth straight up and with a twisting motion, wring the excess water back into the pot. Apply the poultice to the affected area as soon as it has cooled enough to place on the wound. To be effective, the poultice should be as hot as you can tolerate it.

e. Compress: A compress is made just like a poultice; except it is cold when applied to the wound. NOTE: Poultice or Compress should be applied for 1 to 24 hours, as needed. When applying a poultice, you may experience a throbbing pain as it draws out the infection and neutralizes toxins. When the pain subsides, the poultice has accomplished its task and should be removed. Apply a fresh poultice as needed until the desired level of healing has been reached.

5. POISONOUS PLANTS. Rarely will a survivor have an ideal means of killing large game, however there are certain plants that can aid the survivor. The two plants that we will talk about are the Water Hemlock and Monkshood.

a. Preparing Poisonous Plants: Once a poisonous plant has been located, dig up the root of the plant. The roots of the Water Hemlock and Monkshood generally grow 8 to 10 inches deep. Extreme caution must be used when handling the root. Do not handle the root without a barrier between your hands and the root. A barrier can be gloves, socks, T-shirt, or even moss. Split the root lengthwise to expose the inside of the root where the toxin is located. With the root split, rub the tip of your spear/arrow inside of the root opening. In a slow controlled manner, work from the bottom of the tip to the top. Once the tip is thoroughly coated, allow the toxin to dry and apply another coat to the tip. Continue to apply coat after coat of toxin, until the root is completely drained of its' toxin. You are now finished and the tip is ready for use.

NOTE: Do not eat the meat in the vicinity of the poisoned wound.

CAUTION: Do not apply poison to the actual point and edges of tip. This avoids accidental puncture to you. Wash and boil all gloves and clothing used as a barrier before wearing

6. INSECTS. Insects are the most abundant life form on earth and are an excellent survival food. They are easy to catch and provide 65-80% protein; compared to 20% for beef. They aren't too appetizing, but personal bias has no place in a survival situation. The focus must remain on maintaining your health.

a. Insects to avoid.

(1) All adults that sting or bite.

(2) Hairy or brightly colored insects.

(3) All Caterpillars.

(4) Insects that have a pungent odor.

(5) All spiders.

(6) Disease carriers like ticks, flies, or mosquitoes.

b. Edible Insects.

(1) Insect Larvae.

(2) Grasshoppers.

(3) Beetles.

(4) Grubs.

(5) Ants.

(6) Termites.

(7) Worms.

c. Foraging for Insects. One must be careful not to expend more energy harvesting food than can be replaced. For example, catching insects such as grasshoppers can become exasperating and tiring.

(1) At night grasshoppers climb tall plants and clings to the stalks near the top. They can be picked from the plants in the early morning while they are chilled and dormant.

(2) Dig for worms in damp humus soil, under rocks/logs or look for them on the ground after it has rained.

(3) Carpenter ants are found in dead trees and stumps, which can be gathered by hand.

(4) Most other insects can be found in rotten logs, under rocks, and in open grassy areas.

d. Preparing Edible Insects.

(1) Insects with a hard outer shell have parasites. Remove the wings and barbed legs before cooking.

(2) Drop worms into potable water for at least a half-hour. They will naturally purge themselves. You can either cook or eat them raw.

(3) Most other insects can be eaten raw. Cooking insects will improve their taste. If the thought of eating insects is unbearable, grind them into a paste and mix with other foods.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

WMC.A8.0
05/02/01

STUDENT HANDOUT

SURVIVAL TRAPS AND SNARES

PURPOSE: The purpose of this class is to familiarize the student with some of the techniques used to take game. Game can be useful for both food and clothing.

OUTLINE

1. GENERAL TIPS AND TECHNIQUES FOR TRAPPING

a. General Tips. Knowing a few general hints and tips will make the trapping of animals much easier and considerably more effective. The eight general tips for trapping are:

(1) Know your game: Knowing the habits of the animal you want to trap will help lure it into your trap. Such things as when and where they move, feed, and water will help you determine where the trap can be most effectively placed.

(2) Keep things simple: You don't have time in a survival situation to construct elaborate traps and they do not necessarily do a better job.

(3) Set traps in the right place: Animals will travel and stop in certain locations. That is where to best employ traps.

(4) Cover up your scent: Animals will avoid an area, which smells strange to them. Smoke from your fire is the best cover to use.

(5) Use the right type of trap: Some traps work better than others do (i.e. a deadfall works better on squirrels than a spring pole).

(6) Use the right size trap: Adjust the size of your traps to the size of the animal.

(7) Check traps: Check your traps twice daily: morning and evening. Checking your traps less than twice a day can allow your game to escape, rot, or be taken by other predators.

(8) Bait your traps: Bait of any type will add to your chances of success.

b. General Techniques. A general technique is the method in which the trap is intended to kill or hold the animal.

(1) Strangulation: This method strangles the animal, such as a snare.

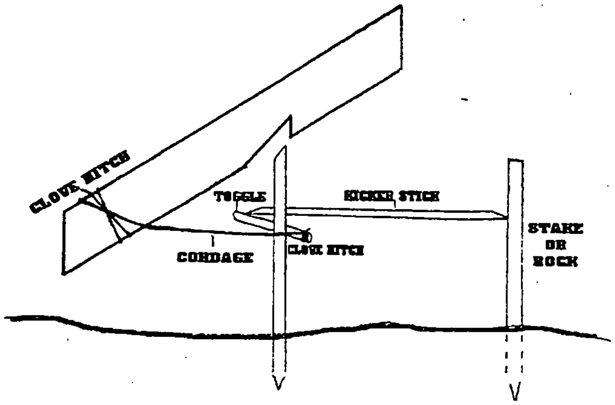
(2) Mangling: This method crushes the animal, such as a deadfall.

(3) Entanglement: This method entangles the animal, such as a net.

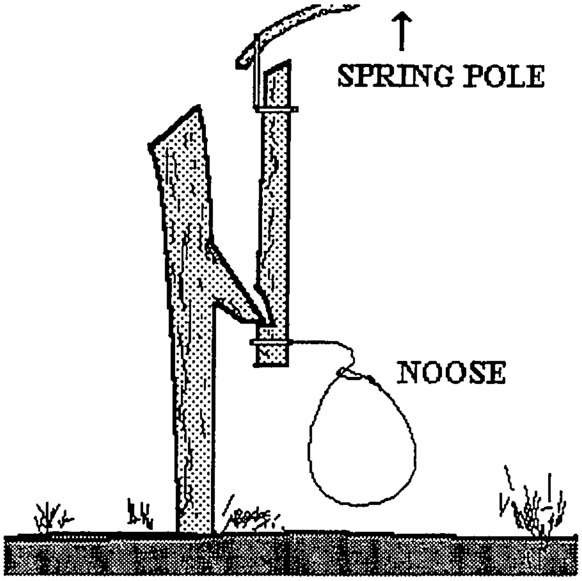
(4) Live: This method holds the animal, such as a box trap.

c. Types of Triggers. There are three basic triggers used for all traps and path guards. Depending on the situation, variations of these triggers can be used.

(1) Puite Figure 4.

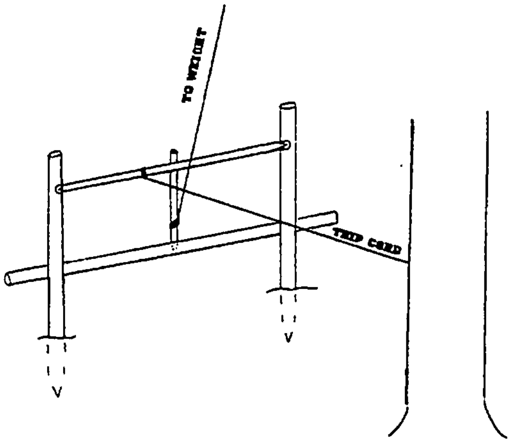


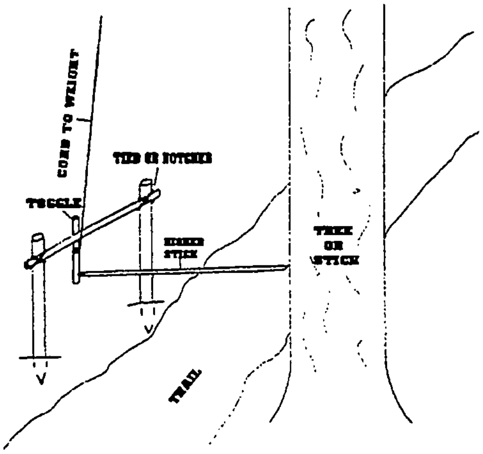
(2) Toggle.

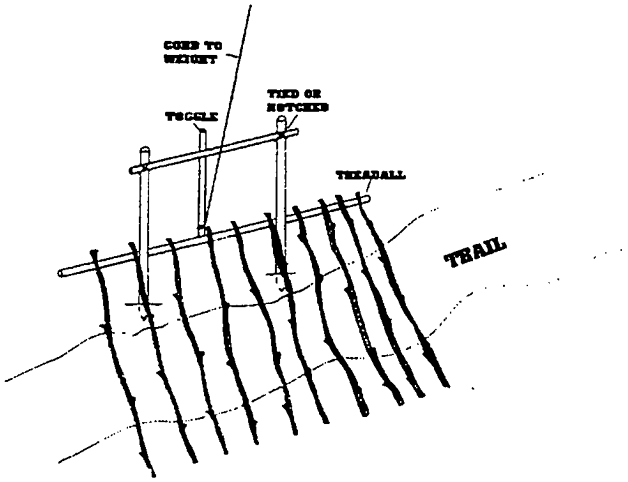

SPRING POLE
NOOSE

TOGGLE

(c) Universal.


TO WEIGHT
TRIP CORD

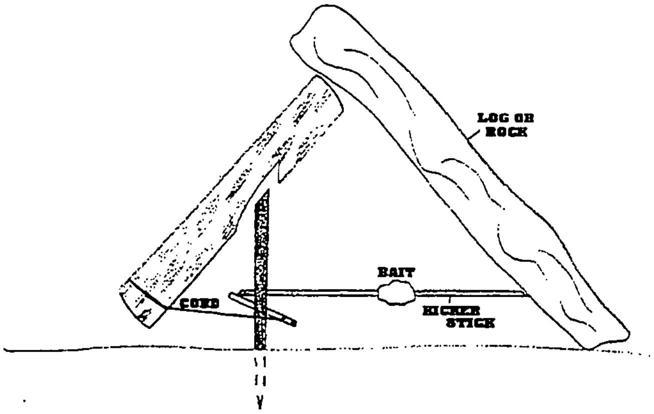

CORD TO WEIGHT
TIED OR NOTCHED
TOGGLE
TREE OR STICK
TRAIL

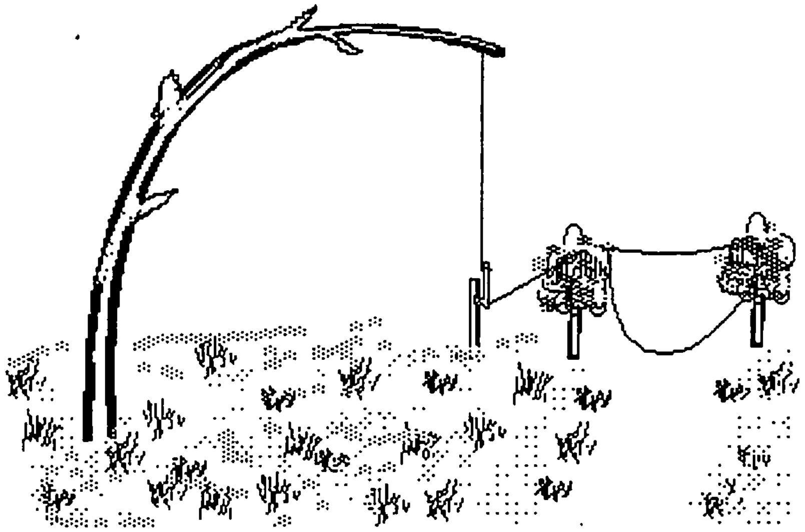

CORD TO WEIGHT
TIED OR NOTCHED
TOGGLE
TREADALL
TRAIL

2. TRAPS. Traps are c
   action is generally caused by either a weight or spring loaded device.

a. Puite Deadfall: The Puite deadfall requires a knife and piece of cord to construct. It is designed to mangle small rodents. The trigger for the deadfall is the Puite figure 4.

b. Spring Pole: The spring pole requires a small sapling and cordage to construct. The trigger for the spring pole is the toggle. It is designed to lift the animal off the ground; not allowing predatory animals to take your game. Remember, the trigger can not be so tight that the intended game can not set it off.

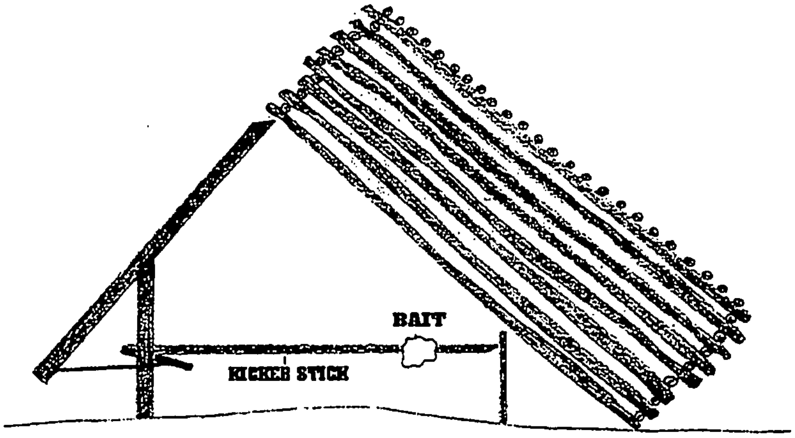

LOG OR ROCK
BAIT
CORD
KICKER STICK



SPRING POLE

c. Box Trap: The box trap requires limited cordage to construct. It is designed to hold live small rodents and birds. The box trap trigger is the Puite figure 4.

3. PATH GUARDS Path guards is designed to protect and provide security for your shelter area against the enemy and predatory animals. They are classified into noise and casualty producing path guards.



BOX TRAP

a. Noise producing path wards. Noise producing pathguards serve as an alarm for your shelter area. When triggered, it should produce some type of loud noise. Although construction can vary, depending on materials available, one example is as follows:

(1) Secure a young sapling to a universal trigger.

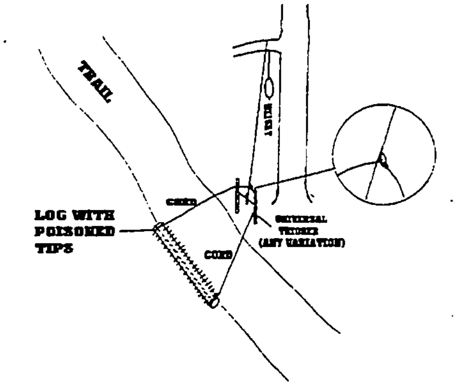
(2) At the end of the sapling, tie several pieces of metal to the sapling. Use what ever is available for metal.

(3) Camouflage the metal on the ground.

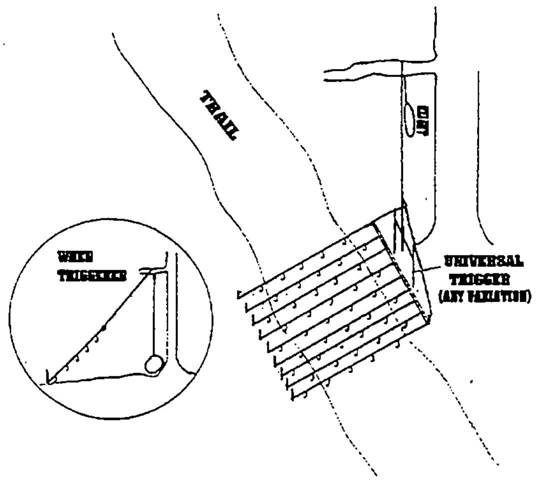
(4) When triggered, the sapling should swing back and forth, causing the metal rattle.

b. Casualty producing path wards. Casualty producing path guards, when triggered, should cause death or injury to the enemy or predatory animal. Tips should be poisoned as discussed in Survival Plant Uses class. Triggers for this type of path guard should be the universal triggers.

(1) Log Jerk



(2) Fish Hook Nightmare

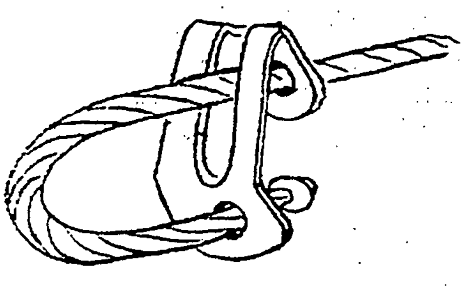


4. SNARING. A snare a loop at one end, which tightens, nd less time consuming to constr

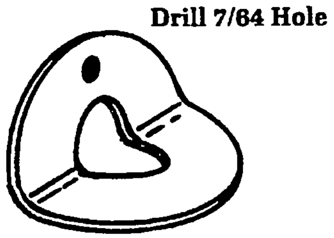
a. Requirements for snaring there are five requirements too effectively employ snares. They are as follows:

(1) Wire: Although snares can be used with rope or cord, they are less effective than wire. Wire should have memory and resist kinking. Aircraft cable type in size 1/32 to 3/16 inch should be used. This type of wire prevents animal chew out and resists breakage. Remember, you want the smallest diameter cable capable of holding the animal.

(2) Locking device: A locking device is imperative for a snare to work properly. Locking devices secure the snare around the animal's neck. There are several methods available for a locking device.

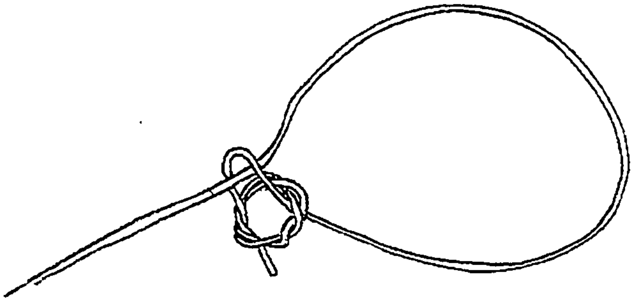


COMMERCIAL

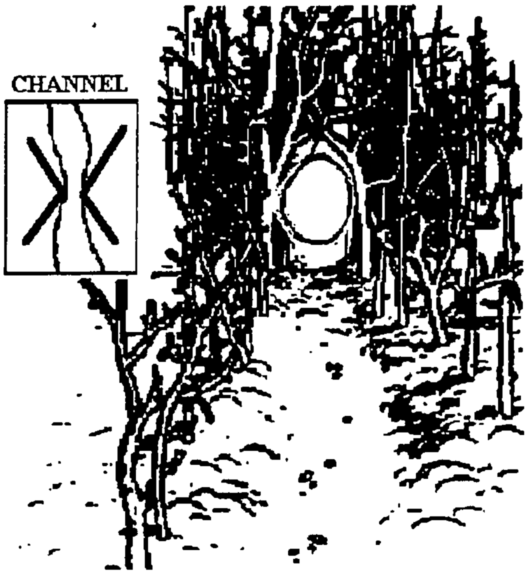


BENT WASHER

(3) Channelization: The objective of channelization is to force the animal to move through the snare. Remember, animals will take the path of least resistance.



KNOT



(4) Loop size: Probably the single most important requirement in snaring. A correctly employed snare will have the snare holding the animal around the neck. Loop size is placed on the snare according to the intended animal. Too large will result in a body or leg catch, resulting in possible chew out or breakage. Too small will enable the animal to force the snare to the side, resulting in a miss. Additionally, the loop must be placed with specific ground clearance. The following chart will give a general guideline.

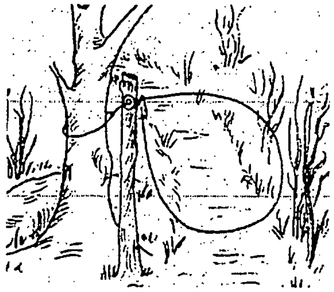
ANIMAL	NOOSE SIZE	GROUND CLEARANCE
SQUIRREL	2 1/2 TO 3 INCHES	1/2 TO 1 1/2 INCHES
RABBIT	4 TO 5 1/2 INCHES	1 1/2 TO 3 INCHES
RACCOON	6 INCHES	3 TO 4 INCHES
FOX	7 TO 10 INCHES	8 TO 10 INCHES
COYOTES	12 TO 14 INCHES	12 INCHES
BOBCAT	9 INCHES	8 INCHES

Note: (1) Noose size is the diameter of the snare loop.

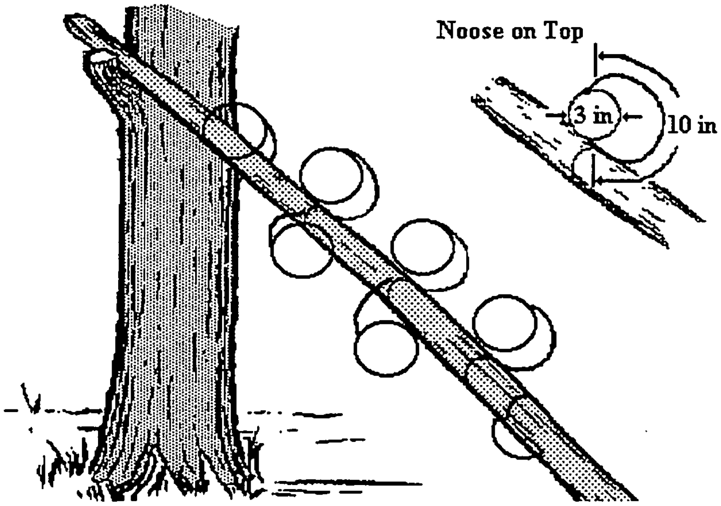
(2) Ground clearance is measured from the bottom of the loop to the ground.

(5) Bait. In a survival situation, you will not be able to employ numerous snares. Baiting all snares increases your chances of success.

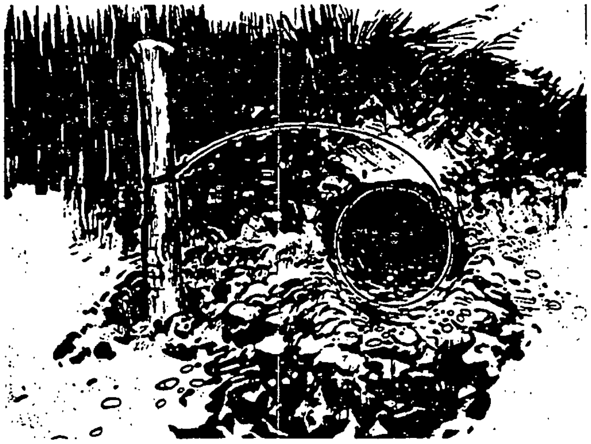
b. Snares although there are numerous ideas to employ snares, here are a few ideas.



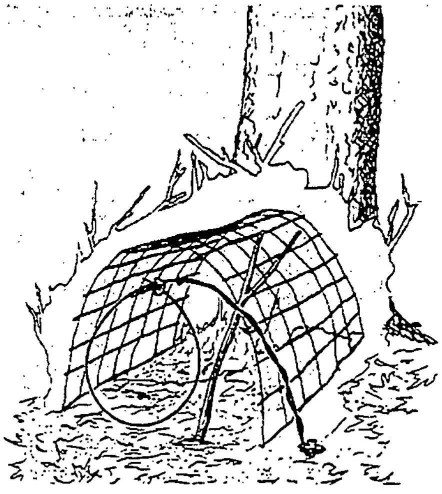
TRAIL SET


Noose on Top
3 in
10 in

SQUIRREL POLE



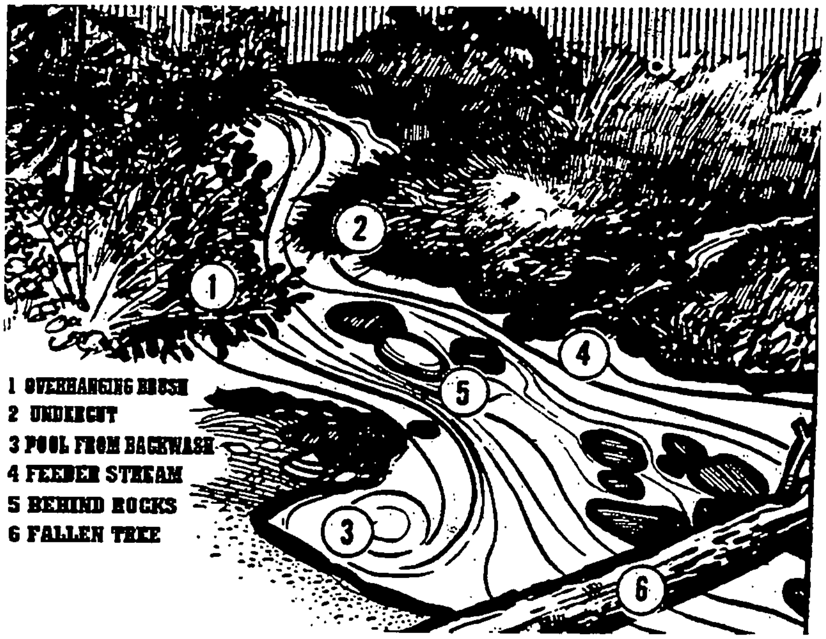
DEN SET



CUBBIE SET

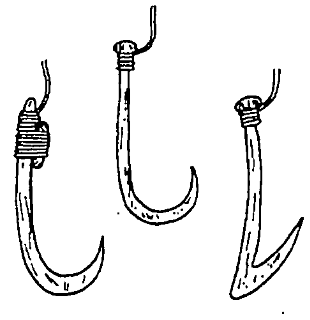
5. FISH. In a mountainous region, fish are normally an abundant resource. Not only are they a food source, the "left-overs" provide an excellent bait for traps and snares.

a. Fishing locations: Fishing in mountain streams is generally best done with a hand line. When fishing these streams, always look for these places to fish.

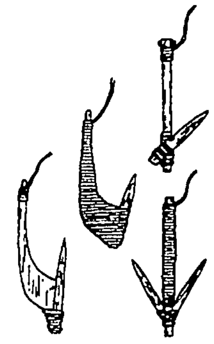

1 OVERHANGING BRUSH
2 UNDERCUT
3 POOL FROM BACKWASH
4 FEEDER STREAM
5 BEHIND ROCKS
6 FALLEN TREE
1
2
3
4
5
6

FISHING LOCATIONS

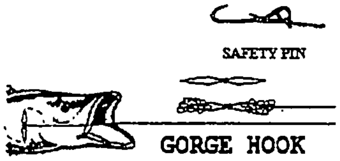
b. Expedient hooks: Although hooks should be carried in a survival kit, the survivor should be able to construct additional hooks if the situation arises. Expedient hooks are made to become lodged in the throat of the fish. Below are a few examples.



One-piece hooks

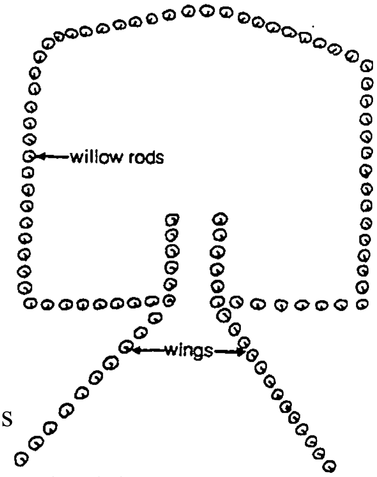


Two-piece hooks



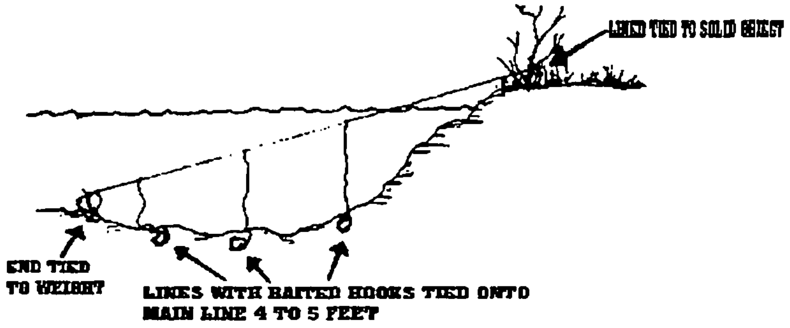
EXPEDIENT HOOKS

c. Fish traps: A fish trap can be effective if you have a shallow stream and time to construct it. A basic fish trap in nothing more than a barricade of rocks or sticks across a stream with another barricade using a funnel-type entrance which fish can be driven into but have a difficult time finding their way out. Once fish are trapped between these two barricades they may be speared, clubbed, or grabbed. This can be very effective when certain types of fish are moving in large groups to spawn. This type of trap is very effective in catching fish. A door can be constructed at the mouth of the trap so that excess fish can be kept live until needed.



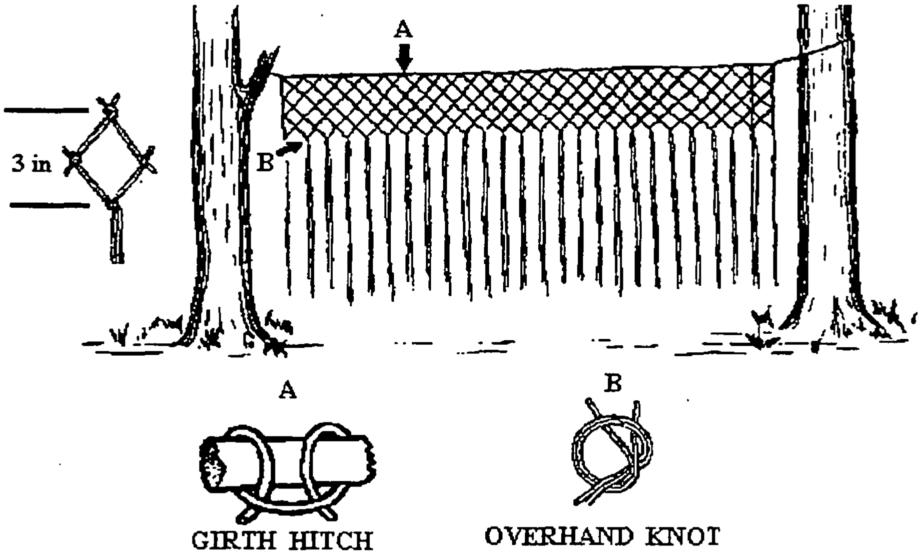
FISH TRAP

d. Set Lines: Set lines are an effective method of fishing which conserves energy. Put them out over night with several boated hooks attached. Place them with the hooks either on the bottom or suspended off the bottom, until you have determined where the fish are feeding.


LINE TIED TO SOLID OBJECT
END TIED TO WEIGHT
LINES WITH BAITED HOOKS TIED ONTO MAIN LINE 4 TO 5 FEET

SET LINES

e. Netting: A gill net is most effective in still water, e.g., a lake (near the inlet and outlet are good locations) or back water in a large stream (for survival doesn't hesitate to block the stream). Nets can be constructed using the inner cords of parachute shroud lines. Place floats on top and weights on the bottom to keep the net vertical in the water. When the ice is on a lake, the fish are inclined to stay deeper. The smaller the mesh, the smaller the fish you can catch, but a small mest will still entangle a large fish. A mesh of 3 inches is a good standard. A gill net is very time consuming and requires allot of material to construct.


A
3 in
B
A
B
GIRTH HITCH
OVERHAND KNOT

GILL NET

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

WMC
04/07/02

STUDENT HANDOUT

MOUNTAIN WEATHER

LESSON PURPOSE: The purpose of this period of instruction is to introduce you to weather patterns, the invisible aspects of weather, and some visible clues to help you forecast the weather. This lesson relates to all operations in the mountains at MWTC.

OUTLINE

1. GENERAL

a. The earth is surrounded by the atmosphere, which is divided, into several layers. The world's weather systems are in the troposphere, the lower of these layers. This layer reaches as high as 40,000 feet.

b. Dust and clouds in the atmosphere absorb or bounce back much of the energy that the sun beams down upon the earth. Less than one half of the sun's energy actually warms the earth's surface and lower atmosphere.

c. Warmed air, combined with the spinning (rotation) of the earth, produces winds that spread heat and moisture more evenly around the world. This is very important because the sun heats the Equator much more than the poles and without winds to help restore the balance, much of the earth would be impossible to live on. Where the air-cools, you can get clouds, rain, snow, hail, fog, frost, etc.

d. The weather that you find in any place depends on many things, i.e. how hot the air is, how moist the air is, how it is being moved by the wind, and especially, is it being lifted or not?

A10

2. PRESSURE

a. All of these factors are related to air pressure, which is the weight of the atmosphere at any given place. The lower the pressure, the more likely are rain and strong winds.

b. In order to understand this we can say that the air in our atmosphere acts very much like a liquid.

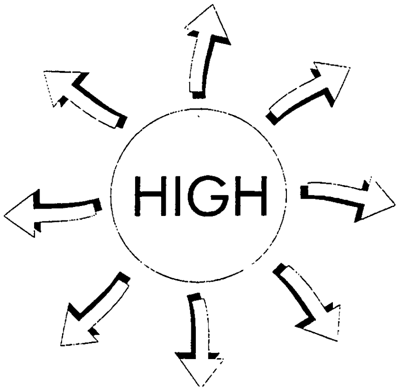
c. Areas with a high level of this liquid would exert more pressure on the Earth and be called a "high pressure area".

d. Areas with a lower level would be called a "low pressure area".

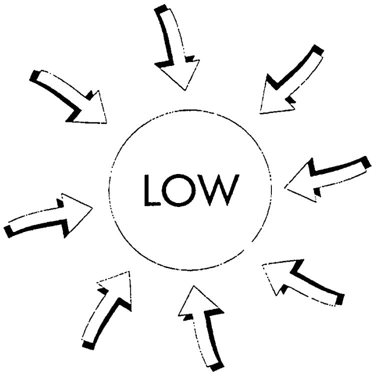
e. In order to equalize the areas of high pressure it would have to push out to the areas of low pressure.

f. The characteristics of these two pressure areas are as follows:

(1) High-pressure area. Flows out to equalize pressure.



(2) Low pressure area. Flows in to equalize pressure.



g. The air from the high-pressure area is basically just trying to gradually flow out to equalize its pressure with the surrounding air, while the low pressure is beginning to build vertically. Once the low has achieved equal pressure, it can't stop and continues to build vertically; causing turbulence, which results in bad weather.

NOTE: When looking on the weather map, you will notice that these differences in pressure resemble contour lines. These contour lines are called isobars and are translated to mean equal pressure area.

h. Isobars: Pressure is measured in millibars or another more common measurement is inch mercury.

i. Fitting enough, areas of high pressure are called ridges and areas of low pressure are called troughs.

NOTE: The average air pressure at sea level is:

29.92 inches mercury.
1,013 millibars.

j. As we go up in altitude, the pressure (or weight) of the atmosphere decreases.

EXAMPLE: At 18,000 feet in elevation it would be 500 millibars vice 1,013 millibars at sea level.

3. HUMIDITY Humidity is the amount of moisture in the air. All air holds water vapor, although it is quite invisible.

a. Air can hold only so much water vapors, but the warmer the air, the more moisture it can hold. When the air has all the water vapor that it can hold, the air is said to be saturated (100% relative humidity).

b. If the air is then cooled, any excess water vapor condenses; that is, it's molecules join to build the water droplets we can see.

c. The temperature at which this happens is called the "condensation point". The condensation point varies depending on the amount of water vapor and the temperature of the air.

d. If the air contains a great deal of water vapor, condensation will form at a temperature of 20°C (68°F). But if the air is rather dry and does not hold much moisture, condensation may not form until the temperature drops to 0°C (32°F) or even below freezing.

e. Adiabatic Lapse Rate: The adiabatic lapse rate is the rate that air will cool on ascent and warm on descent. The rate also varies depending on the moisture content of the air.

    (1) Saturated Air = 2.2°F per 1,000 feet.

    (2) Dry Air = 5.5°F per 1,000 feet.

4. WINDS. As we stated earlier, the uneven heating of the air by the sun and rotation of the earth causes winds. Much of the world's weather depends on a system of winds that blow in a set direction. This pattern depends on the different amounts of sun (heat) that the different regions get and also on the rotation of the earth.

a. Above hot surfaces, air expends (air molecules spread out), and move to colder areas where it cools and becomes denser, and sinks to the earth's surface. This forms a circulation of air from the poles along the surface or the earth to the Equator, where it rises and moves towards the poles again.

b. Once the rotation of the earth is added to this, the pattern of the circulation becomes confusing.

c. Because of the heating and cooling, along with the rotation of the earth, we have these surface winds. All winds are named from the direction they originated from:

(1) Polar Easterlies: These are winds from the polar region moving from the east. This is air that has cooled and settled at the poles.

(2) Prevailing Westerlies: These winds originate from approximately 30 degrees North Latitude from the west. This is an area where prematurely cooled air, due to the earth's rotation, has settled back to the surface.

(3) Northeast Tradewinds: These are winds that originate from approximately 30 degrees North from the Northeast. Also prematurely cooled air.

d. Jet Stream: A jet stream can be defined as a long, meandering current of high speed winds near the tropopause (transition zone between the troposphere and the stratosphere) blowing from generally a westerly direction and often exceeding 250 miles per hour. The jet stream results from:

    (1) Circulation of air around the poles and Equator.

    (2) The direction of airflow above the mid latitudes.

(3) The actual path of the jet stream comes from the west, dipping down and picking up air masses from the tropical regions and going north and bringing down air masses from the Polar Regions.

NOTE: The average number of long waves in the jet stream is between three and five depending on the season. Temperature differences between polar and tropical regions influence this. The long waves influence day to week changes in the weather; there are also short waves that influence hourly changes in the weather.

5. AIR MASSES. As we know, all -of these patterns move air. This air comes in parcels known as "air masses". These air masses can vary in size from as small as a town too as large as a country. These air masses are named for where they originate:

   a. Maritime: Over water.

   b. Continental: Over land.

   c. Polar: Above 60 degrees North.

   d. Tropical: Below 60 degrees North.

   e. Combining these give us the names and description of the four types of air masses:

      (1) Continental Polar: Cold, dry air mass.

      (2) Maritime Polar: Cold wet air mass.

      (3) Continental Tropical: Dry, warm air mass.

      (4) Maritime Tropical: Wet, warm air mass.

ABBREVIATED MEANINGS
CP = Continental Polar.
MP = Maritime Polar.
CT = Continental
Tropical. MT =
Maritime Tropical.

f. The thing to understand about air masses; they will not mix with another air mass of a different temperature and moisture content. When two different air masses collide, we have a front, which will be covered in more detail later in this period of instruction.

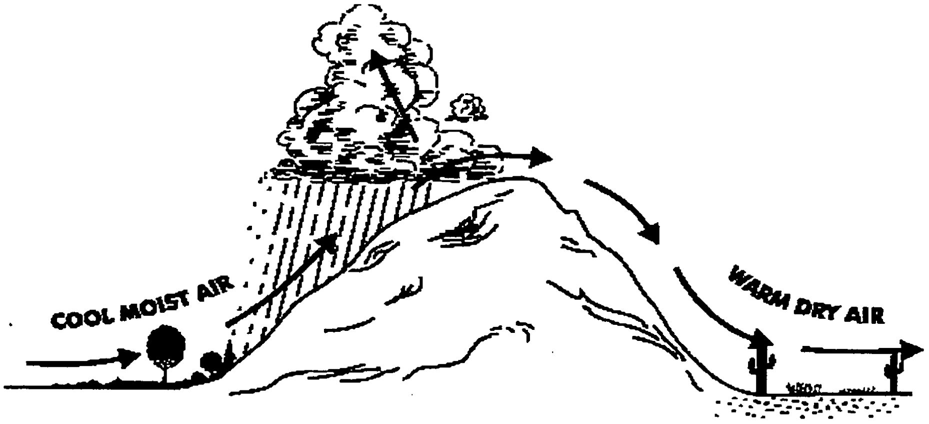
g. Here are some other types of winds that are peculiar to mountain environments but don't necessarily affect the weather:

(1) Anabolic wind: These are winds that blow up mountain valleys to replace warm rising air and are usually light winds.

(2) Catabolic wind: These are winds that blow down mountain valley slopes caused by the cooling of air and are occasionally strong winds.

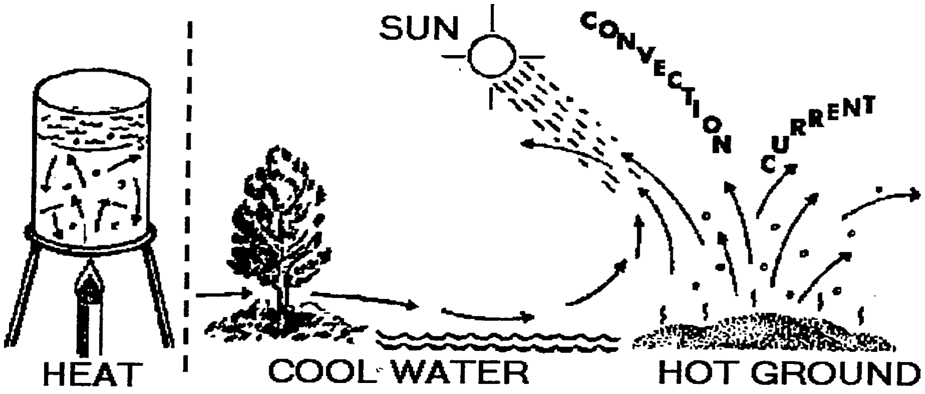
6. LIFTING/COOLING. As we know, air can only hold so much moisture depending on its temperature. If we cool this air beyond its saturation point, it must release this moisture in one form or another, i.e. rain, snow, fog, dews, etc. There are three ways that air can be lifted and cooled beyond its saturation point.

a. Orographic uplift: This happens when an air mass is pushed up and over a mass of higher ground such as a mountain. Due to the adiabatic lapse rate, the air is cooled with altitude and if it reaches its saturation point we will receive precipitation.

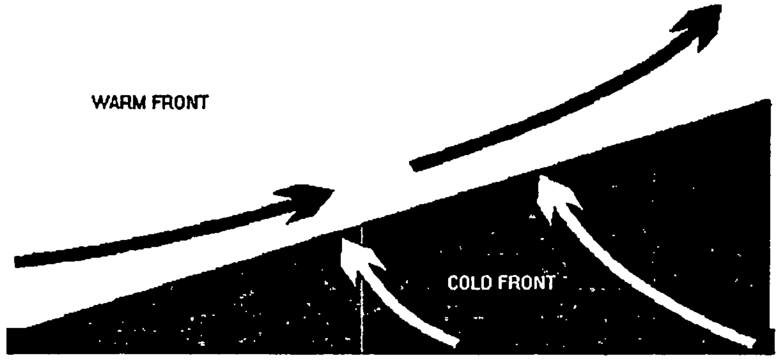

COOL MOIST AIR
WARM DRY AIR

OROGRAPHIC UPLIFT

b. Convection effects: This is normally a summer effect due to the sun's heat radiating off of the surface and causing the air currents to push straight up and lift air to a point of saturation.


SUN
CONVECTION CURRENT
HEAT
COOL WATER
HOT GROUND

CONVECTION EFFECTS

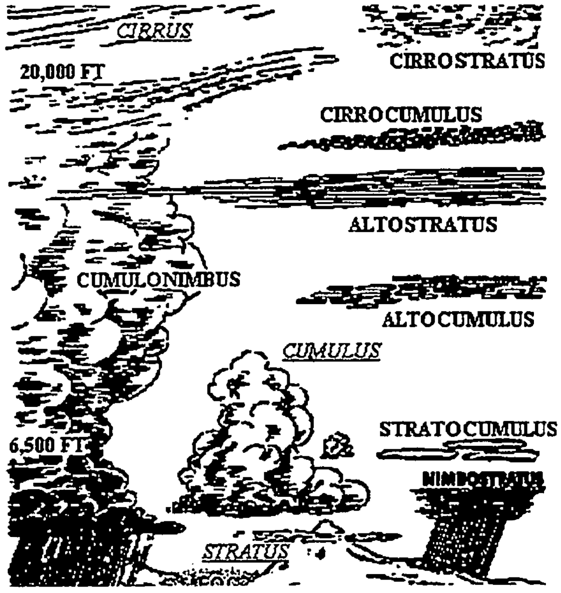


FRONTAL LIFTING

c. Frontal rature
content is forced
aloft; fi where we
receive ifting is not
uncom

7. CLOUDS. Anytime air is lifted or cooled beyond its saturation point (100% relative humidity), clouds are formed. Clouds are one of our signposts to what is happening. Clouds can be described in many different ways; they can also be classified by height or appearance, or even by the amount of area covered, vertically or horizontally.

.



a. Cirrus: These clouds are formed of ice crystals at very high altitudes (usually 20,000 to 35,000 feet) in the mid-latitudes and are thin, feathery type clouds. These clouds can give you up to 24 hours warning of approaching bad weather, hundreds of miles in advance of a 'warm front. Frail, scattered types, such as "mare-tails" or dense cirrus layers, tufts are a sign of fair weather but predictive may be a prelude to approaching lower clouds, the arrival of precipitation and the front.

b. Cumulus: These clouds are formed due to rising air currents and are prevalent in unstable air that favors vertical development. These currents of air create cumiliform clouds that give them a piled or bunched up appearance, looking similar to cotton balls. Within the cumulus family there are three different types to help us to forecast the weather:

(1) Cotton puffs of cumulus are Fair Weather Clouds but should be observed for possible growth into towering cumulus and cumulonimbus.

(2) Towering cumulus are characterized by vertical development. Their vertical lifting is caused by some type of lifting action, such as connective currents found on hot summer afternoons or when wind is forced to rise up the slope of a mountain or possibly the lifting action that

may be present in a frontal system. The towering cumulus has a puffy and "cauliflower-shaped" appearance.

(3) Cumulonimbus clouds are characterized in the same manner as the towering cumulus, form the familiar "thunderhead" and produce thunderstorm activity. These clouds are characterized by violent updrafts, which carry the tops of the clouds to extreme elevations. Tornadoes, hail and severe rainstorms are all products of this type of cloud. At the top of the cloud, a flat anvil shaped form appears as the thunderstorm begins to dissipate.

c. Stratus: Stratus clouds are formed when a layer of moist air is cooled below its saturation point. Stratiform, clouds lie mostly in horizontal layers or sheets, resisting vertical development. The word "stratus" is derived from the Latin word "layer". The stratus cloud is quite uniform and resembles fog. It has a fairly uniform base and a dull, gray appearance. Stratus clouds make the sky appear heavy and will occasionally produce fine drizzle or Very light snow with fog. However, because there is little or no vertical movement in the stratus clouds, they usually do not produce precipitation in the form of heavy rain or snow.

d. As previously stated, clouds are formed when air is lifted to a point where it cools to its saturation point. We also know that frontal lifting affects our fronts, which produce the largest portion of our precipitation.

8. FRONTS. As we know, fronts often happen when two air masses of different moisture and temperature content interact. One of the ways we can identify that this is happening is by the progression of the clouds.

a. Warm Front: A warm front occurs when warm air moves into and over a slower (or stationary) cold air mass. Since warm air is less dense, it will rise naturally so that it will push the cooler air down and rise above it. The cloud you will see at this stage is cirrus. From the point where it actually starts rising, you will see stratus. As it continues to rise, this warm air-cools by the cold air and, this, receiving moisture at the same time. As it builds in moisture, it darkens becoming "nimbus-stratus", which means rain of thunderclouds. At that point some type of moisture will generally fall.

b. Cold Front. A cold front occurs when a cold air mass (colder than the ground that it is traveling over) overtakes a warm air mass that is stationary or moving slowly. This cold air, being denser, will go underneath the warm air, pushing it higher. Of course, no one can see this "air", but they can see clouds and the clouds themselves can tell us what is happening. The cloud progression to look for is cirrus to cirrocumulus to cumulus and, finally, to cumulonimbus.

c. Occluded Front. Cold fronts move faster than warm ones so that eventually a cold front overtakes a warm one and the warm air becomes progressively lifted from the surface. The zone of division between cold air ahead and cold air behind is called a "cold occlusion". If the air behind the front is warmer than ahead, it is a warm occlusion. Most land areas experience more occlusions than other types of fronts. In the progression of clouds leading to fronts, orographic uplift can play part in deceiving you of the actual type of front, i.e. progression of clouds leading to a warm front with orographic cumulus clouds added to these. The progression of clouds in an occlusion is a combination of both progressions from a warm and cold front.

9. USING PRESSURE AS AN INDICATOR. A very important factor of telling us what might happen is the pressure. As we know, low pressure or dropping pressure normally indicates deteriorating weather whereas high pressure usually gives us more good weather or clearing of bad weather. There are a couple of ways to monitor our pressure and are as follows:

a. Barometer: A barometer could be described as a pan of mercury with a tube leading out of the pan. Pressure from the atmosphere causes the mercury to rise in the tube.

(1) The tube is marked in millibars and the station that's reading these millibars will know how much it should rise for that location. Once again, if it rises more than normal, it would be considered a high-pressure reading.

b. Altimeter: Another means that is used to measure pressure is an altimeter, which is commonly used by mountaineers. It works like this:

(1) As you rise in elevation the pressure becomes less, thus allowing the needle in the altimeter to rise. If the needle rises without you rising with it, there is less pressure in the atmosphere than before and thus, a low-pressure area.

c. Contrail Lines: A basic way of identifying a low-pressure area is to note the contrail lines from jet aircraft. If they don't dissipate within two hours, that indicates a low-pressure area in your area. This usually occurs about 24 hours prior to an oncoming front.

d. Lenticulars: These are optical, lens-shaped cumulus clouds that have been sculpted by the winds. This indicates moisture in the air and high winds aloft. When preceding a cold front, winds and clouds will begin to lower.

10. USING SIGNS FROM NATURE. These signs will give you a general prediction of the incoming weather conditions. Try to utilize as many signs together as possible, which will improve your prediction. All of these signs have been tested with relative accuracy, but shouldn't be depended on 100%. But in any case you will be right more times than wrong in predicting the weather. From this we can gather as much information as needed and compile it along with our own experience of the area we are working in to help us form a prediction of incoming weather. The signs are as follows:

a. A spider's habits are very good indicators of what weather conditions will be within the next few hours. When the day is to be fair and relatively windless, they will spin long filaments over which they scout persistently. When precipitation is imminent, they shorten and tighten their snares and drowse dully in their centers.

b. Insects are especially annoying two to four hours before a storm.

c. If bees are swarming, fair weather will continue for at least the next half day.

d. Large game such as deer, elk, etc., will be feeding unusually heavy four to six hours before a storm.

e. When the smoke from a campfire, after lifting a short distance with the heated air, beats downward, a storm is approaching. Steadily rising smoke indicates fair weather.

f. A red sun or sky in the morning indicates nearing rain due to the excessive amount of moisture in the air.

g. A red evening sky indicates that the air contains so little moisture that rain within the next 24 hours is highly improbable.

h. A gray, overcast evening sky indicates that moisture carrying dust particles in the atmosphere have become overloaded with water; this condition favors rain.

i. A gray morning sky indicates dry air above the haze caused by the collecting of moisture on the dust in the lower atmosphere; you can reasonably a fair day.

j. When the setting sun shows a green tint at the top as it sinks behind clear horizon, fair weather is probable for most of the next 24 hours.

k. A rainbow in the late afternoon indicates fair weather ahead. However, a rainbow in the morning is a sign of prolonged bad weather.

l. A corona is the circle that appears around the sun or the moon. When this circle grows larger and larger, it indicates that the drops of water in the atmosphere are evaporating and that the weather will probably be clear. When this circle shrinks by the hour, it indicates that the water drops in the atmosphere are becoming larger, forming into clouds, rain is almost sure to fall.

m. In fair weather, air currents flow down streams and hillsides in the early morning and start drifting back up towards sunset. Any reversal of these directions warns of a nearing storm.

n. When the breeze is such that the leaves show their undersides, a storm is likely on the way.

o. It is so quiet before a storm, that distant noises can be heard more clearly. This is due to the inactivity of wildlife a couple of hours before a storm.

p. When in the mountains, the sight of morning mist rising from ravines is a good sign of clear weather the rest of the day.

q. A heavy dew or frost in the morning is a sign of fair weather for the rest of the day. This is due to the moisture in the atmosphere settling on the ground vice in the form of precipitation such as rain, snow, etc.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

FMST.07.42
03/14/02

STUDENT HANDOUT

RESCUE PHILOSOPHY FOR SWIFTWATER RESCUE TEAMS

TERMIANL LEARNING OBJECTIVE In a swift water rescue scenario, organize a swift water rescue, in accordance with the reference. (FMST.07.42)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES.

(1) With out the aid of reference, from a given list select the correct components of rescue preparation, in accordance with the reference. (FMST.07.42a)

(2) With out the aid of reference, from a given list select the correct role description of the rescue team members, in accordance with the reference. (FMST.07.42b)

(3) With out the aid of reference, from a given list select the correct methods of rescue, in accordance with the reference. (FMST.07.42c)

OUTLINE.

1. **COMPONENTS OF RESCUE PREPARATION**. (FMST.07.42a) These components comprise the backbone of both technical skills and the proper mental attitude required of a rescue professional. Remember that this course only provides you with the first component.

a. Training. Provides the students with the basic technical skills required to perform a safe rescue, these can be gained by attending an approved SWIFTWATER RESCUE COURSE.

b. Practice. Use of the skills learned in training.

c. Experience. Gained through advanced training, practical exercises and real-world situations.

B1

d. Judgment. The combination and application of skills for a given situation. Remember that every rescue situation is different. Don't get into a SOP mindset.

2. **PRIORITIES OF SAFETY**. Most of you have heard the saying that "It is better to be judged by twelve then carried by six". With that in mind you must realize that, at times, there is no way to affect a safe rescue. If you place yourself or your team in a hostile environment, from which you cannot escape, you are adding to the problem, not assisting in the solution. For this reason we set priorities of safety.

a. Self-aid. Be able to rescue yourself.

b. Buddy-aid. Ensure all safety measures are in force and that team members can rescue each other in an emergency.

c. Victim-aid. Only after self and buddy-aid are ensured should you attempt to rescue the victim. This will enable you to concentrate and focus your entire effort on the rescue.

3. **ROLES OF THE TEAM MEMBERS**. (FMST.07.24b) Often when dealing with rescues, you will find yourself working with outside agencies and organizations. In order to successfully coordinate the entire effort the Incident Command System (ICS) was developed. In swiftwater rescue situations there are four specific roles that must be filled.

a. Incident Commander. Is in overall command of the rescue efforts. Does not necessarily have the technical knowledge to conduct the rescue, but must be able to coordinate the rescue effort.

b. Rigger. Personnel responsible for equipment and rope systems, i.e. establishing the tension diagonal or the tyrolean high line.

c. Gofer. This group of individuals fills all other supporting roles, i.e. Communications, logistics, medevac, accounting, equipment accountability etc.

d. Rescuer. The individuals who are actually conducting the rescue.

4. **COMPONENTS OF SEARCH AND RESCUE**. In order to successfully complete a rescue there is four objectives that must be met. In order to remember them we use the acronym LAST.

a. Locate. This is the search in the search and rescue business.

b. Access. The determination of the assets, equipment, technical skills, and personnel required safely reaching and extracting the victim.

c. Stabilization. Providing the on scene medical attention required in order to extract the victim without causing further injury or aggravating an existing condition.

d. Transport. Removing the victim from the hostile environment to a safe one where further treatment can be provided.

5. **METHODS OF RESCUE**. (FMST.07.42c) In any rescue, we must access the situation to determine the best techniques to apply. Bearing in mind the self-aid, buddy-aid, victim-aid concept as well as time, weather, victim's condition, etc. In all cases we will attempt the lowest risk methods first, while preparing for a higher risk option. In all cases remember the KISS principle.

a. Reach. Use a ladder, fire hose, stick, paddle, rifle or any other sturdy object to extend your reach in order to reach the victim.

b. Throw. Get some type of floatation device to the victim. Or throw a line to the victim in order to pendulum or pull him/her to the shore.

c. Row. Putting a boat in the water to reach the victim.

d. Go and Tow. These are the contact rescues that, while look good on film, put you at the extreme risk of becoming a second victim.

e. Helo. Most civilian helicopter crews are not trained in SAR evolutions. Military aircraft and crews are a better bet. Several uses for helos are in the support role. Locating the victim, inserting and extracting teams and moving equipment are some of these roles. If using the helo in a direct role it is better to use a qualified SAR swimmer/diver to hook-up or pick-up victims.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

FMST.07.25
03/14/02

STUDENT HANDOUT

PERSONAL AND TEAM EQUIPMENT

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVE As a member of a swiftwater rescue team, maintain swiftwater rescue equipment, in accordance with the reference. (FMST.07.25)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES.

(1) Without the aid of references, from a given identify the correct items of personal equipment, in accordance with the reference. (FMST.07.25a)

(2) Without the aid of references, from a given identify the correct items of team equipment, in accordance with the reference. (FMST.07.25b)

OUTLINE.

1. **PERSONAL EQUIPMENT**. (FMST.07.25a) The following items of personal equipment should be in each man's possession for a swiftwater rescue.

   a. Dry Suit. Warmest, most versatile, full body protection available. Extra thermal layers can be added for varying water temperatures. Provides wind protection out of the water and provides protection against contaminated water.

   b. Wet Suit. Excellent protection from flotsam. Variety of thick nesses for thermal protection. Insulating quality is degraded in moving water due to the flushing effect.

   c. Footwear. Primary is full sole scuba booties. You can use tennis shoes or jungle boots with heavy wool socks.

   d. Gloves. Neoprene is recommended.

   e. Hoods. Wetsuit hood or pile hood for insulation. Remember 30-50% of your body heat losses can occur through the head and neck region of your body if left unprotected.

B2

f. Helmet. Protects you from flotsam and impact injuries. Should be padded and ventilated to allow water to flow through.

g. Knife. Fixed or locking blade attached to the vest, handle down.

h. Whistle. Required for communication. Best without "pea".

i. Eye Protection. Protects subject from debris.

j. Personal Floatation Device. This is the single most important piece of equipment. Jackets should provide at least 15 lbs. of floatation. Proper fit is a priority. Rescue vests with a "Blow-Out" belt should only be used by trained professionals.

2. **TEAM EQUIPMENT**. (FMST.07.25b) The following is a list of some of the team equipment for a typical four-man team. Of course the situation will dictate which equipment will be required for the mission on hand, but all hands should be familiar with this equipment. This is only a list. The uses and application of this gear, along with practical application exercises later in this course will provide you with the hands-on training and working knowledge to properly and safely use this equipment.

QTY	ITEM
1	300 ft, l Static Rope
4	150 ft, 11 mm Static Rope
25	85 Locking Stubai Carabiners
4	2" Pulleys
2	Rescue Figure 8
6	3 ft, 7mm Prussic
20	15 ft, 1" Tubular Nylon Runners
2	Ascenders
3	Throw Bags
2 pr	Fins
1	Rescue PFD
1	Self Bailing Raft (13 or 14 foot)
1	Oar Frame w/ Oars, or Seven Paddles
3	Radios (waterproofed)
1	Medical Kit
1	Litter

NOTE: This is not a complete list of rescue equipment. However, it is a good basic load.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

FMST.07.41
03/14/02

STUDENT HANDOUT

SWIFTWATER TERMINOLOGY AND DYNAMICS

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVES In a swift water rescue scenario, evaluate swift water river conditions in accordance with the reference. (FMST.07.41)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES.

1) Without the aid of reference, from a given list correctly identify the swiftwater terminology, in accordance with the reference. (FMST.07.41a)

2) Without the aid of reference, from a given list correctly identify the classifications of rivers, in accordance with the reference. (FMST.07.41b)

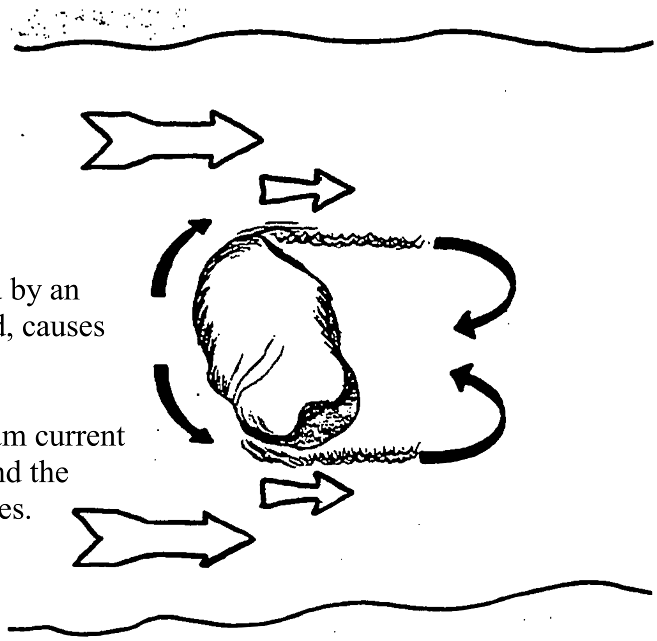
OUTLINE.

1. SWIFTWATER TERMINOLOGY. (FMST.07.41a)

a. Hydraulic or Hydraulic effect: Movement of water caused by pressure.

b. Eddy: Horizontal reversal. Current is blocked by an obstacle creating a vacuum which, when filled, causes water to flow upstream.

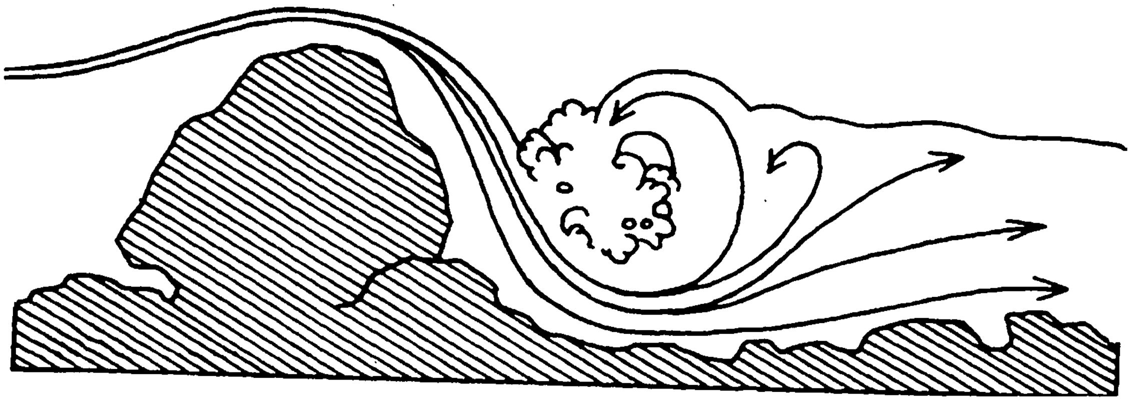
c. Eddy Fence: Reversal line between downstream current and the eddy. This fence can be very strong and the water flow may vary in height by several inches.



EDDY/EDDY FENCE

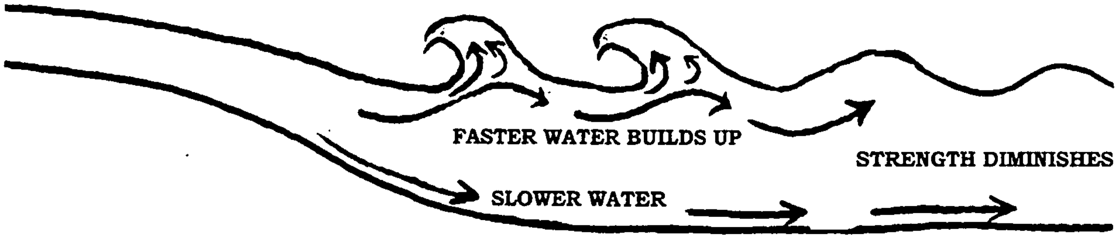
B3

d. Hole, Stopper, Keeper: Vertical reversal as water flows over an obstacle the main current follows the base of the river causing a surface vacuum. Downstream water flows back upstream to fill this void. This sets up a recirculating effect.



HOLE/STOPPER/KEEPER

e. Standing Wave. Haystack: Series of waves in the main channel caused by obstacles, ledges, or increases in the flow rate, gradient, or volume.

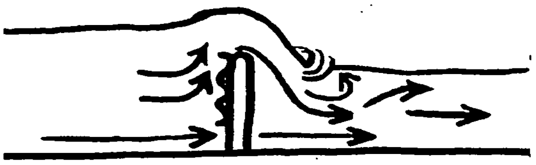


STANDING WAVES/HAYSTACKS

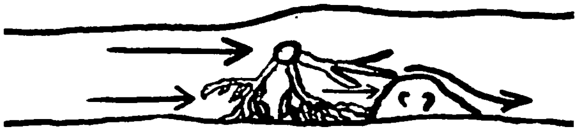
f. Downstream V. Tonal: Represent largest volume of water or main channel.

g. Upstream V: Caused by obstacles submerged just below the surface.

h. Strainer: Debris, logs, small trees on flooded banks, which allow water to flow through but will not allow a body to pass.

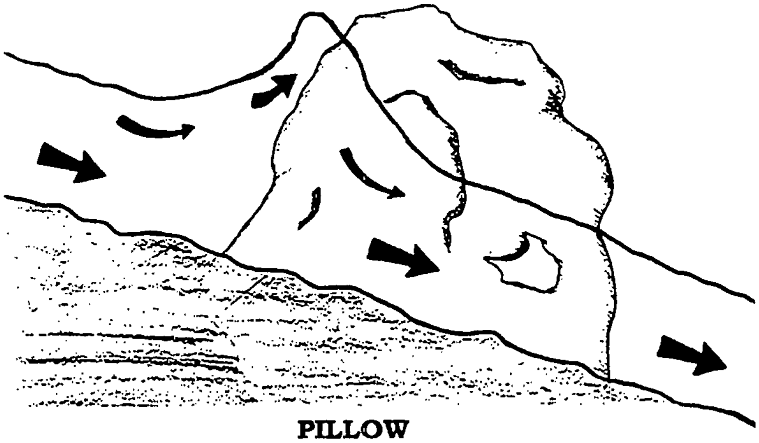


STRAINER / GUARD RAIL



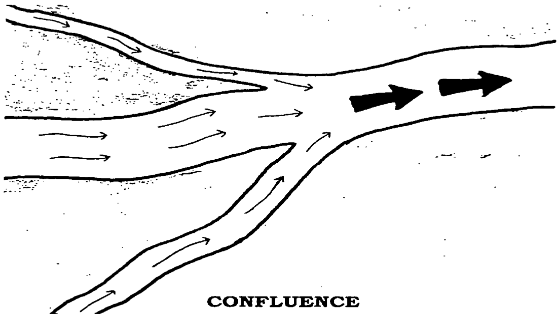
STRAINER / TREE

i. Cushion, Pillow: Build-up of water on the upstream side of obstacles or the outside of curves.



PILLOW

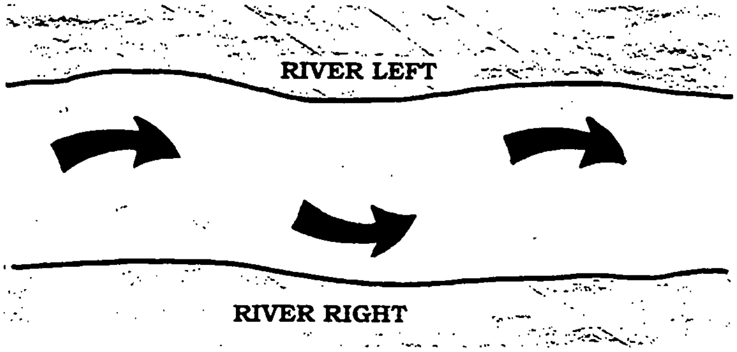
j. Confluence: Merging of streams.



CONFLUENCE

k. River Right. On the right side of the river looking downstream.

l. River Left. On the left side of the river looking downstream.



2. **CLASSIFICATIONS OF RIVERS**: (FMST.07.41b)

a. Class 1. Moving water, few obstacles, small ripples or waves.

b. Class 2. Moving water, clear channels, wide waves to 3', no scouting required.

c. Class 3. Rapids, narrow channels that require complex maneuvering, waves capable of flipping rafts or swamping canoes, scouting required.

d. Class 4. Long hazardous rapids, precise boat handling in rough water, scouting required, rescues hazardous.

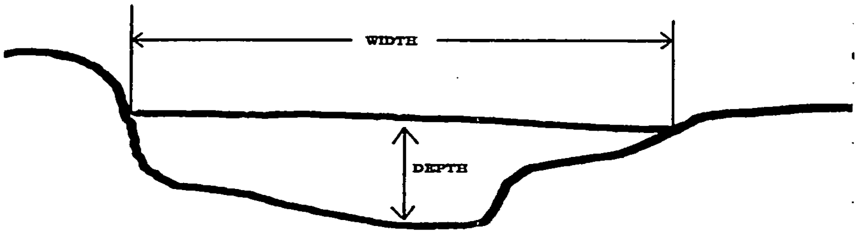
e. Class 5. Severe, extended, extremely violent rapids, professional boat handlers and scouting required. Rescues extremely hazardous, situations are life threatening.

f. Class 6. Only Expert/Professional River Runners. Rescue may be impossible.

g. CLASSES U DON'T EVEN THINK ABOUT IT! Waters are not navigable.

3. **RIVER STRENGTH**.

a. Volume of Water. The volume of water in a given stretch of the river between two points is based on a simple formula and is measured in Cubic Feet Per Second (CFS). Simply take the river depth x river width x river velocity = volume of water in CFS.



For example: 6 feet deep x 100 feet wide x 2 feet per second = 1,200 CFS

b. River Velocity. In order to determine the velocity or current speed measure a 100-foot section of the river and drop a float at the upstream end. Then, time its movement to the lower end and use the chart below.

TIME IN SECONDS	VELOCITY FT PER SEC	VELOCITY MPH
5	20	13
10	10	7
15	6.7	5
17	5.9	4
20	5	3.5
25	4	3
29	3.5	2.5
37	2.7	2
50	2	1.5
80	1.3	1
110	0.7	0.5

NOTE: Should the shape of the river change by becoming wider or narrower, once you have the flow in CFS, you can determine the new velocity by using the following formula:

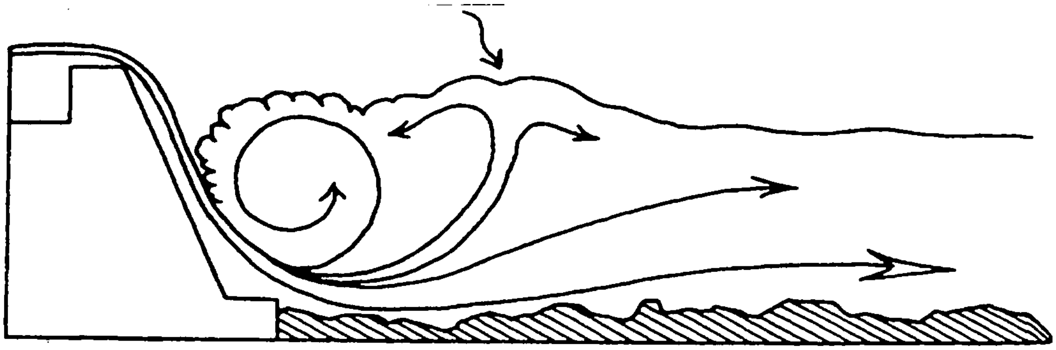
Velocity = Volume in CFS
Width x Depth

c. Force Exerted. The velocity of the water will determine the force exerted X's the amount of exposed area under pressure. For simplicity we will use the following chart:

CURRENT VELOCITY	FORCE EXERTED ON OBJECT		
MPH	LEGS RAFT	BODY	WRAPPED
3	17	34	168
6	67	134	672
9	151	302	1,512
12	269	538	2,688

4. **LOW HEAD DAMS**. Low head dams are used throughout the world for irrigation, flood control, at hydroelectric plants and for many other uses. Basically they are pouring over obstacles that create hydraulics, keeper holes, and recirculating currents at their bases. Unlike natural obstacles, that rarely span the entire river and that allow you to be "flushed" out of the bottom or sides, low head dams create a hydraulic that extends from shore to shore.

BOIL LINE



a. The size of the hydraulic created is based on several denominators:

  (1) Height of drop.

  (2) Angle of drop.

  (3) Volume of water CFS.

  (4) Velocity of water MPH.

  (5) Bottom composition of runout.

b. The degree of difficulty for the rescuer is also compounded by:

  (1) Water depth below dam.

  (2) Debris build-up.

  (3) Dam construction/conformation.

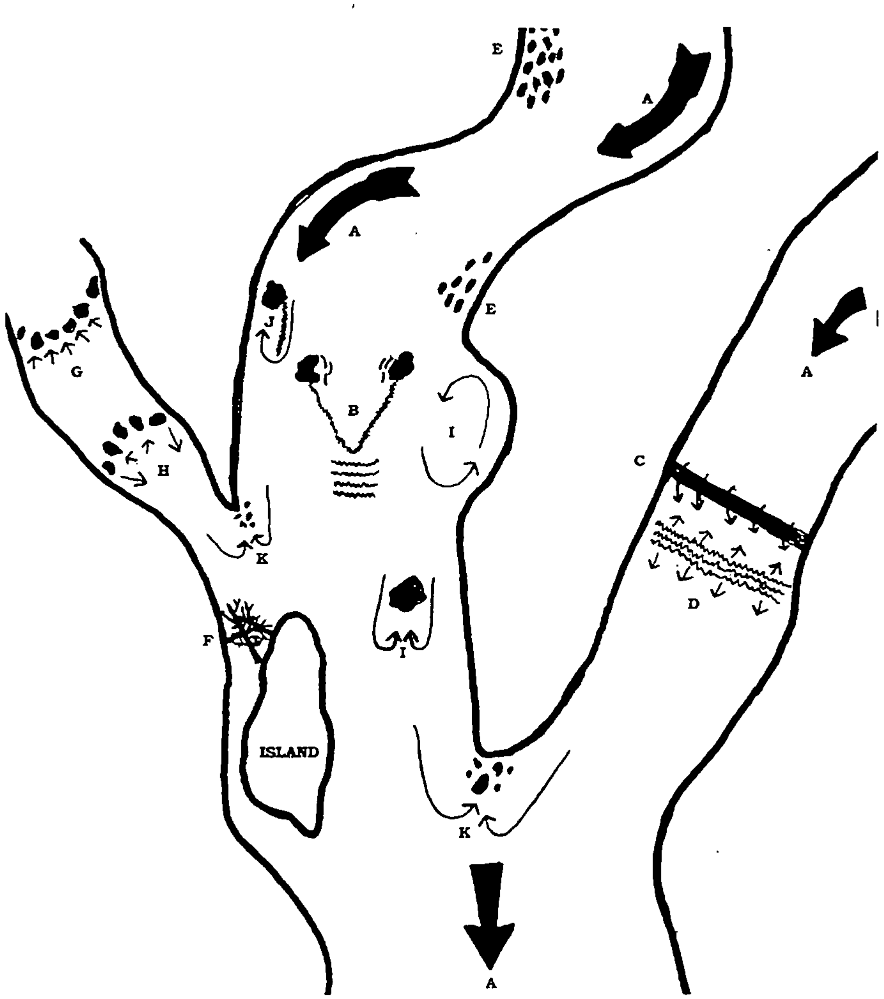
  (4) Lack of access.

  (5) Lack of natural anchors.

  (6) Distance between riverbanks.

c. The basic hydrology is the same as any other pour over obstacle. As the river flows over the dam, the water follows the face of the dam to the river bottom. When sufficient speed diminishes the water rebounds to the surface and continues downstream. This flow has caused a vacuum or pocket directly below the dam that must be filled. Therefore, when the water rebounds to the surface, some of it flows back upstream to form a vertical reversal or pour-over eddy. The line of demarcation for the upstream/downstream flow is called the boil line. The shape and angle of the dam face and the volume and velocity of the water flowing over the dam create the distance and width of the boil line.

5. **REVIEW**.


E
A
A
E
A
J
G
B
I
H
C
K
D
F
I
ISLAND
K
A

A. Main Current
B. Downstream V
C. Low head Dam
D. Boil Line
E. Rock Garden
F. Debris Pile/Strainer
G. Frowning Hole
H. Smiling Hole
I. Eddy
J. Eddy Fence
K. Confluence

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

FMST.07.24
04/14/02

STUDENT HANDOUT

COMMUNICATIONS

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVES Given a casualty in a swift water environment, assignment as a member of a rescue team, and a whistle, employ swift water rescue communication signals to support mission requirements per the reference. (FMST.07.24)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES.

(1) In a summer mountainous environment, prior to swift water rescue operations, when the instructor verbally states a hand and arm signal, the student will demonstrate that signal, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.24a)

(2) In a summer mountainous environment, standing at the edge of a swift water stream, when the instructor blasts a whistle a varied amount of times, the student will focus their attention in the proper direction, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.24b)

OUTLINE.

1. **RELIABLE COMMUNICATION**. In many cases time is critical in a SWR scenario. Therefore immediate, understandable communication is a must. Radios, bull horns, and voice work well in some situations, but wet equipment, dead batteries, and ambient noise levels can render these methods ineffective. Therefore, rescue professionals have developed a series of simple hand and arm, and whistle signals. Any rescue team can develop their own signals. The only requirement is that all hands understand the signals and that they are briefed to any other agency you are working with.

2. **HAND AND ARM SIGNALS**. (FMST.07.24a)

ACTION	MEANING
1 hand extended over head	Require Assistance
Both hands extended forming an "O" with one hand touching The head	Okay
Extend both hands above head, then point left/right	Move in direction indicated
Extend both hands above head, wave, then point left/right	Eddy out in direction indicated
Cross both arms over chest	Require medical assistance or Corpsman

3. **WHITSTLE BLASTS**. (FMST.07.24b)

ACTION	MEANING
One Blast	Stop/Attention
Two Blasts	Upstream
Three Blasts	Downstream
Three Blasts Repeated	Emergency

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

FMST.0
7.27
04/14/02

STUDENT HANDOUT

THROW BAGS AND FOOT ENTANGLEMENTS

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVES In a swiftwater rescue scenario employ a throw bag, in accordance with the reference. (FMST.07.27)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES.

1) Without the aid of reference, provided with a throw bag and swimming victim, rescue the victim, in accordance with the reference. (FMST.07.27a)

OUTLINE.

1. **THE THROW BAG**: The throw bag is very simply a cloth bag with a small float insert, packed with 50 to 70 feet of 1/4" to 3/8" floating polypropylene or spectra/poly line. The concept is to hold the exposed end of the line and throw the packed bag to a swimmer. As the bag flies, the rope deploys enabling you to reach a victim 50 to 70 feet from shore. It is used either from a standing position, or a moving position on open shores.

   a. Standing Procedures. (FMST.07.27a)

1. Assume a stable belay position and ensure your footing is solid. Avoid loose, sloped or wet rock.

2. Attract victim by blowing your whistle (1 blast). Show him/her the throw bag and yell, "grab the rope". NOTE: If the victim grabs the bag rather than the rope, the rope will continue to deploy to its full length.

3. Grasping the exposed end of the rope, throw the bag underhand in a smooth motion directly at the victim. You may need to lead them in order to score a direct hit.

4. Tell the victim to place the rope over his/her upstream shoulder. This will establish a good ferry angle.

5. Do not wrap the rope around yourself or tie it off at anytime. You may have to release the victim to avoid an obstacle or strainer. Use a dynamic belay and pull the victim to shore or pendulum the victim to other rescuers downstream.
6. If available have other rescuers downstream to recover the victim or repeat the procedure if you miss!

b. Moving Procedures. The moving procedures are the same as the standing procedures except you are on a smooth, open shoreline, so you move slightly downstream of the victim as you pull them gently ashore.

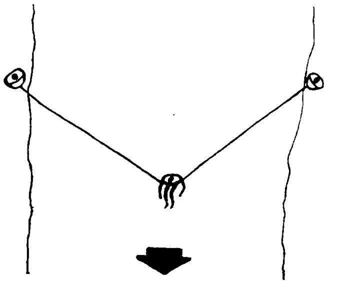
2. **FOOT ENTRAPMENTS AND VERTICAL PINNINGS**. These scenarios are caused by a variety of actions. Swimmers put their feet down or fishermen, in waders, get their feet stuck between rocks and are pushed over by the current. Swimmers are stuck in a strainer. Rafters get wrapped on a rock with victims pinned between the raft and rock or kayakers drop down a vertical shoot and get lodged in the rocks at the bottom. Whatever way it occurs you must respond quickly in order to save the victim. Initially take the following precautions:

    1. Position upstream spotters, to provide warning of boats or debris.

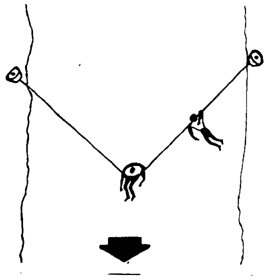
    2. Plan alternate methods if initial try doesn't work.

    3. Have back-up rescuers downstream in order to retrieve the victim.

  a. Once these actions are complete conduct the rescue using one of the five following methods.



    1. Bechel-Ray One Line Method. The simplest and safest method. Get a rescuer on both sides of the river. Establish a rope between the two rescuers and downstream of the victim. Walk upstream until the rope hooks the victim. If you can position the line near the victims ankles you may be able to pop him/her loose and the downstream safety can pick him/her up. If not you can haul the victim upstream until he/she is clear of the obstacle, then by one rescuer playing out line and the other retrieving it you can bring the victim ashore. Remember to bring the victim to the shore with the medevac capability.

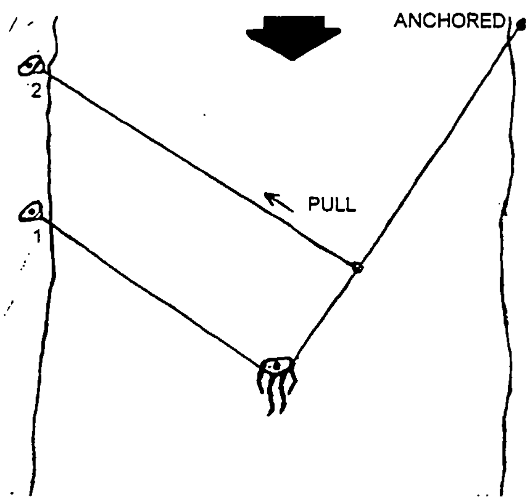


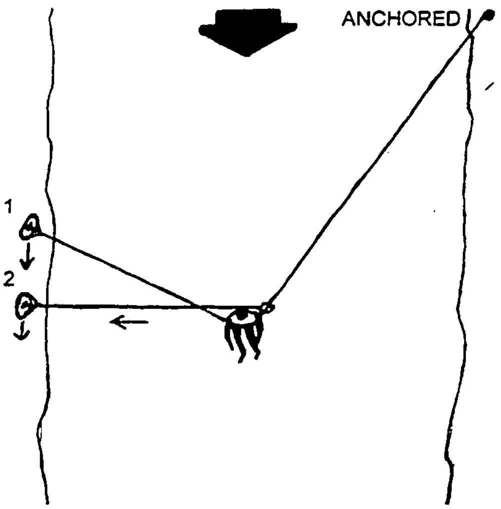
    2. The Strong Swimmer-variation. If the previous method doesn't work, leave the line in place and anchor it to stabilize the victim above the surface. Then have a "strong swimmer" go down one side of the rope, as would a tension diagonal. This rescuer is not tied in. Upon arrival the rescuer can readjust the line on the victim, attempt to pull them free, give them a PFD and helmet, or if a debris pile or rock is near, get on it and assist in further efforts.

3. Two Line Loop. There are two variations on this method both of which are applied using the initial rope used in the Bechel-Ray attempt.

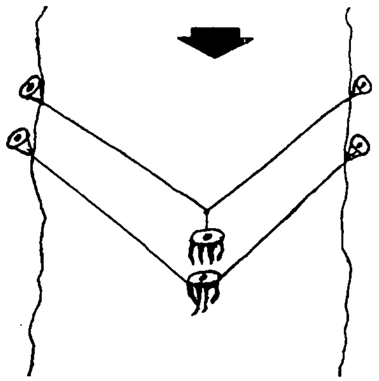
   (1) Deploy a second rope across the river and hook it onto the first line. Allow it to go one-half way down the rope to the victim. Pull at a 90° angle to rope #1. This will establish a mechanical advantage and pull the victim loose.

   (2) Once the victim is free walk the line downstream trapping the victim in a loop. Then by releasing slack on line one, you can bring him/her ashore.

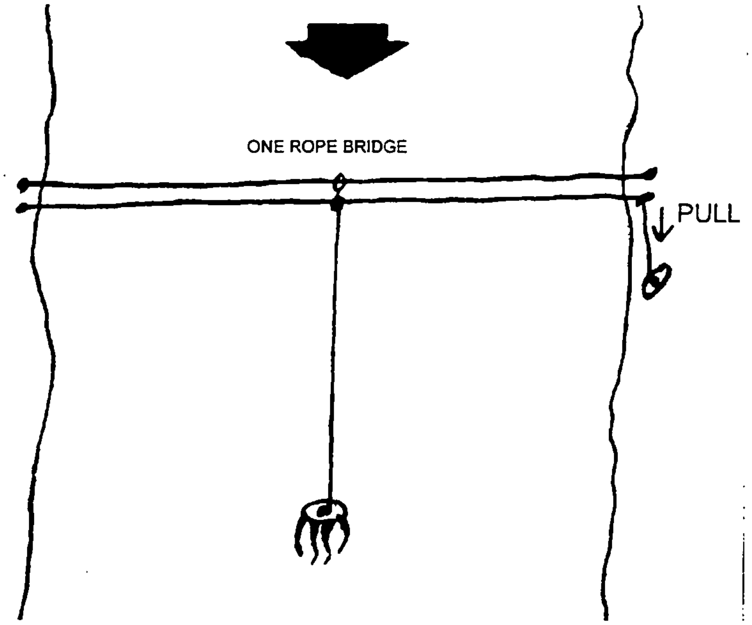




4. European Tethered Rescuer Lower. Using a rescue vest with a "blow-out" belt establish an upstream belay and lower the tethered rescuer to the victim. The rescuer's body will block the water forming an eddy around the victim enabling him to be pulled free. Ensure that the rescuer has a working rescue vest, as this will enable him to cut away if the situation dictates.



5. Mechanical Advantage Systems. As a last resort you can use a mechanical advantage system. This method is usually used only for body recoveries, as the amount of force exerted on the victim is tremendous and can cause severe injuries.


ONE ROPE BRIDGE
PULL

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

FMST.07.28
04/14/02

STUDENT OUTLINE

DEFENSIVE SWIMMING AND FERRY ANGLE

TERMINAL LERNING OBJECTIVES Given a swift water river and throw bags, perform aggressive swift water swimming to meet mission requirements per the reference. (FMST.07.28)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES.

(1) Without the aid of reference, demonstrate the defensive swimming position, in accordance with the reference. (FMST.07.28a)

(2) Without the aid of reference, demonstrate use of the ferry angle to cross the river, in accordance with the reference. (FMST.07.28b)

OUTLINE

1. **THE DEFENSIVE SWIMMING POSITION (DSP)**. (FMST.07.28a) The DSP is assumed by lying flat on your back, chin on chest (to read the river & select a route), with your feet up, heels just below the level of your buttocks. Holding your feet in this position will enable you to fend off of shallow rocks and will reduce the likelihood of a foot entrapment or pinning. Your arms and hands should be kept close to the body but may be used like oars on a boat to maneuver. Your head will remain upstream except to cross a strainer or to over take a victim in a swimming rescue.

2. **FERRY ANGLE**. (FMST.07.28b) A ferry angle is used to maneuver diagonally across a river. By placing your body at a 45° angle to the current, the river will push you across the river. This is because the force of the current will travel down the exposed, upstream, side of the body moving it laterally more rapidly then the current pushing straight. This is like traversing a slope with edged skis vice sideslipping down on flat skis. In order to cross faster or to reach an eddy you may roll to your belly and execute the rescue crawl stroke or breaststroke. Remember to maintain your ferry angle with your head upstream this will enable you to travel diagonally across the river.

3. **STRAINER CROSSING**. The first rule is to avoid the strainer or shallow submerged obstacle. Read the river and maneuver to the main channel by using downstream "V’s" or tongues. If the obstacle cannot be avoided, roll on your belly, head downstream and use the rescue crawl stroke. You must get your body moving faster than the current. Upon arrival at the obstacle use both hands to "vault" yourself over. A well-timed dolphin kick will assist in keeping your legs clear of entanglements. Once clear of the obstacle, resume the defensive swimming position. Bear in mind that it is usually safer to remain in the main current or to eddy hop downstream than it is to attempt to get out on a flooded riverbank, the outside of a bend or on slippery rocks. Also, use the dolphin kick rather than placing your feet on the bottom and kicking off. This will reduce the likelihood of foot entrapments.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

FMST.07.25
03/14/02

STUDENT HANDOUT

FEET-WET RESCUES AND C-SPINE ROLLS

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVES In a swift water rescue scenario, conduct a swimming rescue, in accordance with the reference. (FMST.07.25)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES.

(1) Without the aid of reference, while in a river and provided with a victim, perform a contact rescue, in accordance with the reference. (FMST.07.25a)

(2) Without the aid of reference, while in a river and provided with a simulated unconscious victim, perform a C-spine roll, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.25b)

OUTLINE.

1. **FEET WET RESCUE GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS**. (FMST.07.25a)

    a. Always wear the proper personal equipment, i.e. PFD, helmet, drysuit, etc.

    b. Don't make physical contact if it can be avoided. Make him/her "chase" you ashore. Use a life ring, can, or boogie board, and tow it along with the victim. Toss him a throw bag and swim/tow him/her until you reach the shore, then pendulum or haul the victim in. Remember, to a panicked victim YOU are a floatation device.

2. **CONTACT RESCUE**.

    a. Approach the victim from upstream. Use the rescue crawl stroke to catch-up to him/her. Talk to the victim and attempt to get him/her to swim to shore or "chase" you to the shore.

b. Explain to the victim the defensive swimming position and attempt to get them in this position. Assume this position yourself, in contact rescues this is called the "Reverse and Ready" position. Tell the victim what you are going to do prior to grabbing them.

c. Gain contact by grabbing the shoulders of the life jacket or utilize a cross-chest carry. If the victim is unconscious and face down use a C-Spine roll down and maintain stability as much as possible.

d. Assume a good ferry angle with the victim downstream of you and use his/her body to protect you from obstacles.

e. If the victim panics and attempts to climb on top of you, break away or lock the victim up and go for an alligator roll. Reestablish control and calm the victim as soon as possible.

f. Once contact is made remember that you may be held accountable under the "abandonment" laws if you quit.

3. **TOWED VICTIM SWIM**. When towing a victim it is essential that you establish a ferry angle. If the victim is on a boogie board or float, explain to him/her what you are doing and have them help by kicking their feet. If you are towing by the PFD grasp the shoulder towards the far bank and remain in the DSP (defensive swimming position) in case your victim panics.

4. **LIVE BAIT RESCUES**. The final go and tow method is the "live bait" rescue. Using a rescue vest with a "blow out" belt and a mule team on the shore to belay you, swim to the victim as explained in contact rescues. Once you establish contact you are, in effect, a throw bag with hands. The belayer will then either pendulum you ashore or hauls you in. In an emergency you can cut away and conduct a normal contact rescue.

5. **C-SPINE ROLLS AND STABILITY**.

a. Basic Rules: (FMST.07.25b)

(1) Suspect C-Spine involvement in any head injury.

(2) Stabilize and immobilize, use C-Collar, Sam Splints, or a field expedient method.

(3) Keep the victim in the water until a spine board or equivalent is available, or there are enough rescuers to move the victim safely.

(4) Observe for other signs, i.e. cranial bleeding, bleeding from ears, eyes, nose (Do not attempt to stop this bleeding) or unequal/unresponsive pupil response.

b. Methods:

(1) First, approach the victim from behind. Reach under the arms and grasp the victim's head with both hands, then roll the victim. This is the least desirable method as you cannot swim properly or evaluate the ABC's of the victim.

(2) Second, approach the victim from the side, extend his/her arms above and alongside his/her head, reach across and roll the victim onto your arm maintaining the victims arms in place to ensure stabilization. Evaluate the ABC's, provide rescue breathing and use your free arm to swim.

(3) Finally, approach a victim wearing a PFD from the head. If face down, cross your arms thumbs inboard and use your forearms to immobilize the neck. Then roll the victim over. If face up, simply approach as if gaining contact on a contact rescue and maintain control of the C-Spine.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

WMC

04/14/02

STUDENT HANDOUT

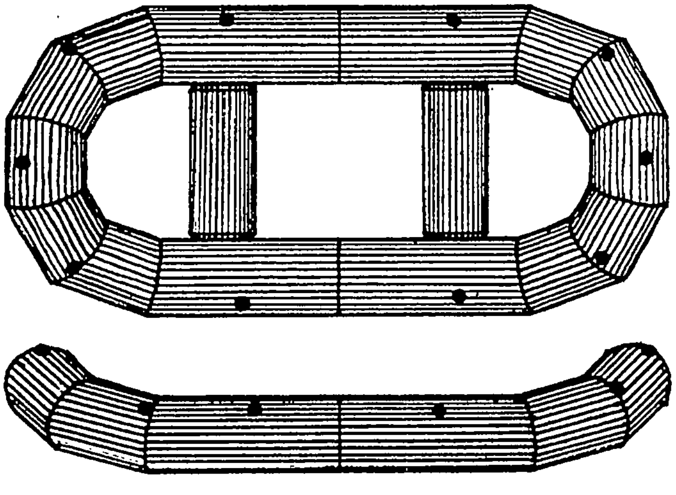
BOATS AND BOAT HANDLING

LESSON PURPOSE. The purpose of this period of instruction is to introduce the student to the boats available at MWTC for river rescue evolutions.

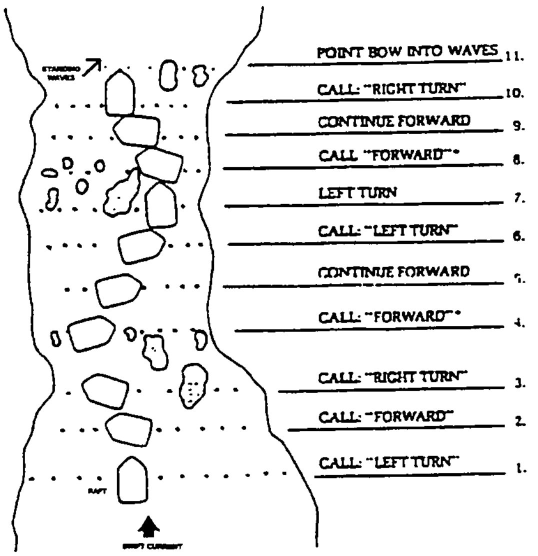
OUTLINE

1. **GENERAL**. There are a wide variety of boats and hybrid river craft available to rescue crews. Whitewater rafts, rigid raiders, zodiacs, airboats, and regular pleasure boats can all be used in the proper situations. All have been used both safely and have caused deaths and injuries when used improperly. Wherever you are, learn the equipment available, both its assets and its limitations.

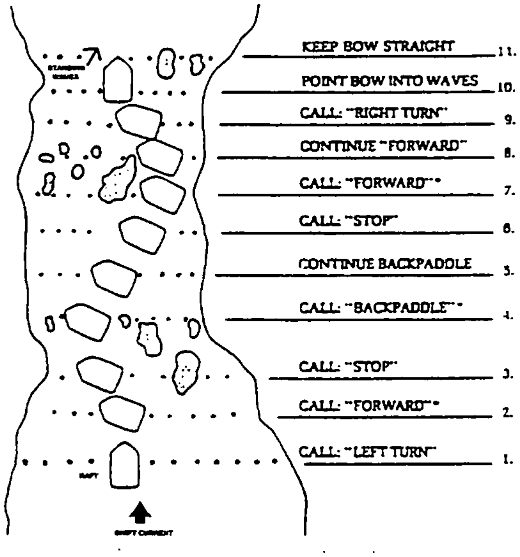
2. **WHITEWATER RAFTS**. The whitewater raft of today is an inflatable, self-bailing, multi-chambered vessel with several tie rings and foot cups. Additionally, the materials used in construction resist rips, tears, and punctures much better than their predecessors. The size most often found on local rivers is 12 to 14 feet long due to the size of the rivers. In the MWTC SAR locker, we have a 13-foot self-bailer. This will be our primary rescue boat.



3. **RAFTING COMMANDS**. In order to control the direction of a peddler powered boat the coxswain or guide must use a series of simple, concise, and understandable commands.


STANDING WAVES
POINT BOW INTO WAVES 11.
CALL: "RIGHT TURN" 10.
CONTINUE FORWARD 9.
CALL "FORWARD"* 8.
LEFT TURN 7.
CALL: "LEFT TURN" 6.
CONTINUE FORWARD 5.
CALL: "FORWARD"* 4.
CALL: "RIGHT TURN" 3.
CALL: "FORWARD" 2.
CALL: "LEFT TURN" 1.
RAFT
SWIFT CURRENT

NORMAL TACTICS APPROACH


STANDING WAVES
KEEP BOW STRAIGHT 11.
POINT BOW INTO WAVES 10.
CALL: "RIGHT TURN" 9.
CONTINUE "FORWARD" 8.
CALL: "FORWARD"* 7.
CALL: "STOP" 6.
CONTINUE BACKPADDLE 5.
CALL: "BACKPADDLE"* 4.
CALL: "STOP" 3.
CALL: "FORWARD"* 2.
CALL: "LEFT TURN" 1.
RAFT
SWIFT CURRENT

CONSERVATIVE/FAST CURRENT

a. Forward - All hands paddle forward together.

b. Back Paddle - All hands back paddle together.

c. Stop - Stop paddling - Remove blades from water.

d. Left Turn - Left side back paddles, right side forward.

e. Right Turn - Right side back paddles, left side forward.

f. High Side - Move quickly to the down streamside of the boat.

4. **PADDLE STROKES**. In order to control the raft from the coxswain position, either with a crew or alone on a tether system, you will need to apply the following strokes:

a. Sweep - Stroke in a wide arc around the fantail of the boat.

b. Draw - Reach out 90° away from the boat and "draw" it straight back to you.

c. Pry - Put paddle blade beside raft and "pry" the water away from the boat.

d. "J" - Used by lone guide to keep boat straight. Regular straight stroke finished with an outboard stroke or tail.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

WMC
04/14/02

STUDENT HANDOUT

ROPE SYSTEMS AND BOAT ANCHORS

LESSON PURPOSE: The purpose of this period of instruction is to introduce the student to the rope systems and boat anchors used in swiftwater rescue situations.

OUTLINE

1. TWO AND FOUR POINT TETHERING SYSTEMS.

a. With all rope systems the first order of business is to get a rope across the river. Best case is to throw a rope bag across to someone already on the other side. Next best is to use another boat or raft to ferry the rope across. Last we use a swimmer to drag the rope across. Remember to use a smaller line on the swimmer and not to tie it to him/her. When swimming, start high and pendulum across using a good ferry angle.

b. Clip in on the side "D" rings forward for a two point or on the two forward and two aft "D" rings for a four-point tether system. For a two point you now need to simply load in a rescuer (if used) and move the boat into the river by taking slack on the far side and giving slack from the near side. For a four point man the two nearside lines and load a far side aft lineman and a rescuer (if used) into the boat and ferry the boat across. The far side aft belayer will get out and the boat is on a four point system ready for action.

c. This system is good for Class II Rivers with clear banks, few mid stream obstacles, and little floating debris. Use more belayers as required by river speed and boatload.

d. In all rope systems the whistle and hand and arm signals used to communicate are those taught in the communications class earlier in this course.

e. To break down the system simply reverse the procedures. The only difference is that the last man rides in the boat instead of swimming.

B9

2. THREE POINT AND BOATMEN'S SELF-EQUALIZING ANCHORS.

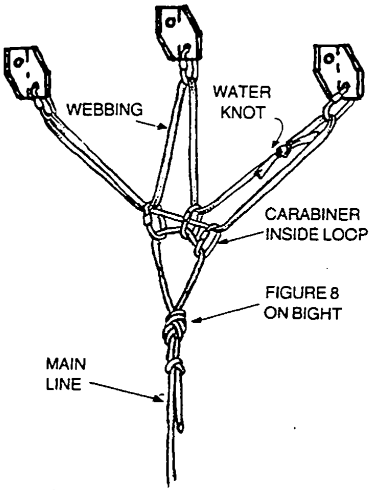
a. These anchors have in common the fact that they are self equalizing. This means that, regardless of the direction of pull, all anchor points ("D" rings, thwarts, etc) will remain under equal tension.

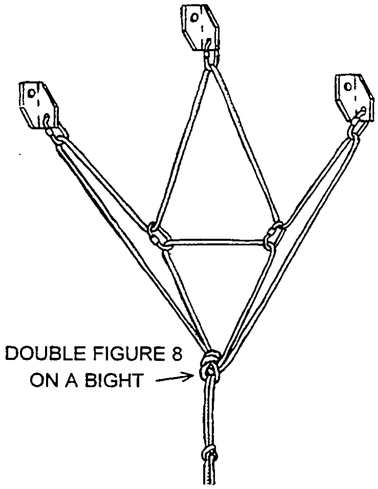
b. Using ropes the knots required are the double figure 8 on a bight, a directional figure 8, and a figure 8 on a bight.

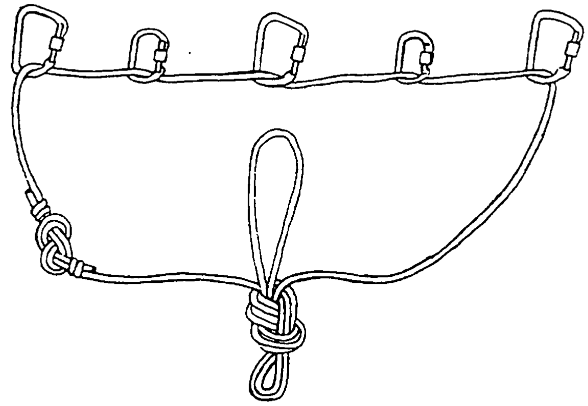
c. Using webbing (one inch tubular nylon) a water tape knot is required.

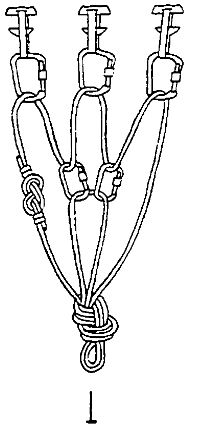
d. If you have an abundance of carabineers, simply clip into the anchor points and back into the small loop on the double figure 8 on a bight, or into the directional figure 8. If not run the rope through the small loop. Remember that this is not preferred as it causes rope on rope stress and rubbing that can melt the rope.

e. When using webbing the same concept applies. Ensure you put a twist in the webbing at the contact point to ensure that a single blow-out will not collapse the entire system.









3. **PIG-RIG FOR MECHANICAL ADVANTAGE**. At times you will find yourself with ropes that are long enough to span the river, but not long enough to establish a mechanical advantage system. In these situations, you can use a piggy-back line or "pig-rig" by following the procedures below:

a. Tie off the mainline on either ends, or tie off the far side and set up a belay device on the near side using a munter hitch or rescue 8.

b. Establish an anchor for the pig-rig below the near side anchor.

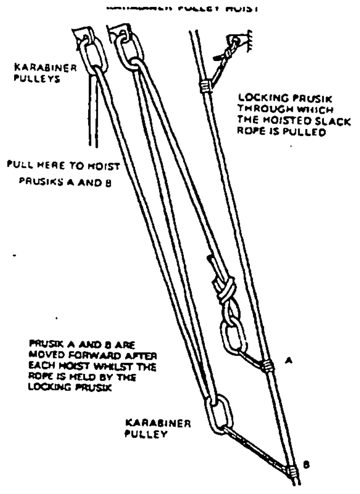
c. Tie a prussic on the mainline and clip in a carabiner. Tie a figure 8 on a bight into the end of the pig-rig line and clip it into the prussic's carabineer.

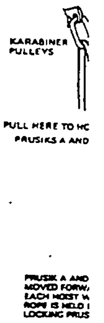
d. Run the pig-rig line back to the anchor carabineer and then back through the prussic carabiner.

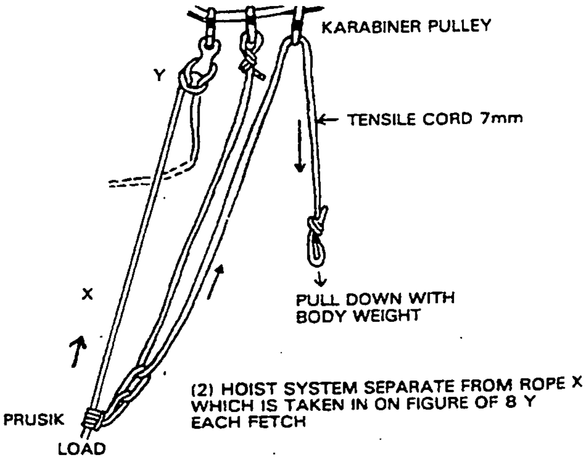
e. Pull on the running end towards the anchor. This will give you a 4:1 mechanical advantage on the main line.

f. If more tension is required you can either retie the nearside anchor (if tied), or use your belaying device to tension the mainline before moving the prussic.

g. If no prussic cord is available, you can accomplish this with a directional figure 8 on the mainline. However, this will only allow you to tighten the system once. A better method is to use the pig-rig line to tie a prussic directly on to the main line and run your system off of a directional figure 8 tied below the prussic on the pig-rig line. Remember that if the lines are of the same diameter this system will not work as the prussic will slip, therefore, you should use a kragur knot with ropes of the same diameter.


PULLEY HOIST
KARABINER PULLEYS
LOCKING PRUSIK THROUGH WHICH THE HOISTED SLACK ROPE IS PULLED
PULL HERE TO HOIST PRUSIKS A AND B
A
PRUSIK A AND B ARE MOVED FORWARD AFTER EACH HOIST WHILST THE ROPE IS HELD BY THE LOCKING PRUSIK
KARABINER PULLEY
B


KARABINER PULLEYS
PULL HERE TO HC
PRUSIKS A AND
PRUSIK A AND
MOVED FORW/
EACH HOIST W
ROPE IS HELD I
LOCKING PRUS


KARABINER PULLEY
Y
TENSILE CORD 7mm
X
PULL DOWN WITH BODY WEIGHT
PRUSIK
LOAD
(2) HOIST SYSTEM SEPARATE FROM ROPE X WHICH IS TAKEN IN ON FIGURE OF 8 Y EACH FETCH

4. **TYROLEAN HIGHLINE AND TELFER LOWERING SYSTEMS** Both of these systems are used to maintain a boat as a stable rescue platform. The lateral movement (side to side/shore to shore) in both systems is controlled by mule teams on the shore. The main difference is that in the tyrolean highline the movement up and down-stream is also controlled from the shore, while in the telfer lowering system, the rescuer in the boat controls that aspect of movement. Both systems have good and bad points and both should be mastered. The situation will dictate which system you will use. Follow the steps below to establish these systems:

a. First you must establish TWO lines across the river. You can use any method taught to accomplish this.

b. Establish one line as the anchor line and tighten it as taught in the "one rope bridge" class or use a pig-rig, if required. If you have uneven mule teams set it at a slight down-stream angle towards the weak team's shore (no more then 10 to 15 degrees) to assist the weak team.

c. Rig the boat with a self-equalizing anchor system.

d. Rig the lowering systems as shown in the diagrams. Either tyrolean or telfer.

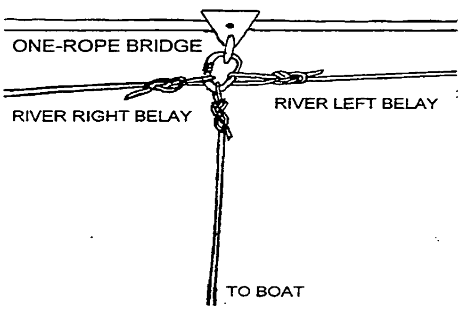
e. Load a rescuer or rescue team into the boat and execute. Remember the rescuer can act as coxswain and assist in maneuvering the boat by establishing a proper ferry angle.

f. Communications will be as taught earlier. Ensure you have a shore commander who maintains eye contact with the rescuers and mule teams on both the near and far shores.

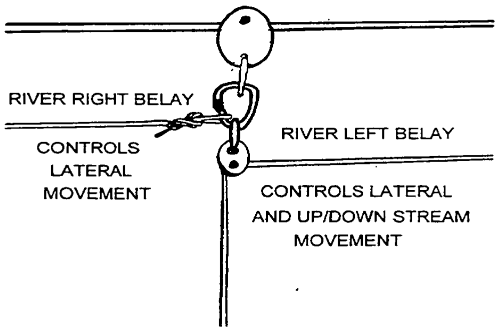
g. When using the telfer system, a counter hitch, stitch plate or rescue 8 can be used as a belay device. This enables you to tie-off when you reach the victim so that you can affect the rescue without worrying about controlling the boat.

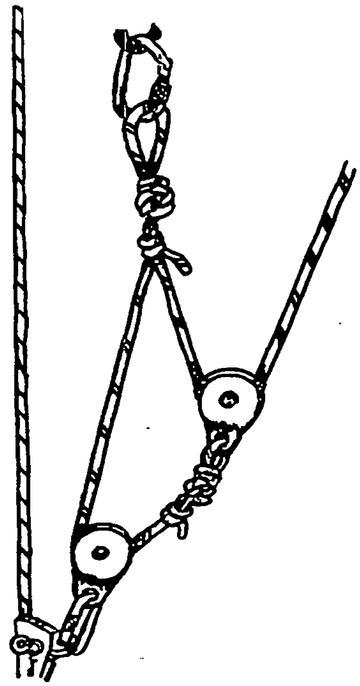
h. When using either of these systems it is a good idea to set-up a mechanical advantage system between the control (central) pulleys aid the raft/rescue platform.

TELFER LOWERING SYSTEM



TYROLEAN HIGHLINE


RIVER RIGHT BELAY
CONTROLS LATERAL MOVEMENT
RIVER LEFT BELAY
CONTROLS LATERAL AND UP/DOWN STREAM MOVEMENT



5. **BOAT WRAPS**. As logy and Dynamics" class, the river can put an e rapped around an obstacle in the river. You first job is to ensure that NO ONE is trapped between the boat and the obstacle. If you do not have full accountability of personnel, don't hesitate! CUT THE BOAT! The easiest method to do this is to cut the floor out of the older "bucket" boats, or to cut the laces holding in the floor of a "self bailing" raft. Depending on how tightly wrapped the boat is you have several options available:

   a. First ensure the crew is accounted for and treated for any injuries.

   b. Establish a tag-line and attempt to bounce and pull the raft free.

   c. Set a Z-drag inside the boat to dump water.

   d. Use an oar or tree to lever the boat off the obstacle.

e. Set up a mechanical advantage system and attempt to "peal" the boat free.

f. Release air from the tubes. Be aware that this can cause more harm than good by reducing tube strength and exposing more surface area to the water pressure.

g. If all else fails, consider cutting out the floor as discussed earlier.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

WMC
04/14/02

STUDENT HANDOUT

VEHICLE RESCUES

LESSON PURPOSE. The purpose of this period of instruction is to train the students in the procedures used to rescue personnel from vehicles trapped in swift water.

1. **VEHICLE BEHAVIOR**. There are three types of hazards in a river. Floating objects such as trees and branches, suspended objects or tumbling objects such as sawyers, rocks, and other debris, and stationary objects such as live trees on flooded banks and boulders. A vehicle will become all of these "loads". For the first minute, or so, they will float, as they become partially filled with water, they will be suspended. This is normally when they tumble or roll, and finally they will become stationary as they lodge against another stationary object or fill completely. Once they become stationary, depending on the water depth, they may form an eddy, a pour through or pour over, creating a hydraulic or a standing wave if fully covered. Also, the straighter a vehicle is (head-on) to the water flow the more stable it is. Finally, bear in mind that changes in water flow or displacement (weight) of the vehicle (taking a victim off it) may cause the vehicle to once again become a suspended load and tumble.

2. **RESCUE PROCEDURES**

a. The initial action is to secure the vehicle. Ensure that you have adequate anchors. Trees, guardrails, and bridge abutments are good. Avoid using another vehicle if possible.

b. Approach the vehicle on the downstream side by using the eddy created by the vehicle. Use a boat, either tethered or under power, a strong swimmer or boogie board. Another method is to use the line securing the vehicle as a tension diagonal to reach the vehicle. Then establish a second tension diagonal or endless rope to move the victims ashore. Ensure your upstream spotters are in place to warn of other suspended debris coming your way.

B10

c. If the vehicle is sealed tight, crack one window slightly to allow water to get in the vehicle slowly and equalize the pressure. Warning: If you pop or shatter a window you may cause a sympathetic detonation of the remaining windows.

d. Equip the victims with PFD's and remove to the boat or onto the rope system. Consider the following points:

(1) The victims weight might be the only thing stopping it from rolling. You might need to transfer a rescuer in a one for one exchange.

(2) On hard pack or asphalt the vehicle will shift more easily.

(3) If the vehicle is sideways keep the victims on the upstream side. The high side rule is reversed.

(4) Vehicles roll slowly.

(5) Helo’s are a last resort.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

FMST.07.3
0
04/14/02

STUDENT HANDOUT

STREAM CROSSING

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVE: Given a mountain swift water environment, and a staff, conduct a mountain stream crossing to meet mission requirements per the reference. (FMST.07.30)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES:

(1) Without the aid of references, choose from a given list the considerations in site selection for a stream crossing, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.30a)

(2) Without the aid of the reference, choose from a given list the safety precautions taken while conducting a stream crossing, in accordance with the reference. (FMST.07.30b)

(3) In a summer mountainous environment, execute the individual preparations taken prior to crossing a stream, in accordance with the reference. (FMST.07.30c)

(4) In a summer mountainous environment and given a staff, cross a mountain stream using the staff method, in accordance with the reference. (FMST.07.30d)

(5) In a summer mountainous environment, cross a mountain stream using team methods, in accordance with the reference. (FMST.07.30e)

1. **SITE SELECTION** (FMST.07.30a)

   a. Mountain streams and rivers are military obstacles and therefore are danger areas for units crossing them. In order to reduce the time in the vicinity of the danger area, a recon team should precede the main body and select the best crossing site. The site selection for a stream crossing should include these eight considerations:

B11

(1) Look for logjams, rocks or fallen trees that will provide a dry crossing if possible.

(2) If a dry crossing is not possible, select a crossing point at a wide and shallow point where the current is slower.

(3) Avoid sharp bends. They can be deep with a strong current on the outside of the bend.

(4) Look for a firm, smooth bottom. This is because large rocks and boulders provide poor footing and cause a great deal of turbulence in the water.

(5) It may be easier to cross several small channels of water rather than one large one.

(6) Do not cross just above rapids, falls, or logjams, taking a fall or slipping could have serious consequences.

(7) Cross in the early morning. The water level will be lower since there has been less daylight for the snow to melt. Also, on sunny days, you will have more time to dry clothing and equipment.

(8) There should be a suitable spot downstream for safety swimmers.

2. **SAFETY PRECAUTIONS** (FMST.07.30b). The following two safety precautions must be taken while conducting stream crossings.

   a. There must be a safety line at a 45-degree angle downstream across the stream. This is for anyone who slips and is swept downstream to grab so that he is capable to stopping himself.

   b. There must be safety swimmers downstream. These are strong swimmers who are positioned downstream to help anyone who is swept downstream. The safety swimmers will use throw bags.

NOTE: The safety line, as well as any other lines that must be taken across the stream, will be taken across by using the lead swimmer method taught in ONE-ROPE BRIDGE.

3. **INDIVIDUAL CROSSING PREPARATIONS**. (FMST.07.30c) Prior to beginning to cross a stream, there are certain preparations that each individual should take. The five preparations are as follows:

   a. Wear pack with shoulder straps fastened snugly. Waterproof the pack for buoyancy if possible.

   b. Weapons will be slung diagonally over the shoulder with the weapon itself being between the pack and the individual's back.

c. Button all pockets and remove blousing garters. This prevents the water from creating added drag against the individual, which it would do if it could flow into open pockets.

d. Wear boots to protect the feet, but remove socks and insoles to keep them dry:

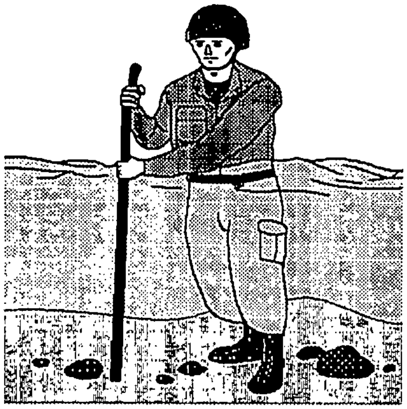
e. Wear the minimum amount of clothing. This reduces the amount of clothing that must be dried after the crossing.

f. Wear helmet in slow moving, shallow water.

NOTE: If you are in a tactical situation, the actual situation will dictate which of the above precautions will be taken.

4. **INDIVIDUAL CROSSING METHODS**. There are three individual methods that may be used.

a. Staff Method. (FMST.07.30d) A strong staff or pole about 6 feet long is used as a crossing aid. It should be strong enough to support the Marine's weight and trimmed clean of any branches. Placing both hands on the pole, the Marine should place the staff just upstream of his intended path. He should use the staff as the third leg of a tripod and should move only one leg or the staff at a time. He should face upstream using the staff to retain his balance. The staff is also used as a probe to discover bottom irregularities that could trip the Marine. The Marine should drag his feet instead of picking them up.



STAFF CROSSING METHOD

b. Swimming. This is an obvious method, if your Marines are good swimmers. This is not always the case, so usually this method is not a preferred one.

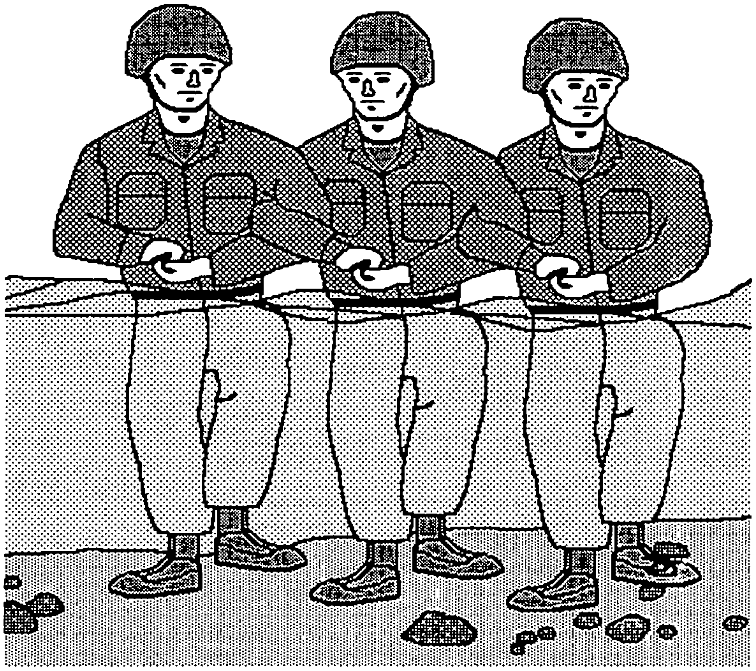
(1) In fast, shallow water, the Marine should angle across on his back with his feet downstream and his head up. He should use his hands to tread water and his feet to fend off obstructions.

(2) In fast, deep water, the Marine should angle across the stream on his stomach with his head upstream, to establish a proper ferry angle.

c. Belayed Method. In chest deep or water with a strong current, a rope can assist greatly. A rope will be secured from bank to bank, with the far anchor slightly downstream from the near anchor. The rope will be anchored off so that it lays at a minimum of 45 degrees. The Marine attaches himself to the rope by using a sling rope as safety line, tying a bowline around his waist and a figure-of-eight loop with a steel locking carabiner inserted. He then attaches the carabiner to the crossing line and crosses using the current to assist him.

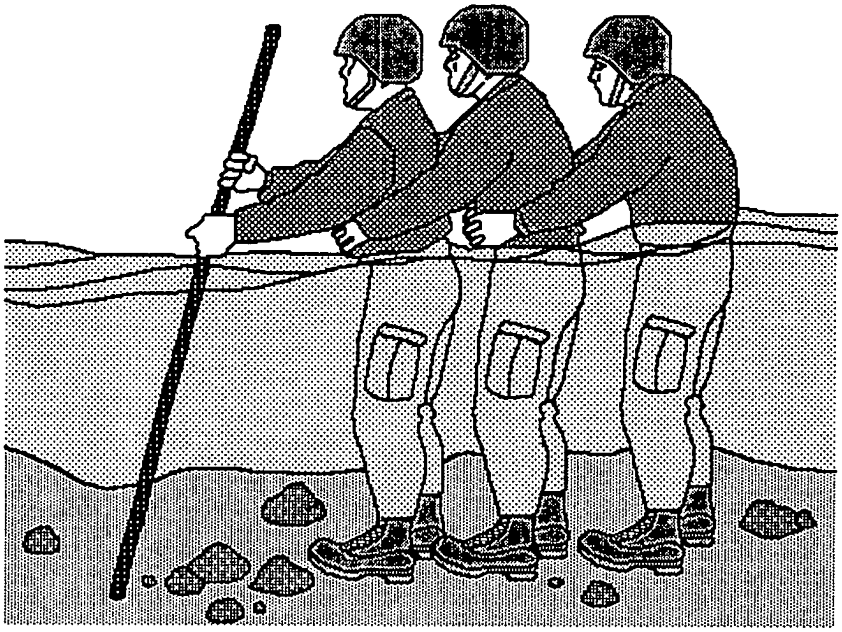
5. **TEAM CROSSING METHODS** (FMST.07.30e)

a. Line Abreast. Small units (squad to platoon) can cross in moderate currents up to chest deep, by lining arms in a line abreast or chain method. The largest man of the chain is placed on the upstream side of the group. The group will enter the stream parallel to the flow of the stream. The middleman of the chain will control the group's movement and give the command when to step.



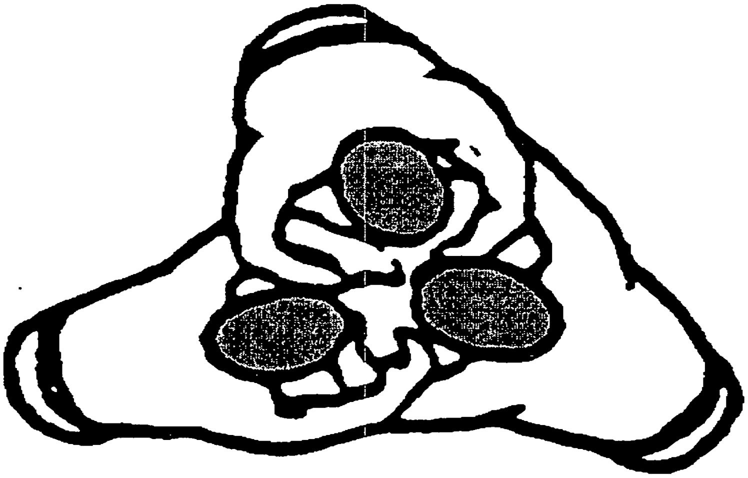
LINE ABREAST

b. Line Astern Method. Three or more men can line up facing the current. The upstream man, who should be the largest man in the group, breaks the current while the downstream men hold him steady. The upstream man may use a staff, similar to the individual staff method, to steady himself. All men side step at the same time with one man calling the cadence.



LINE ASTERN

c. Huddle Method. Between three and eight men can face inboard as in a football huddle. They will wrap their arms around each other's shoulders and cross the stream in this formation. The upstream man should change position as they cross because the entire formation will rotate. This prevents one man from becoming exhausted in the upstream position.



HUDDLE METHOD

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

WMC
04/09/02

STUDENT OUTLINE

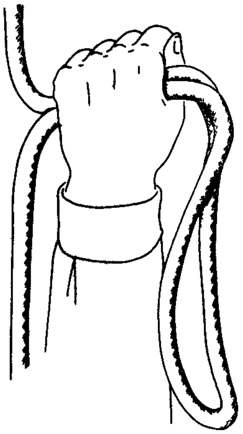
ROPE MANAGEMENT

LESSON PURPOSE: To familiarize the student with some of the terms and procedures for working with a rope.

BODY

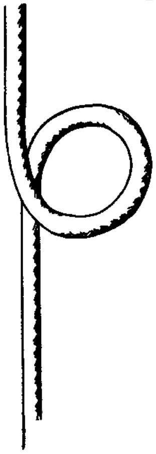
1. TERMS USED IN ROPE WORK

a. Bight. A simple bend in the rope in which the rope does not cross itself.



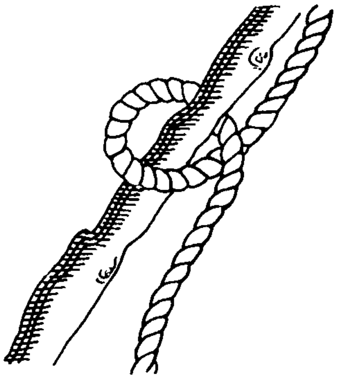
BIGHT OF ROPE

b. Loop. A simple bend in the rope in which the rope does cross itself.



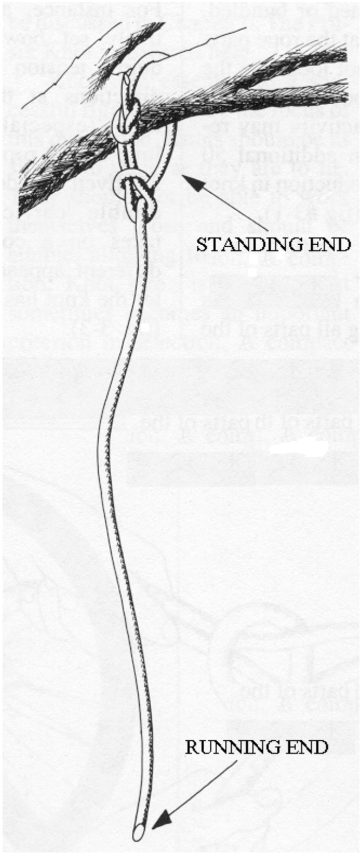
LOOP

c. Half Hitch. A loop which runs around an object in such a manner as to bind on itself.



HALF HITCH

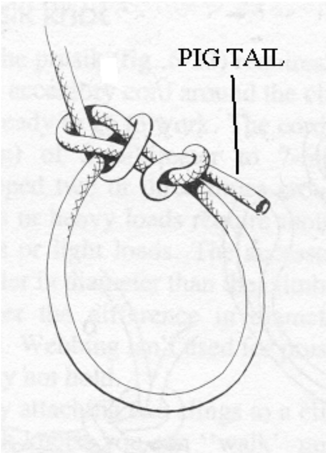
d. Standing End. The part of the rope which is anchored and cannot be used, also called the static end.



e. Running End. The free end of the rope which can be used.

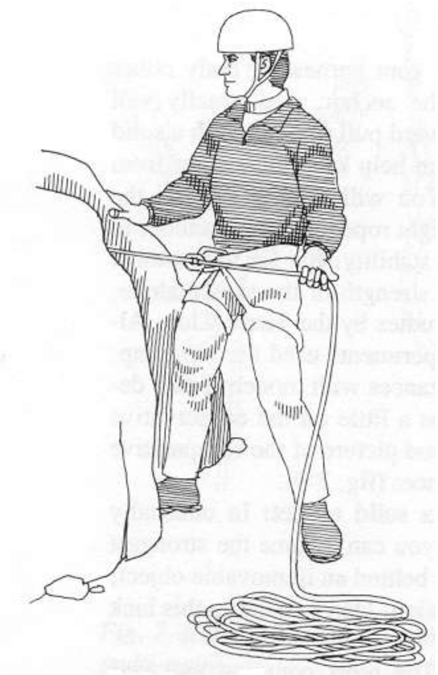
f. Lay. The same as the twist of the rope. (Applies only to hawser laid ropes, such as manila.)

g. Pigtail. The short length left at the end of a rope after tying a knot or coiling a rope. It may or my not be tied off with a secondary knot, depending on the circumstance.



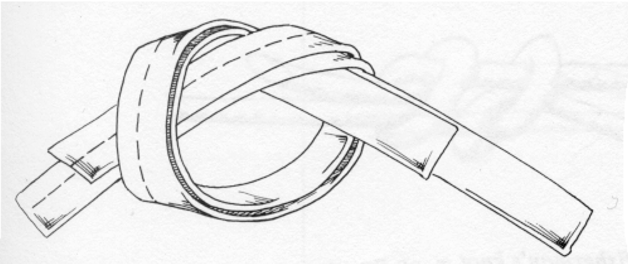
PIG TAIL

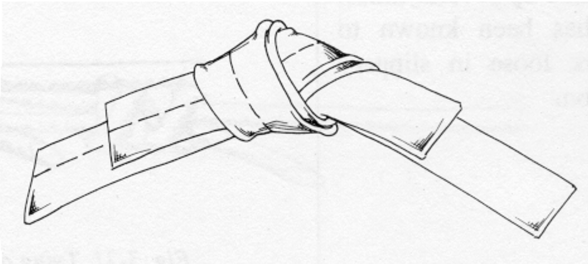
h. Stacking (or Flaking). Taking off one wrap at a time from a coil, and letting it fall naturally to the ground.



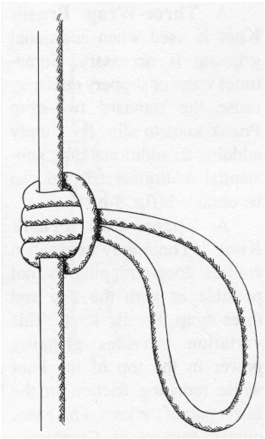
FLAKED OUT ROPEON THE GROUND

i. Dressing the knot. This involves the orientation of all of the knot parts so that they are properly aligned, straightened, or bundled, and so the parts of the knot look like the accompanying pictures. Neglecting this can result in an additional 50% reduction in knot strength.


NON-DRESSED DOWN WATER TAPE KNOT


DRESSED DOWN WATER TAPE KNOT

j. Setting the knot. This involves tightening all parts of the knot so that all of the rope parts bind upon other parts of the knot so as to render it operational. A loosely tied knot can easily deform under strain and change character.


A FULLY SET PRUSIK KNOT

2. **CONSIDERATIONS FOR THE CARE OF ROPE**

a. The rope should not be stepped on or dragged on the ground unnecessarily. Small particles of dirt will get into and through the sheath causing unnecessary wear to the rope within.

b. The rope should never come in contact with sharp edges of any type. Nylon rope is easily cut, particularly when under tension. If a rope must be used around an edge which could cut it, then that edge must be padded or buffed using fire hose if available, or several small sticks.

c. Keep the rope as dry as possible. If it should become wet, hang it in large loops, above the ground, and allow it to dry. A rope should never be dried out by an open flame, or be hung to dry on metal pegs, as this will cause rust to get in the rope thus rendering it unserviceable.

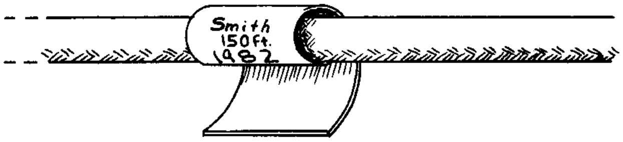
d. Never leave a rope knotted or tightly stretched longer than necessary.

e. When using rope installations, never allow one rope to rub continually against another.

NOTE: With manila ropes this will cause the rope to fray, whereas nylon ropes can melt under the friction that this causes.

f. The rope should be inspected prior to each use for frayed or cut spots, mildew, rot or defects in construction.

g. Mark all climbing ropes at their midpoints to facilitate establishing the midpoint for a procedure requiring you to use the middle of the rope. The rope should be marked with a bright colored adhesive tape.

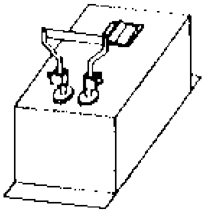


MARKING THE MIDDLE OF THE ROPE

h. The rope should not be marked with paints or allowed to come in contact with oils or petroleum products for these products will weaken it.

i. A climbing rope should NEVER be used for any other purpose except for mountaineering, i.e., towing vehicles.

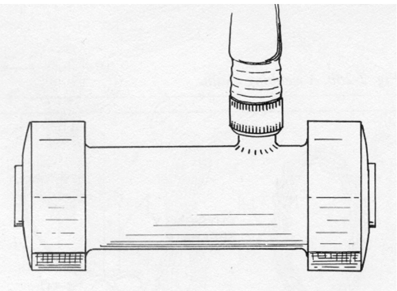
j. The ends of a new rope or ends caused by a cut should be cut with the rope cutter contained in the MACK and marked with a serial number.



ROPE CUTTER

k. The rope should never be subjected to high heat or flame as this can significantly weaken it.

l. To clean rope use mild soap and rinse thoroughly with water. A rope washer can be used to clean or rinse the rope.



ROPE WASHER

m. When not in use, ropes should be coiled and hung on wooden pegs rather than on nails or any other metal object. They should be stored in a cool place out of the direct rays of the sun.

n. When in areas of loose rock, the rope must be inspected frequently for cuts and abrasions.

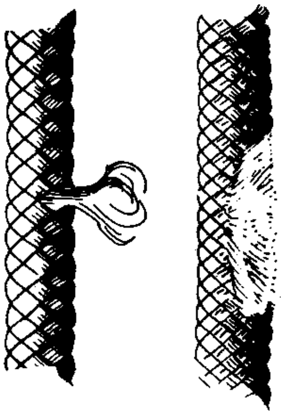
o. Always maintain an accurate Rope Log whenever using a rope.

p. Ropes 300-600 foot in length should be Mountain Coiled.

3. INSPECTION OF ROPE

a. All ropes have to be inspected before, during, and after all operations. Kernmantle rope is harder to inspect than a laid rope. I.e. green line. The Assault Climber must know what to look and feel for when inspecting a rope. Any of the below listed deficiencies can warrant the retirement of a rope.

(1) Excessive Fraying. Indicates broken sheath bundles or PIC breakage.



DAMAGED AND EXPOSED ROPE

(2) Exposed Core Fibers. Indicates severe sheath damage. (When you can see the inner core fibers)

(3) Glossy Marks. Signify heat fusion damage, also called a booger.

(4) Uniformity of Diameter / Size. May indicate core damage, noted by an obvious depression (hour glass) or exposure of white core fibers protruding from the sheath (puff).

(5) Discoloration. A drastic change from the ropes original color may indicate chemical change or damage.

(6) Stiffness or Soft Spots. Could signify core damage.

NOTE: Dynamic ropes measuring between 10mm and 12mm are marked at each end of its pigtails with a number "1" indicating that the rope is UIAA approved for single rope lead climbing. Dynamic ropes measuring between 8mm and 9mm are marked at each end of its pigtails with a "1/2" number indicating that two of these ropes are required to conduct a lead climb.

4. **ROPE LOG.** The purpose of the Rope Log is to maintain an accurate record for the use of each rope contained within the Marine Assault Climbers Kit (MACK). Due to the turnover of personnel, and the fact that no one person may have the same rope twice, the rope log is used to ensure the safe use, serviceability, and account of each rope.

a. Serial number. By assigning each rope a serial number, responsible units can determine information about a rope. As soon as the ropes are cut to the desired length for their intended purpose, each rope will be assigned a serial number by the responsible unit. That rope should then be labeled with that serial number in some permanent manner. The best method for this is as soon as the ends of the new rope have been whipped and fused, mark both ends of the rope with the serial number and then dip the ends of the rope, in effect, laminating the serial number to the rope ends.

(1) A rope serial number has five parts. The proper format for a rope serial number is as follows:

1. Type of rope: (S) - Static or (D) - Dynamic.

2. Last two digits of the year the rope was manufactured. Each rope has a shelf life of two years, after that it must not be used for any mountaineering purpose.

3. Four-digit number for that individual rope which is assigned by the responsible unit, and should be assigned sequentially as new ropes are issued out.

4. The length and diameter of the rope. The length may be recorded in feet, and the diameter in millimeters.

5. Responsible unit code. Example: S-96-0001-150/11mm-F2/8

   Example meaning: This rope is a 150 foot, 11mm, static rope, manufactured in 1996. It is the first rope issued by Fox Co 2/8.

b. Recording Information in a Rope Log. Once a new rope has been serialized, the rope log for that rope should be started up. At a minimum, it should contain the following information:

(1) The rope serial number.

(2) Manufacturer. Depending on the manufacturer, ropes of the same type and diameter may vary in tensile strength, stretch factor, and durability.

(3) Date of manufacture. Five years from this shelf life date, ropes are considered to have reached their normal expiration date, and should be destroyed.

(4) Date in service. This is to be recorded for tracking purposes to establish how long a rope is in service. Two years is considered maximum rope life in service.

(5) Each time a rope is used, the using unit is responsible to record how that rope was used and how much use the rope received. Additionally, before checking out a rope and prior to turning it back in, the rope must be inspected by qualified personnel, and initial in the "Inspected By" block of the rope log.

NOTE: ANY TIME A DYNAMIC ROPE IS SUBJECTED TO A FALL FACTOR 2, THAT ROPE SHOULD NOT BE USED AGAIN FOR MOUNTAINEERING.

DYNAMIC					
SERIAL #					
MANUFACTURER					
DATE OF MANUFACTURE					
DATE IN SERVICE					
INDICATE THE DATE AND NUMBER OF EACH SPECIFIC USE					
CLIMBS	**FALLS (FACTOR)**	**TOP ROPES**	**RAPPELS**	**REMARKS**	**INSPECTED BY**

ROPE LOG

5. **COILING A ROPE**. There are two types of rope coils frequently used at MWTC. The Mountain Coil and the Butterfly Coil.

a. Mountain Coil. This coil is useful for carrying the rope over a pack or over a climber's shoulder and neck. It can be used for short time storage. The mountain coil can be tied in the following manner:

(1) Sit down with your leg bent at a 90-degree angle, heel on the deck. Starting at one end, the rope is looped around the leg in a clockwise fashion, going over the knee and under the boot sole until the entire rope is coiled.

(2) If coiling a 150-foot rope, use only one leg and offset the other, when coiling a 300-foot rope, use two legs and keep them together.

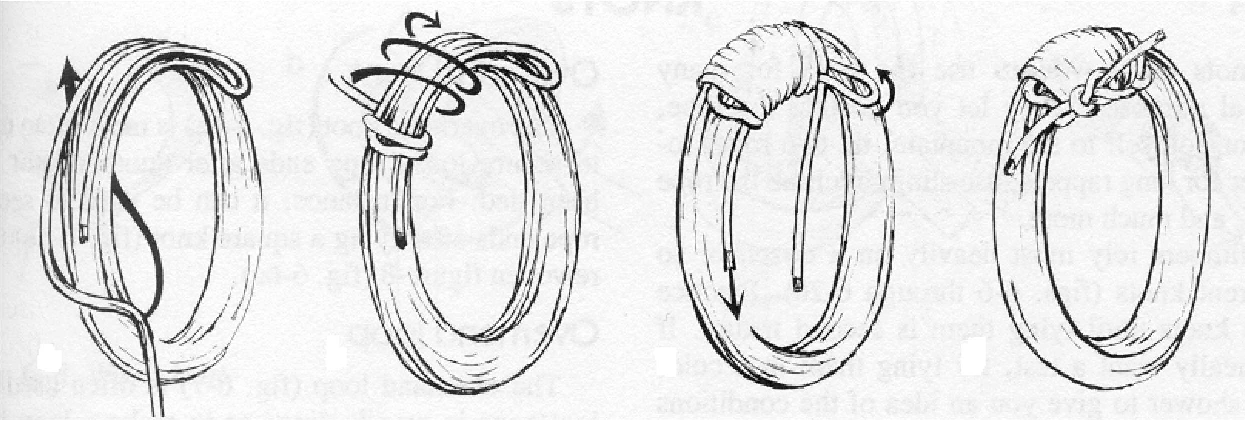
(3) With the starting end of the rope, form a 12-inch bight on the top of the coils.

(4) Uncoil the last loop and along the top of the coils, wrap 4-6 times towards the closed end of the bight.

(5) The end of the rope being wrapped is then placed through the closed end of the bight.

(6) The running end of the bight is then pulled snuggly to secure the coil.

(7) To prevent the coil from unraveling, the two pigtails are tied together with a square knot.

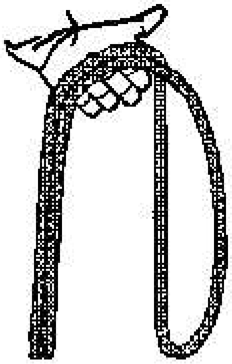


MOUNTAIN COIL

b. Butterfly Coil. This method is used for carrying a rope when the individual needs to have maximum use of his upper body, (i.e. while climbing), without the encumbrance of a large rope coil hanging across his chest.

(1) Coiling the Butterfly Coil

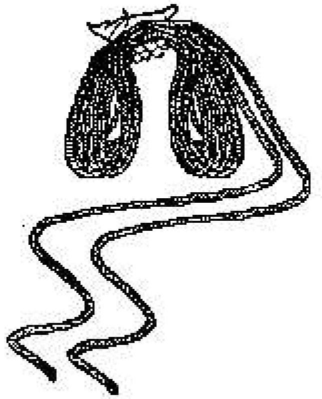
(a) Step 1: Find the middle of the rope, then form a three foot bight laying both ropes in the upraised palm at the two foot point.



STARTING THE BUTTERLFY COIL

(b) Step 2: Form another two-foot bight with the running end. Place the rope at the two-foot bight along side on top of the original bight ensuring the running end is on the same side as the original bight.

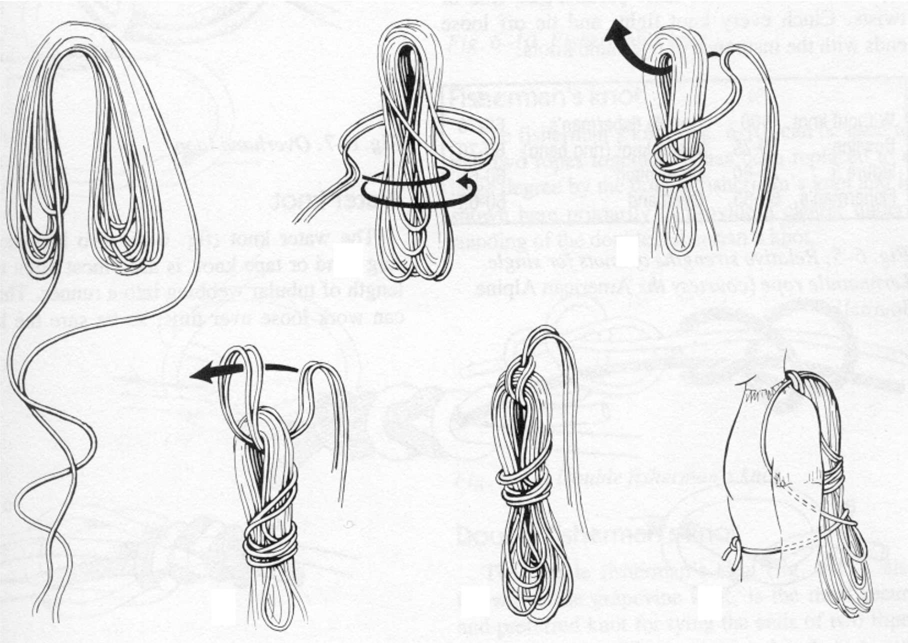
(c) Step 3: Continue making two foot bights, laying them alternately into your palm until there is only six to eight feet remaining. At that point, begin wrapping the two pigtails horizontally four to six times at the mid way point of the ropes in a bight from bottom to top.



TWO FOOT BIGHTS ON BOTHS SIDES WITH 6 TO 8 FEET REMAINING

(d) Step 4: After completing your wraps, form a bight with the remaining pigtail and then thread it underneath your palm and upwards to one-foot above the coiled rope.

(e) Step 5: With the remaining pigtail, thread it through the one-foot bight in step four.



TYING AND CARRYING THE BUTTERFLY COIL

(2) Carrying the Butterfly coil. Separate the running ends, placing the coil in the center of the back of the carrier, then fun the two ends over his shoulders so as to form shoulder straps. The running ends are then brought under the arms, crossed in the back over the coil, brought around the body of the carrier and tied off with a square knot at his stomach.

.

6. **ROPE THROWING**. To insure that the rope will not get tangled when deployed, certain steps must be taken.

a. With a stacked rope, anchor off the standing end.

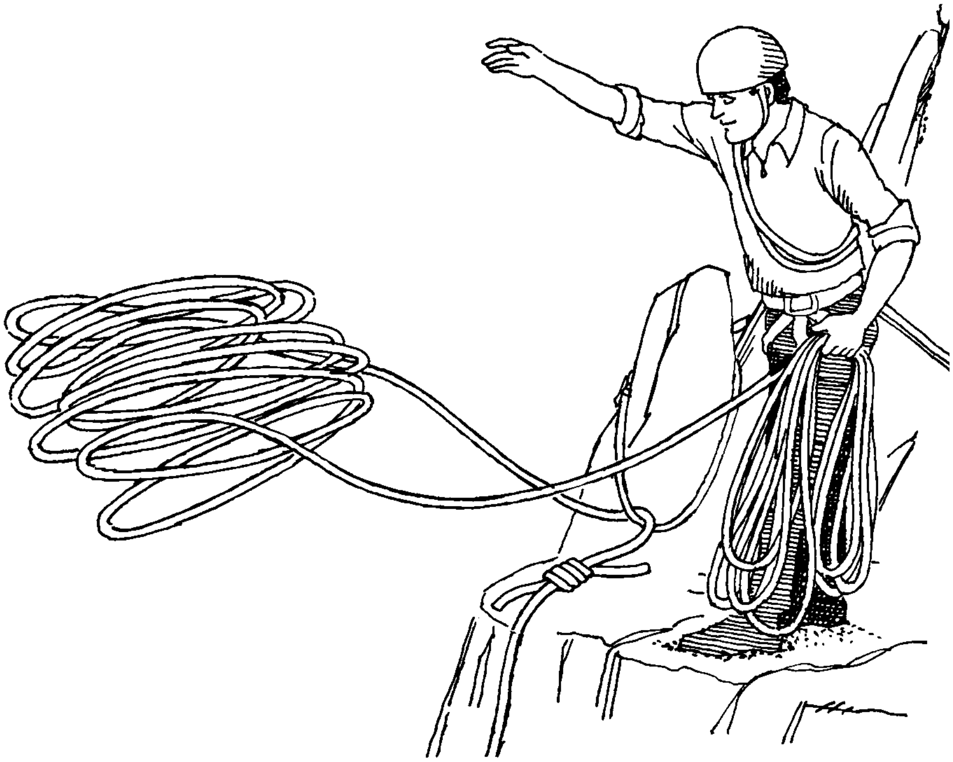
b. Take the opposite end of the rope and make 6-8 coils and place them in your strong arm. These wraps will serve as a throwing weight that you can aim.

c. 10-15 feet from the strong-arm coils create a second set of 6-8 wraps and place them in your weak arm.

d. From the edge of the cliff, sound off with the command "STAND-BY FOR ROPE". Just before you release the coils, sound off with the command "ROPE". At that time drop the weak arm coils from the cliff.

e. While taking aim, throw your strong-arm coils overhand or sidearm hard enough to hit your intended target.

f. If the throw was misdirected due to wind, tree, etc., reorganize and attempt to re-deploy the rope.

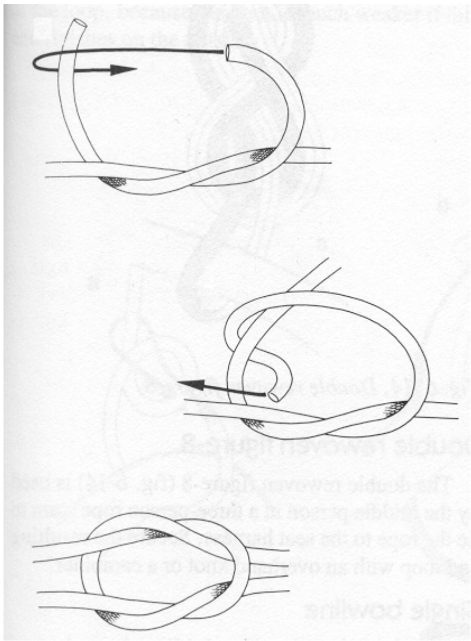


THROWING THE ROPE

6. MOUNTAINEERING KNOTS.

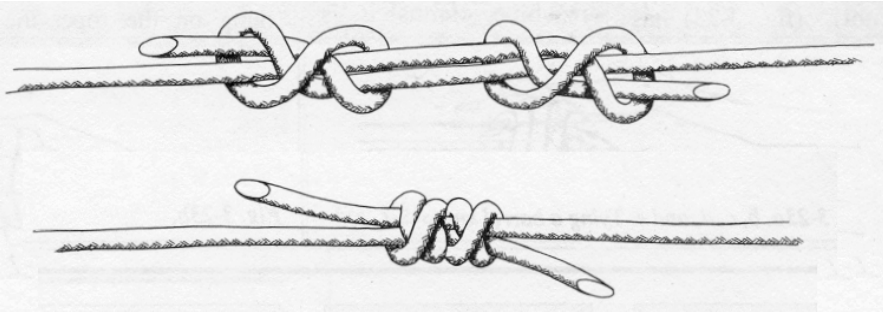
a. **Class I** – *End of the Rope Knots*

(1) Square Knot. Used to tie ends of two ropes of equal diameter together. It should be secured by overhand knots on both sides of the square knot.



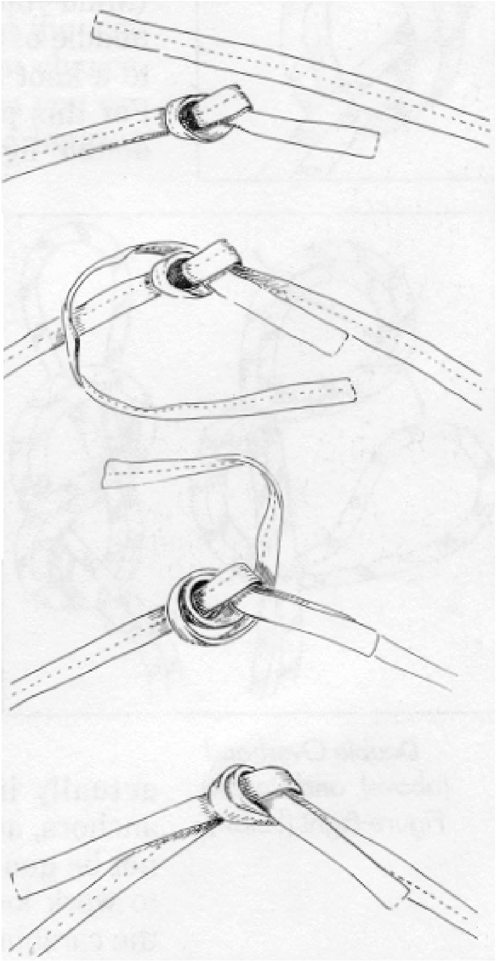
SQUARE KNOT

(2) Double Fisherman's Knot. It is a self-locking knot used for tying two ropes of equal diameter together. It can be tightened beyond untying.



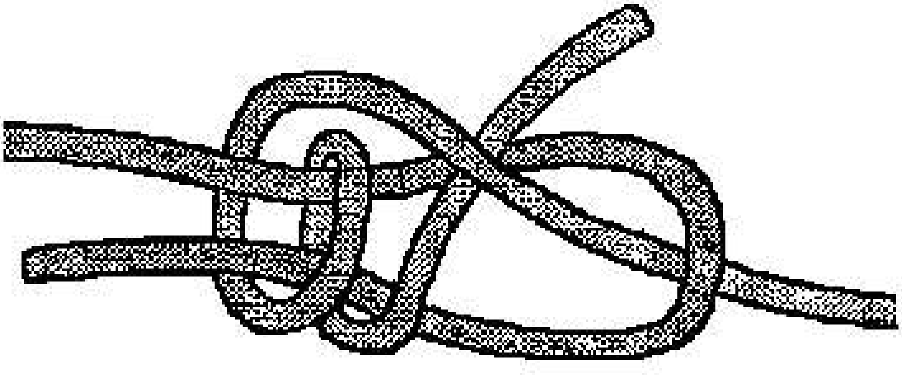
DOUBLE FISHERMAN'S KNOT

(3) Water/Tape Knot. Used to secure webbing or tape runners. It is constructed by tying an overhand knot (without twists) in one end of the tape, and threading the other end of the tape through the knot from the opposite direction. After the knot is dressed down, each pigtail should be a minimum of two inches long.



WATER TAPE KNOT

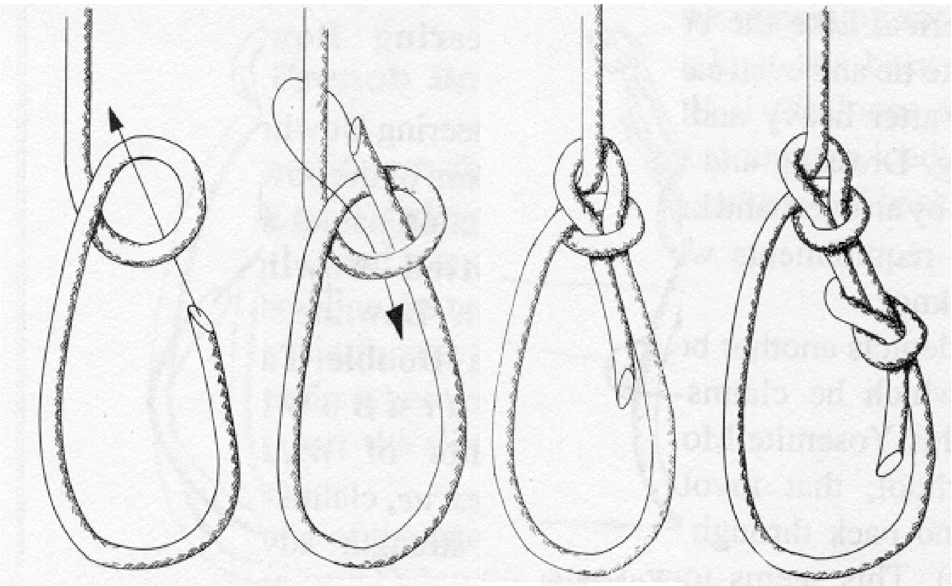
(4) Double Sheet Bend. Used to tie the ends of two or more ropes of equal or unequal diameter together.



SHEET BEND

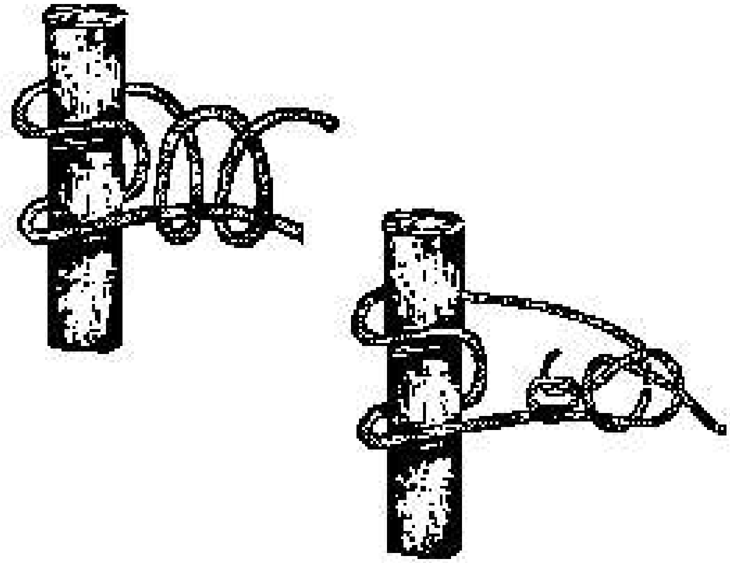
b. **Class II** - *Anchor Knots*

(1) Bowline. Used to tie a fixed loop in the end of a rope. This knot is always tied with the pigtail on the inside and secured with an overhand knot.



BOWLINE

(2) Round Turn with Two Half Hitches or a Bowline. A loop which runs around an object in such a manner as to provide 360 degree contact and may be used to distribute the load over a small diameter anchor. It will be secured with two half hitches or a bowline.

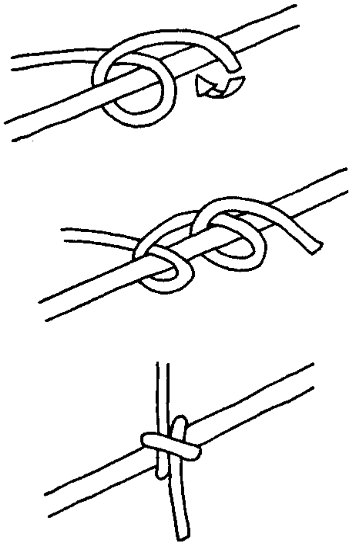


ROUND TURN AND TWO HALF HITCHES AND

ROUND TURN AND A BOWLINE

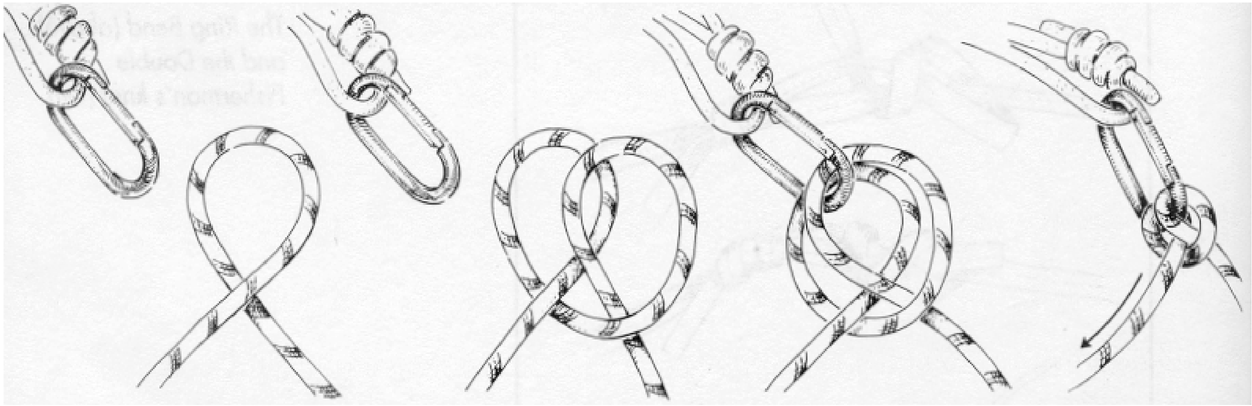
(3) Clove Hitch. This knot is an adjustable hitch. It could be considered a middle-of-the-rope anchor knot at the end-of-the-rope when used in conjunction with a bowline or round turn and two half hitches.

(1) Around-the-object Clove Hitch.



AROUND THE OBJECT CLOVE HITCH

(2) Over-the-object Clove Hitch.



OVER THE OBJECT CLOVE HITCH

c. **Class III -** *Middle-of-the-rope*

(1) Figure-of-Eight-Loop. This is a strong knot that can be readily untied after being under load.

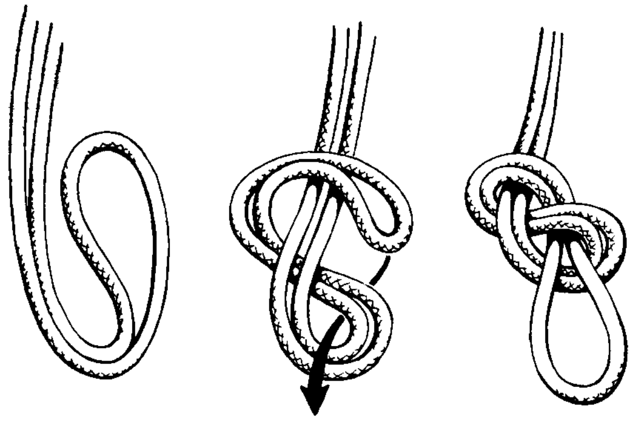
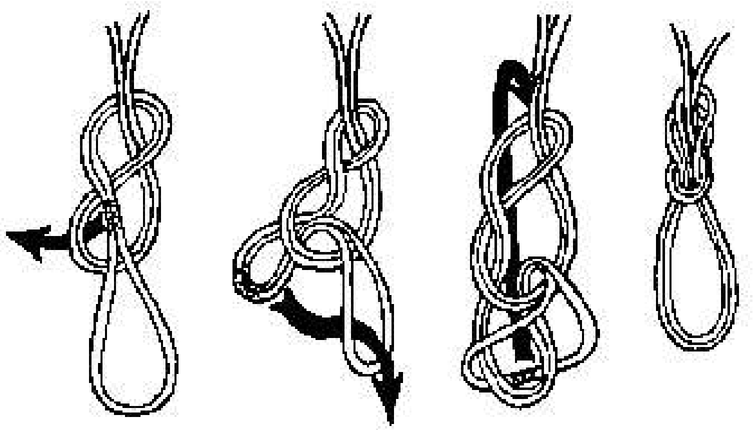


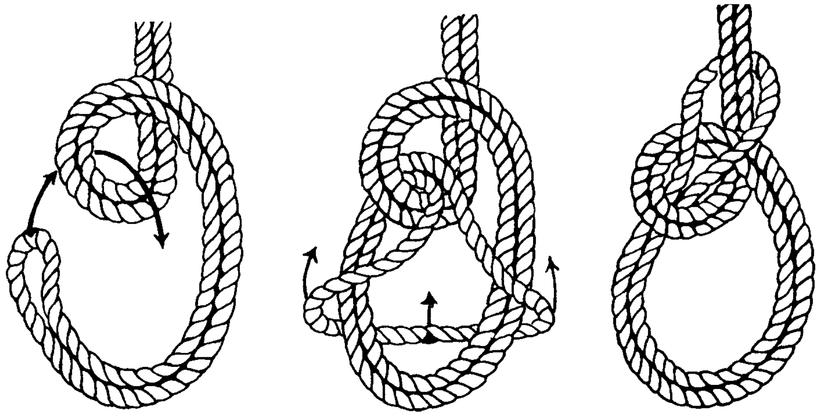
FIGURE 8 LOOP

(2) Double Figure of Eight Loop. The double Figure of Eight Loop is a strong knot and the double loop reduces the wear and strength loss from the rope bending around the carabiner by splitting the load between the two loops.



DOUBLE FIGURE 8 LOOP

(3) Two Loop Bowline. This knot can be used to construct a self-equalizing belay or to tie the middle person in on three people on a rope.

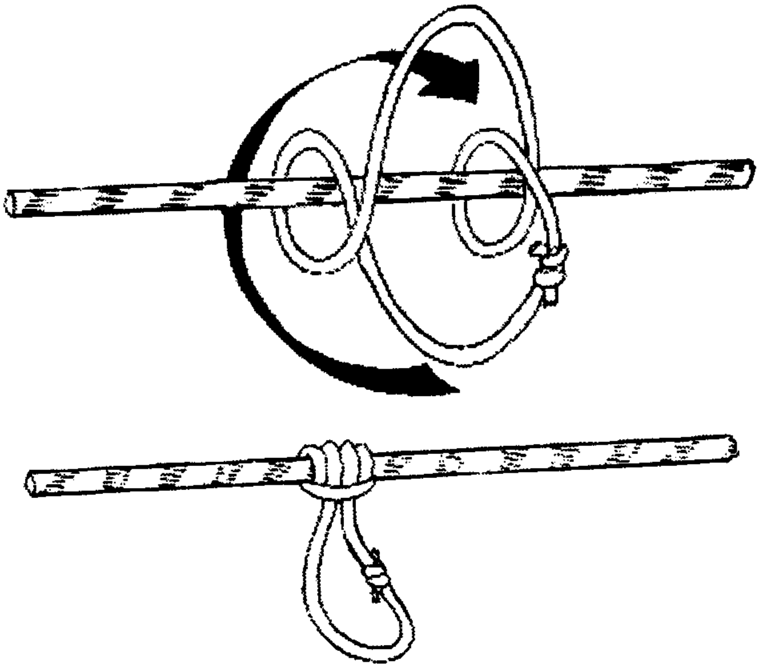


TWO LOOP BOWLINE

d. **Class IV -** *Special Knots*

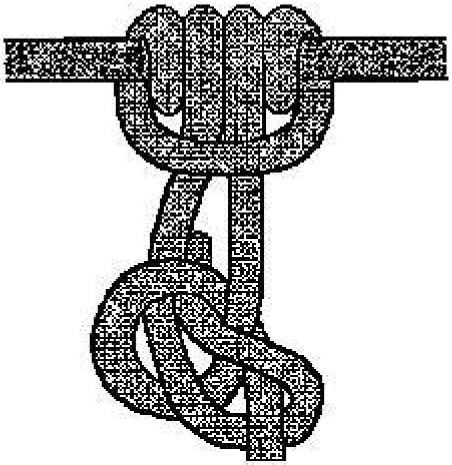
(1) Prusik Knot. This knot functions by introducing friction that can be alternately set and released. For best results, tie the knot with a smaller diameter cord on a larger diameter cord. If slippage occurs, more wraps maybe used.

(a) Middle-of-the-Rope Prusik. This knot is created with an endless loop also known as a Prusik Cord. Do not tie this knot with tape due to less friction.



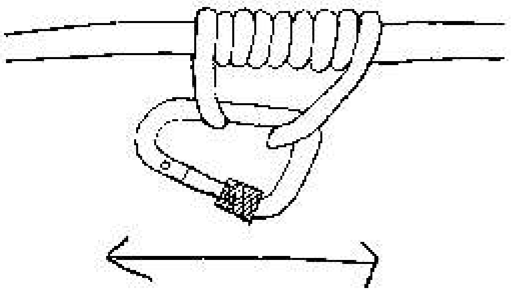
MIDDLE OF THE LINE PRUSIK

(b) End-of-the-Rope Prusik. This knot is always secured with a bowline. Do not tie this knot with tape due to less friction.



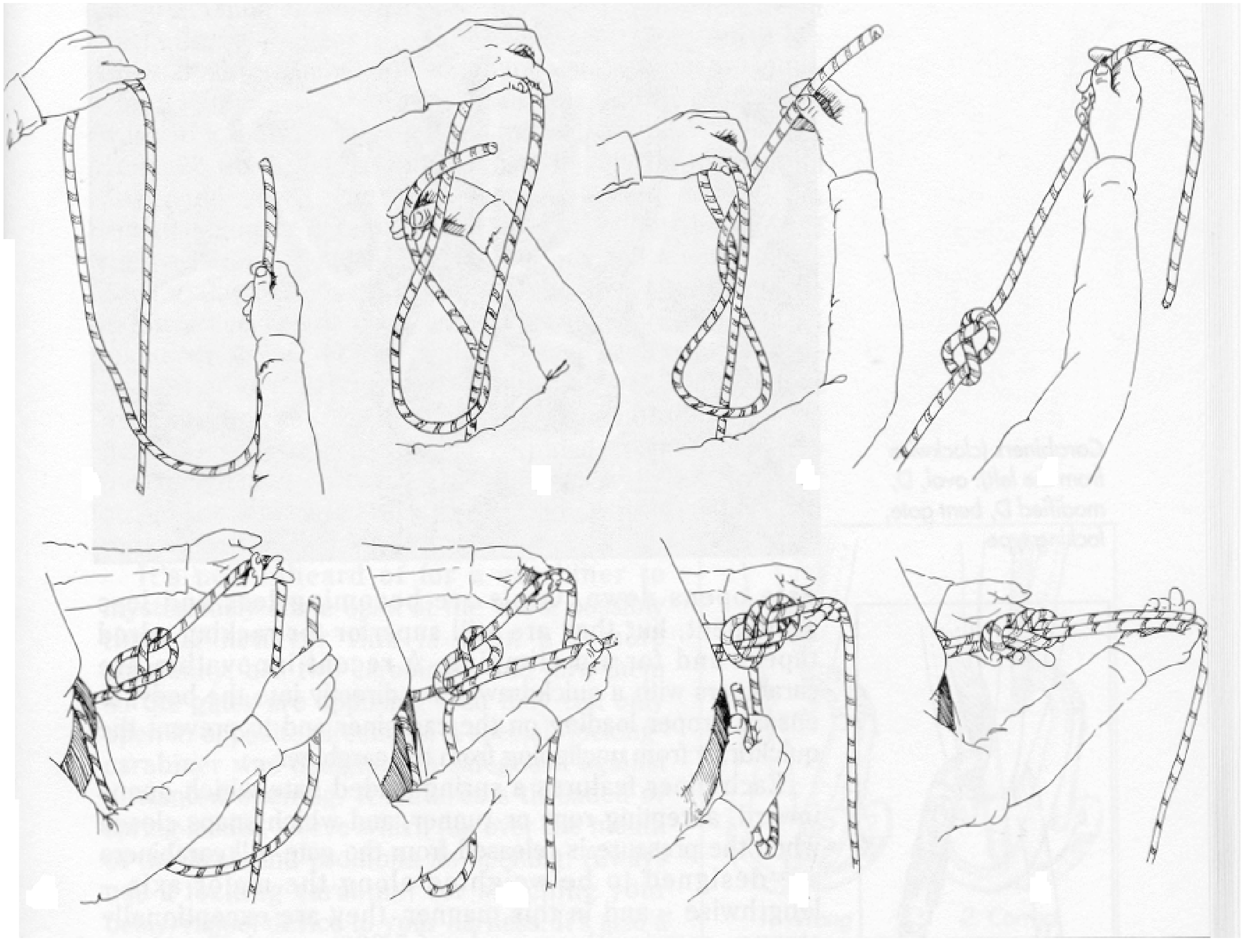
END OF THE LINE PRUSIK

(c) French Prusik. This can be constructed with a Prusik Cord or a single strand of cord with figure-of-eight loops on each end.



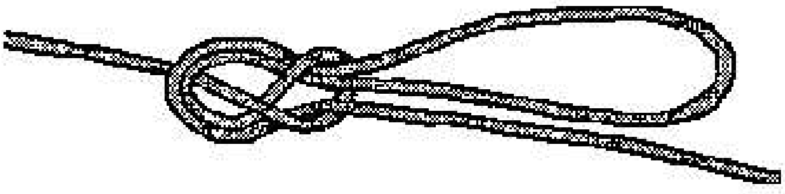
FRENCH PRUSIK

(2) Retraced Figure of Eight. Used to tie the end of the climbing rope into a harness or swammi wrap. The pigtail may or may not be secured with an overhand.



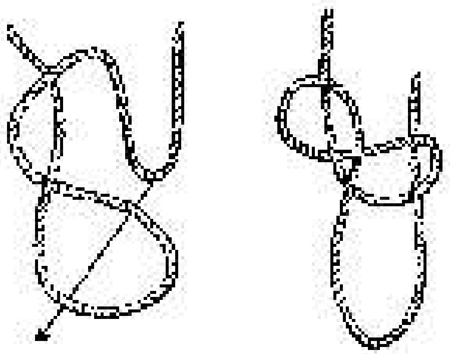
RETRACED FIGURE 8 IN HARNESS

(3) Directional Figure-Of-Eight. When tied and tensioned is applied to the standing and running ends of the rope, the knot will not pull apart. The loop will point toward the direction of pull.



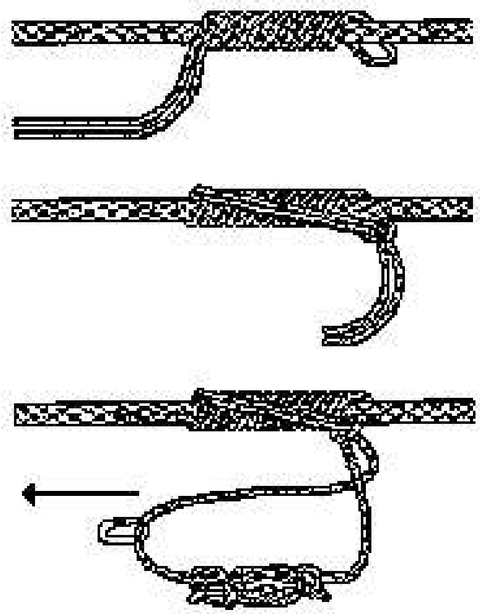
DIRECTIONAL FIGURE 8

(4) Slip Figure 8. This knot is used for retrievable anchors and fixed rope installations for the ease of untying the knot.



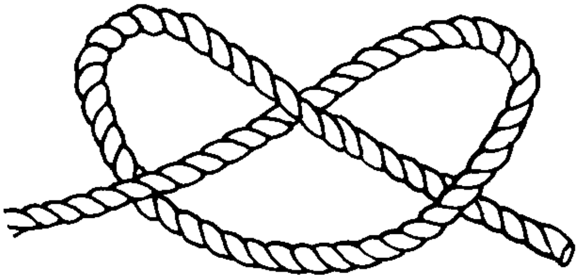
SLIP FIGURE 8

(5) Kliemheist. This is a friction knot.



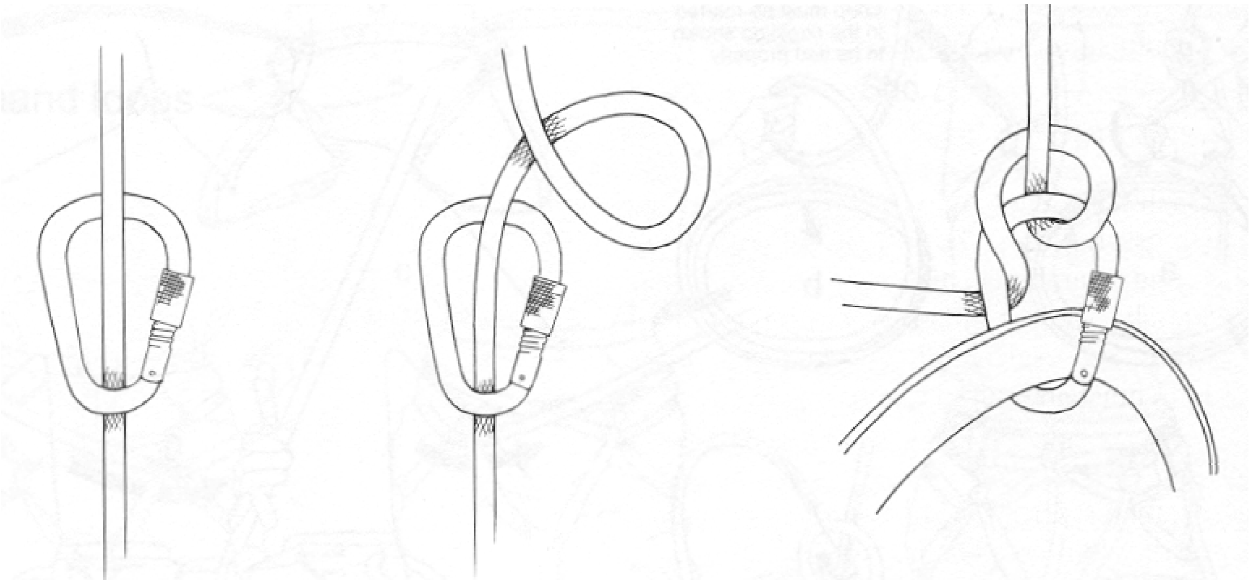
KLEIMHEIST

(6) Overhand Knot. Can be used to secure primary knots on itself.



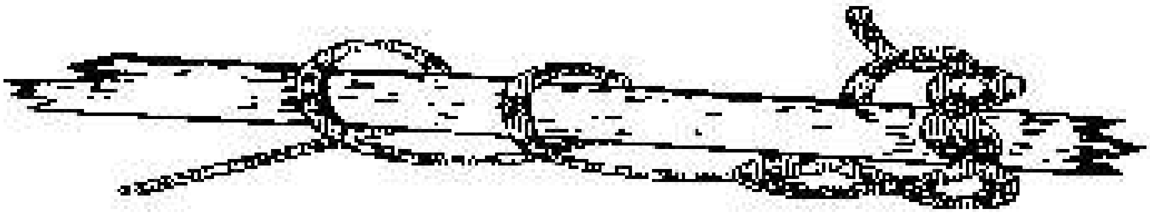
OVERHAND

(7) Münter Hitch. This is a simple hitch in the rope that is clipped into a carabiner to put friction on the line.



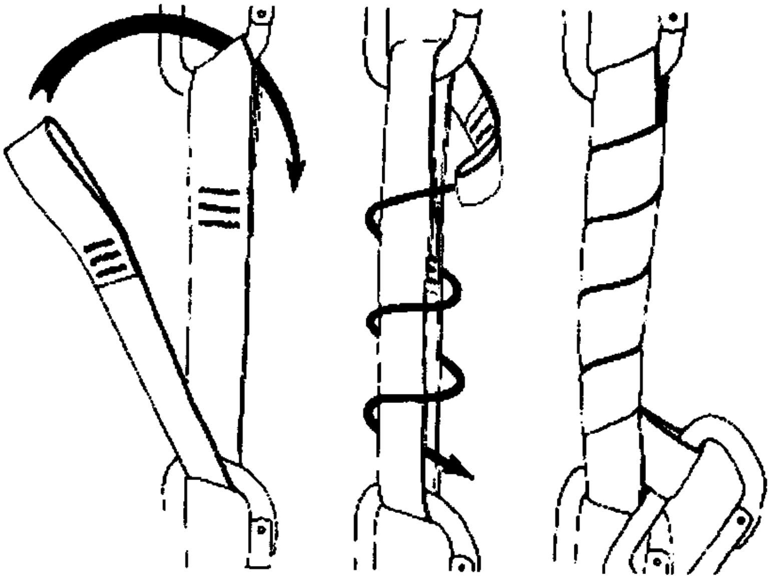
MÜNTER HITCH

(8) Timber Hitch. A Timber Hitch is used to fix a rope to a pole or equivalent for hoisting or towing purposes. It has the capability of casting off easily.



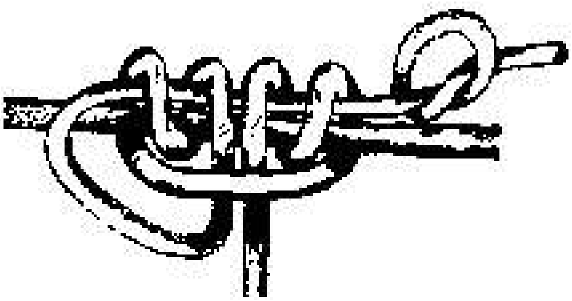
TIMBER HITCH

(9) Mariner's Hitch. This knot's advantage over the prusik is that it can be released under load.



MARINER'S HITCH

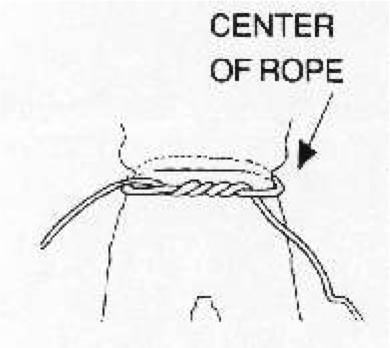
(10) Krägur Knot. This friction knot is used to prevent unnecessary slippage when tied onto a rope of the same diameter.



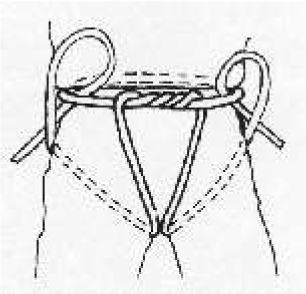
KRÄGUR KNOT

(11) Rappel Seat. This is used as an expedient support harness for rappelling, crossing rope bridges, etc. It is constructed as follows:

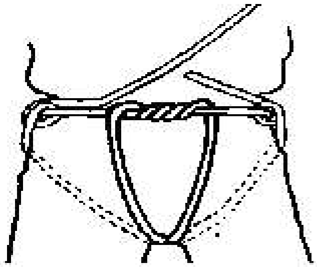
(a) Center the sling rope on the left hip.



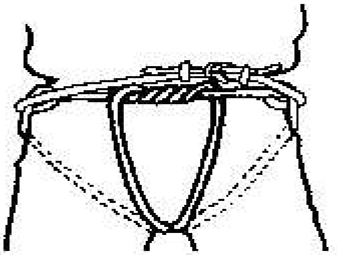
(b) Wrap the sling rope around the waist and tie at least one half hitch around itself (preferably two) in the front.



(c) Bring the running ends down through the legs, up over the buttocks, and over the original waist wrap, down between the waist wrap and the waist, and over itself, forming a bight. Cinch this up tightly.

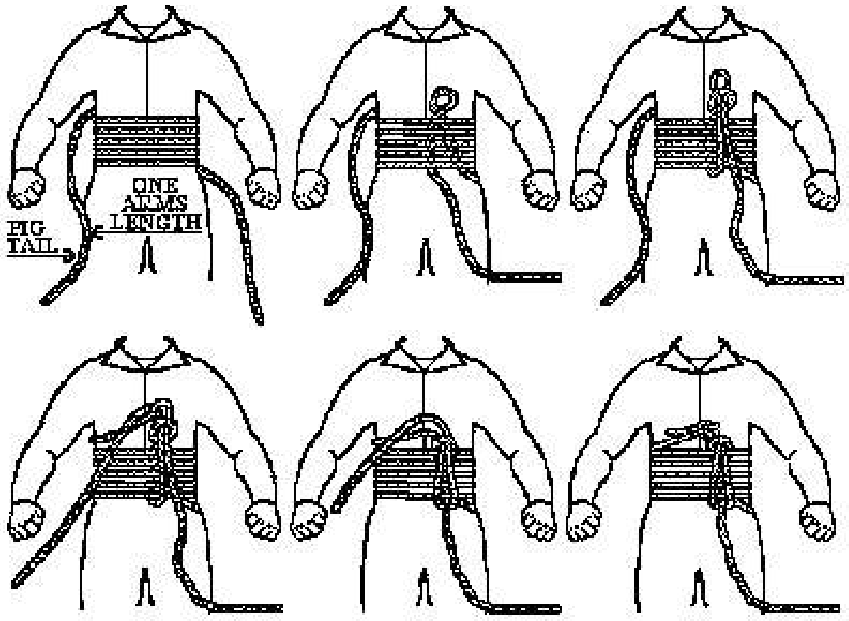


(d) Now tie a square knot with two overhand knots on the left hip ensuring that the overhand knots encompass all the wraps.



(e) Tuck any excess rope into a pocket.

(12) Bowline on a coil. Used by the first and last men on a climbing rope to tie into the rope. An overhand knot is used behind the knot. It distributes the force of a fall over a larger area of a climber's waist and is preferable to a single bowline around the waist. The bowline on a coil can also be used to take up excess rope. The bowline on a coil should have 4-6 wraps around the waist.



BOWLINE ON A COIL

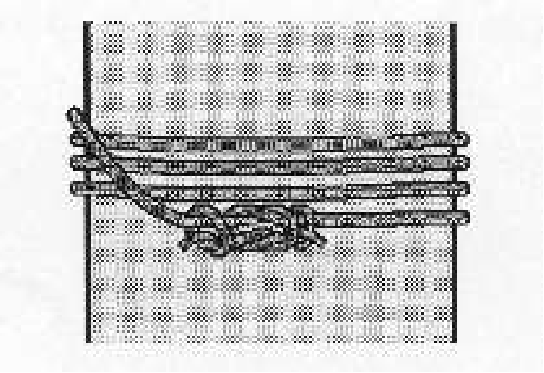
(13) Swami wrap (Swami belt). The swami wrap (four to six wraps of rope or nylon webbing tied around the waist) popular with rock climbers who wanted to increase the working length of their climbing ropes. It also offers some improvement over the bowline on the coil in distributing the forces sustained in a fall over a larger area of the midsection of the body, but does not eliminate the problem of suffocation when hanging. The Swami wrap is constructed as follows:

(a) Take a sling rope and find the middle.

(b) Place the middle of the sling rope in the small of your back.

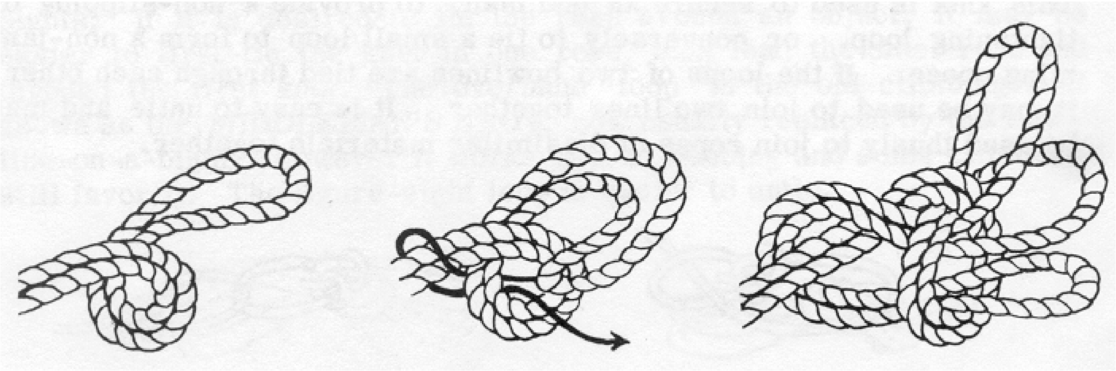
(c) Bring both pigtails to the front and continue to wrap around your body until both pigtails are about 15-20 inches long.

(d) Tie the pigtails on the left side with a square knot and two overhand knots.



SWAMMI WRAP

(14) Three Loop Bowline. This knot will provide three bights, each of which can be adjusted against the others.



THREE LOOP BOWLINE

7 **KNOT STRENGTH.** Rope, cordage and webbing is strongest when loaded in a straight line. When bending a rope or web to create a knot, the strength of the rope is reduced. All knots should be dressed properly for maximum effective use.

KNOT	RELATIVE STRENGTH OF KNOT
No Knot	100%
Figure 8	75-80%
Bowline	70-75%
Double Bowline	70-75%

Double Fisherman	65-70%
Water Tape Knot	60-70%
Clove Hitch	60-65%
Overhand Knot	60-65%
Square Knot	45%

1. **KNOT TESTING TIME LIMIT.** The following times must be met to pass the knot tying portion of this course.

KNOT	**UNIT OPERATIONS TIME LIMIT**	**SML, ACC TIME LIMIT (BLINDFOLDED)**
Square knot	60 Seconds	30 Seconds
Double Fisherman's Knot	60 Seconds	30 Seconds
Water/Tape Knot	60 Seconds	30 Seconds
Round Turn and a Bowline	60 Seconds	30 Seconds
Round Turn and Two Half Hitches	60 Seconds	30 Seconds
Clove Hitch (around the object)	60 Seconds	30 Seconds
Munter Hitch	60 Seconds	30 Seconds
Slip Figure 8	60 Seconds	30 Seconds
Figure 8 Loop	60 Seconds	30 Seconds
Directional Figure 8	60 Seconds	30 Seconds
End of the Line Prusik	90 Seconds	45 Seconds
Retrace Figure 8	90 Seconds	45 Seconds
Rappel (Swiss) Seat	2 Minutes	60 Seconds

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

SMO
05/02/01

STUDENT OUTLINE

NOMENCLATURE AND CARE OF MOUNTAINEERING EOUIPMENT

LESSON PURPOSE. The purpose of this period of instruction is to introduce you to the types of equipment used here at MWTC and how to care for it so as to prevent its untimely failure. This lesson relates to all climbing and installation work that you perform here at MWTC.

OUTLINE

1. **ROPES.** All ropes used in the military must meet UIAA standards or U. S. Federal Test Standard 191A. Most ropes have a 5-year shelf life and maximum 2-year service life.

    a. Static. Black in color.

        (1) Construction. Kernmantle

        (2) Minimum tensile strength. 7500 lbs.

        (3) Maximum elongation. 1.5%

        (4) Diameter. 11mm

        (5) Sizes.

            (a) 165 ft ± 5 ft

            (b) 300 ft ± 10 ft

        (6) Usage. Rescue operations and bridging where a low amount of elongation is desirable under a working load.

b. Dynamic. Olive Drab in color.

  (1) Construction. Water-resistant treated Kernmantle to reduce friction.

  (2) Minimum tensile strength. 6500 lbs.

  (3) Maximum elongation. 6%

  (4) Diameter. 10.5mm and 11mm

  (5) Size. 165 ft ± 5 ft.

  (6) Usage. For lead climbing/party climbing.

c. Maxim Dry Rope. Olive Drab or Multi-Colored.

  (1) Construction. Water-repellent treated Kernmantle.

  (2) Minimum tensile strength. 3472 lbs.

  (3) Maximum elongation. 6%

  (4) Diameter. 9mm

  (5) Size. 150 ft ± 5 ft

  (6) Usage. For glacier travel/ice climbing

d. Gold Line II.

  (1) Construction. Eight strand braided nylon plymor.

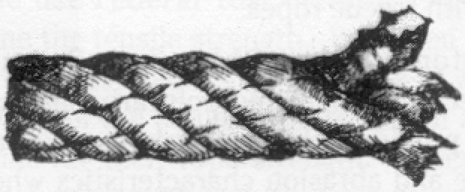
  (2) Minimum tensile strength. 4500 lbs.

  (3) Maximum elongation. 20%

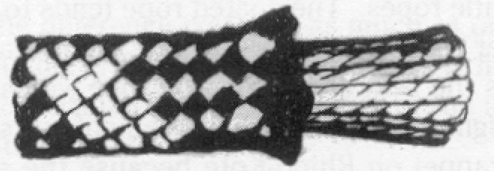
  (4) Diameter. 11 mm

  (5) Size. 300 ft or 600 ft spools

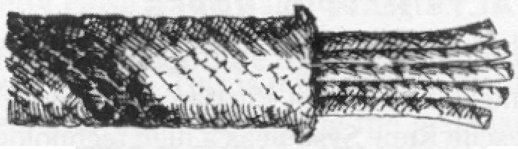
  (6) Usage. Sling Ropes and litters only.



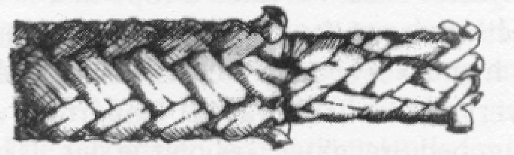
Three strand twisted or laid rope.



Static, kernmantle rope showing core (kern) and sheath (mantle).



Dynamic, kernmantle rope used for rock climbing.



Double braid rope showing the braided sheath and braided core.

INSIDES AND OUTSIDE SHEATHS OF VARIOUS TYPES OF ROPES

NOTE: Sling ropes are made from 15 foot lengths of plymor or dynamic rope ONLY. Twenty-five foot practice coils should be constructed with static rope, but dynamic rope can be used.

2. ADVANTAGES/DISADVANTAGES

a. Advantages of Nylon Rope

(1) High strength to weight ratio.

(2) Good energy absorption in dynamic ropes.

(3) Flexible.

(4) Rot resistant, not affected by frost.

b. Disadvantages of Nylon Rope

(1) Low melting point. Nylon fuses at 400°F and melts at 480°F.

(2) Susceptible to abrasions and cuts.

(3) Affected by chemicals and light.

c. Advantages of Manila Rope

(1) Easily gripped.

(2) Hard wearing.

(3) Does not deteriorate in heat.

d. Disadvantages of Manila Rode

(1) Heavy, kinks, especially when wet. Absorbs water and swells.

(2) Burns at +300°F.

(3) Edible by rodents.

3. GENERAL INFORMATION

a. Nylon rope stretches under tension and will rupture at between 30% and 70% elongation, depending on construction.

b. Nylon rope loses as much as 30% strength when wet.

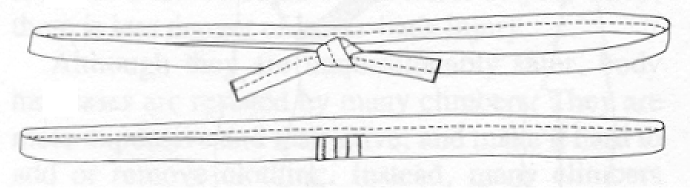
c. Temperatures as low as 250°F will damage a nylon rope.

4. NYLON WEBBING

a. The type of nylon webbing available is tubular. Tubular nylon webbing is very strong and flexible. All rules that apply to nylon rope apply to tubular nylon webbing. The size of nylon webbing used is:

(1) 1 inch tubular nylon. Tensile strength approximately 4,000 - 4,500 lbs., depending on the manufacturer.

b. Pre-sewn Spectra Runners. Tensile strength approximately 5,500 lbs.



NYLON WEBBING

NOTE: These are minimum strengths. Some manufactures make even stronger webbing.

1. **CARABINERS**. Also commonly known as snap links. There are two different types of carabiners frequently used at MWTC, the steel locking carbine and the non-locking aluminum carabiners.

a. Steel Locking Carabiner. There are two different sizes of carabiners:

(1) Steel Locking Stubai 82.

(2) Large Locking "D" Stubai 85.

b. Aluminum Non-Locking Carabiner.

(1) The standard "D" non-locking carabiner with a tensile strength of 2000 lbs. or more.

2. **NOMENCLATURE OF A CARABINER**.

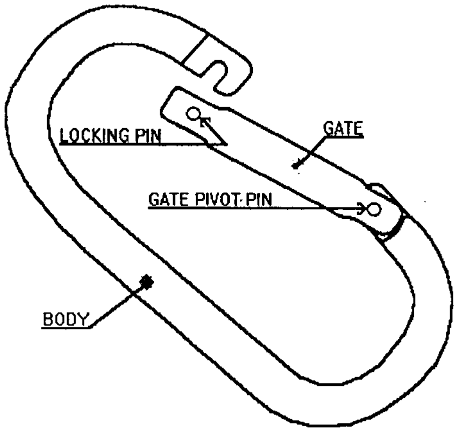
a. There are four parts to a non-locking carabiner. They are as follows:

(1) Gate.

(2) Gate pivot pin.

(3) Locking pin

(4) Body.



STEEL NON-LOCKING CARABINER

b. There are five parts to a locking carabiner. They are as follows:

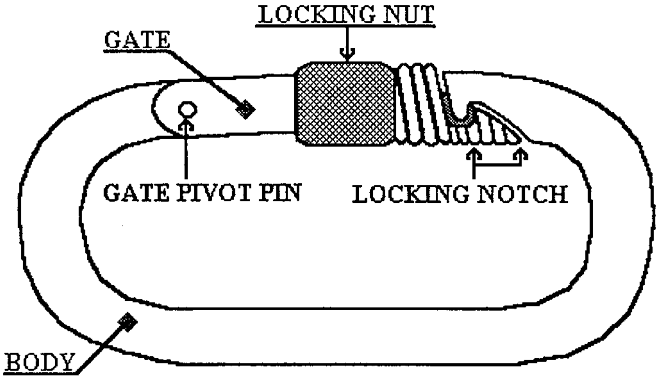
(1) Gate

(2) Gate pivot pin

(3) Locking notch

(4) Locking nut

(5) Body



STEEL LOCKING CARABINER

3. **CARE, MAINTENANCE AND SERVICEABILITY OF A CARABINER**. The following inspections and maintenance should be performed on a routine basis:

a. Care.

(1) Avoid dropping of a carabiner onto a hard surface, hairline factures could occur.

(2) Keep the carabiners off of the bare ground because dirt and grit can get into the working parts.

(3) If the carabiner has fallen from a significant height, it should be retired.

b. Maintenance.

(1) Remove all dirt, moisture and grime after use.

(2) Lubricate with tri-flow graphite and wipe off with a clean cloth.

c. Serviceability Checks.

(1) The gate snaps shut with no friction and with no gap between the locking pin and locking notch.

(2) There is no excessive side to side movement of the gate

(3) The pivot pin is tight.

(4) That the spring-loaded gate functions properly.

(5) The locking pin is tight.

(6) The locking nut travels freely and locks securely.

(7) There are no cracks or flaws in the metal.

NOTE: The weakest part of a carabiner is the gate. If an engraver is used to mark a carabiner, it should be applied to the gate and not the load bearing side.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

WMC
04/11/02

LESSON PLAN

BALANCE CLIMBING

1. LEARNING OBJECTIVES

a. TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVE. In a summer mountainous environment, execute balance climbing, in accordance with the references. (WMC)

b. ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES.

(1) With the aid of references, state orally the safety requirements for balance climbing, in accordance with the references. (WMC.C3a)

(2) With the aid of references, state orally the individual preparations for a balance climb, in accordance with the references. (WMC.C3b)

(3) In a summer mountainous environment, execute the duties of a spotter for a balance climb, in accordance with the references. (WMC.C3c)

(4) In a summer mountainous environment, execute the commands used between the climber and the spotter during a balance climb, in accordance with the references. (WMC.C3d)

(5) In a summer mountainous environment, execute each type of hold used in balance climbing, in accordance with the references. (WMC.C3e)

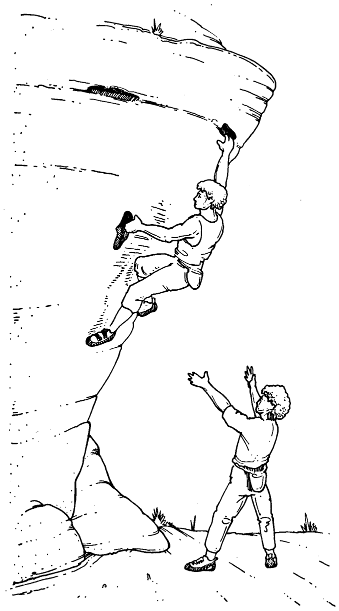
(6) Without the aid of references and given the acronym "CASHWORTH", describe orally the nine considerations for proper body position while climbing, in accordance with the references. (WMC.C3f)

OUTLINE

1. **SAFETY PRECAUTIONS**. There are two safety precautions that always apply to balance climbing. They are as follows:

a. Never climb more than 10 feet above the ground. By this it is meant that the climber's feet are never more than 10 feet above the ground.

b. A spotter is required for all balance climbs.



SPOTTER WATCHING THE CLIMBER

2. **INDIVIDUAL PREPARATIONS**. Prior to beginning a balance climb there are seven things that the climber must do to prepare himself. They are as follows:

   a. Helmet with a serviceable chinstrap must be worn.

   b. Sleeves rolled down_to give hand and arm freedom of movement. Blouse tucked in to your trousers. In case of fall, it may catch on a rock and cause you to flip over sideways.

   c. All watches, rings, and jewelry must be removed before climbing.

   d. Gloves will not be worn, as they can slip, and also give a false feel for the rock.

   e. Unblouse trousers, if they restrict movement.

   f. Soles of boots clean and dry.

   g. Select route where vegetation is minimal. Never use vegetation for hand or foot holds.

3. **DUTIES OF THE SPOTTER**. The spotter is the balance climber's partner who, rather than climbing himself, acts as the safety man for the climber during the climb. The five duties of the spotter are as follows:

a. Positions himself directly behind the climber before the climb starts.

b. Maintains his position facing the cliff, directly below the climber and approximately 3-4 feet away from the base of the cliff, for the duration of the climb. He will move diagonally as necessary to remain below the climber.

c. The spotter will stand with his feet shoulder width apart and arms ready to stop the climber if he falls.

d. If the climber falls, the spotter will not "catch" him; he will prevent the climber from falling further down the hill. He will do this by pushing the climber towards the base of the cliff, thereby preventing him from tumbling backwards.

e. At no time will the spotter allow anyone to come between himself and the face of the cliff while a balance climb is taking place. He will require anyone who wants to pass by his position to go behind him.

4. **SPOTTING AND CLIMBING COMMANDS**. The following are the commands used by both the spotter and climber.

COMMAND	GIVEN BY	MEANING
"Last Name, climbing."	Climber	I am ready to climb.
"Climb Climber."	Spotter	I am ready to spot you.
"Last Name, off Climb."	Climber	I am off the climb.
"ROCK!"	Climber or Spotter.	A rock has been knocked off the rock face and is falling.
"FALLING!"	Climber	I am Falling.

a. If the command "ROCK" is given, all personnel in the vicinity will take the following action:

(1) If close to the cliff face, move against the cliff face with your face against the cliff face and your hands between you and the cliff face.

(2) If not close to the cliff face, look up to locate the rock and avoid it.

5. **ACTIONS IF FALLING**. If, while making a balance climb, the climber feels himself slipping and beginning to fall, he will take the following action:

a. Sound the command "falling".

b. Push himself away from the rock face.

c. Maintain proper body position as follows:

(1) Head up.

(2) Hands out toward the rock.

(3) Body relaxed.

(4) Feet kept below the body, slightly apart.

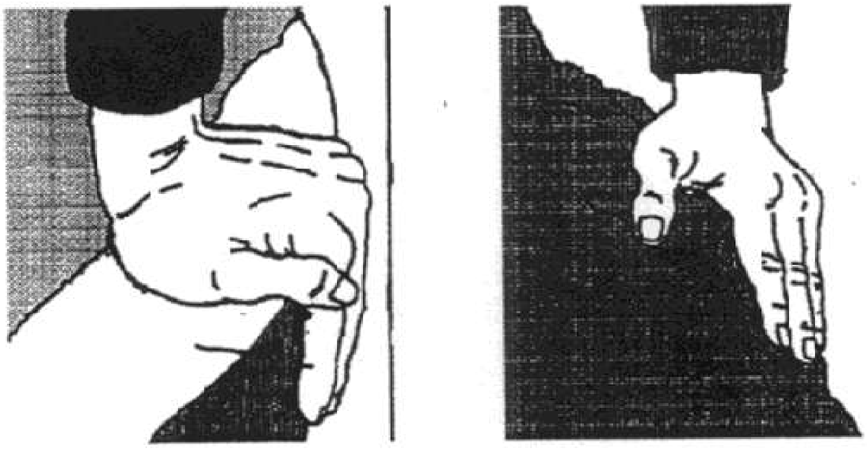
(5) Ensure you face the cliff face as you fall.

6. **TYPES OF HOLDS**. There are five basic holds that are used in balance climbing. They are as follows:

a. Push Holds.

(1) Most effective when hands are kept low.

(2) Often used in combination with a pull hold.

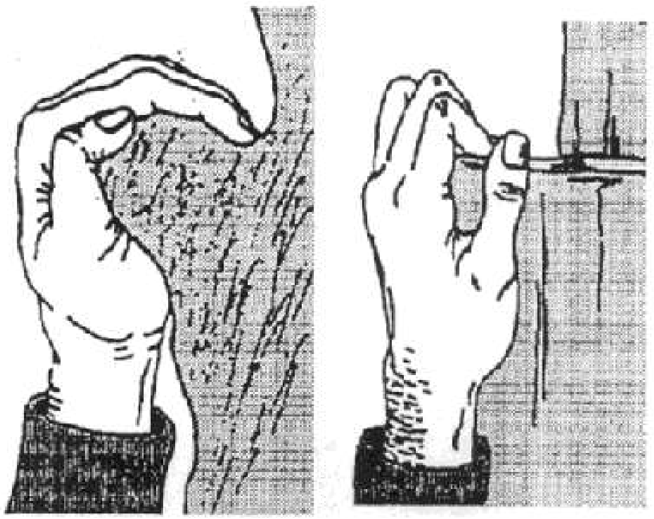


TYPES OF PUSH HOLDS

b. Pull Holds.

(1) The easiest hold to use and, consequently, often overused.

(2) Can be effective on small projections.



TYPES OF PULL HOLDS

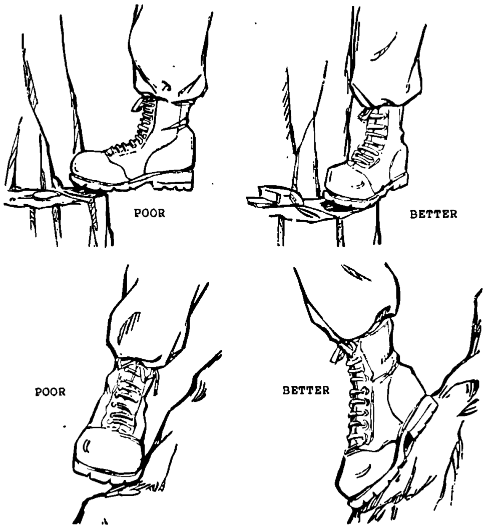
c. Foot Holds

(1) Feet should be positioned with the inside of the foot to the rock.

(2) Use full sole contact as much as possible.

(3) Avoid crossing your feet. If you must cross your feet use a change step. A change step is a method of substituting one foot for the other foot on the same foothold.

(4) Making maximum use of footholds, climbing with your feet, is an effective means of conserving your body strength, since your leg muscles are stronger than your arm muscles.

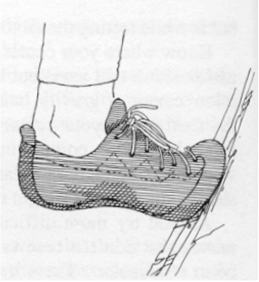


USE OF FOOT HOLDS

d. Friction Holds. A friction hold is anytime you are relying on the friction of your foot or hand against the face of the rock for traction, rather than pushing/pulling against a projection on the face of the rock.

(1) It is a type of hold that feels very insecure to an inexperienced climber.

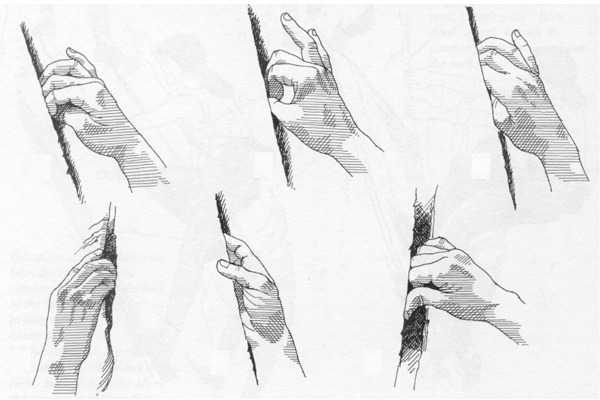
(2) The effectiveness of this type of hold is dependent upon many things i.e., type, condition and angle of the rock face, type of boot soles, confidence, etc.



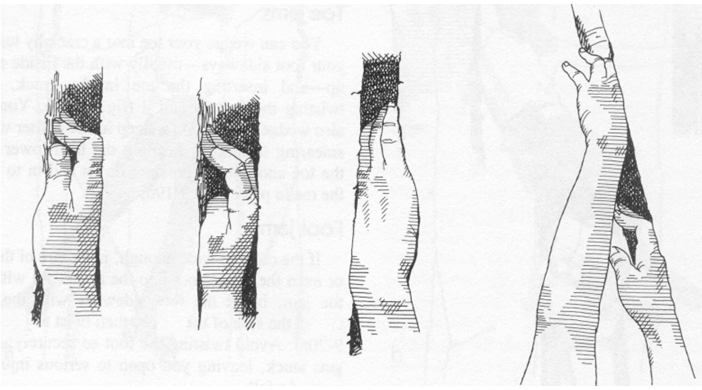
FRICTION USED IN SMEARING

e. Jam Holds. This type of hold involves jamming/wedging any part of your body or your entire body into a crack/opening in the rock.

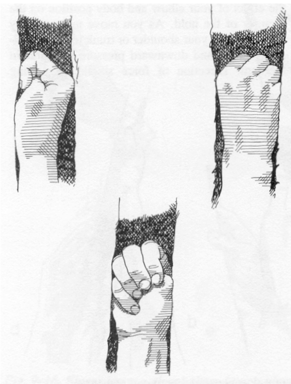
(1) An important consideration is that you do not jam such that you cannot free that portion of your body after you complete the move. This sounds like a ridiculous statement; however, you must remember that after you complete your move, you may be withdrawing the portion of your body that you used from a different angle than you inserted it.



FINGER JAMS



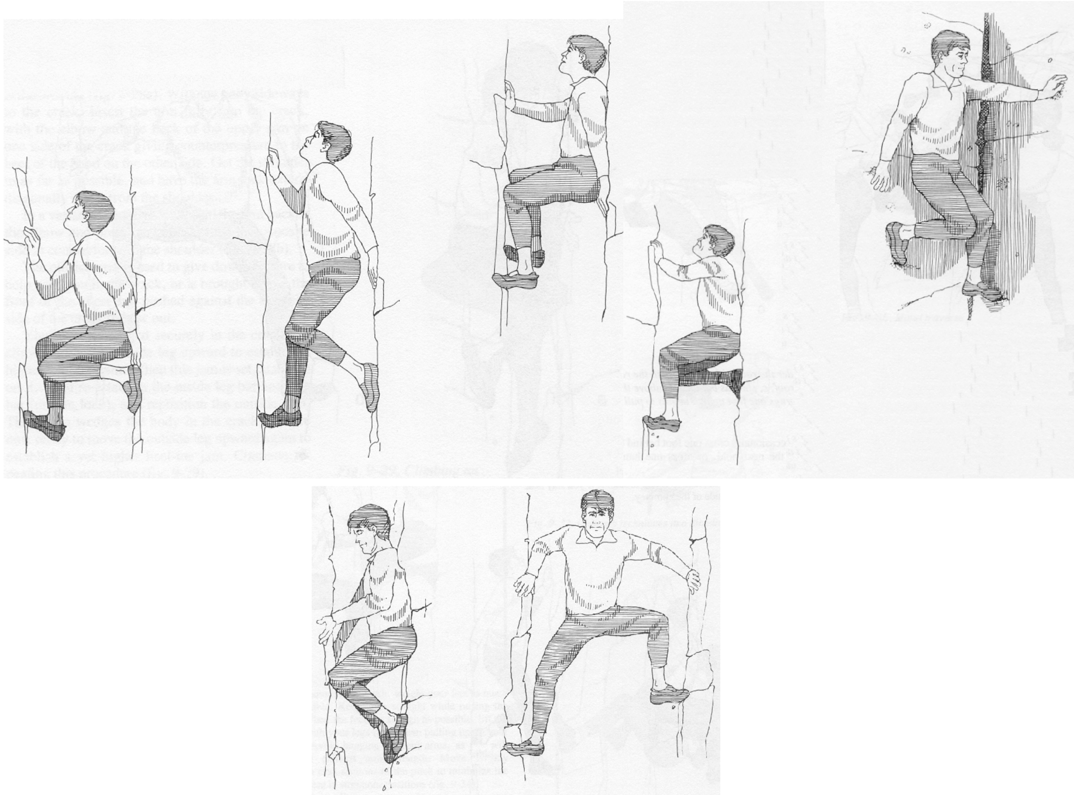
HAND JAMS



FIST JAMS

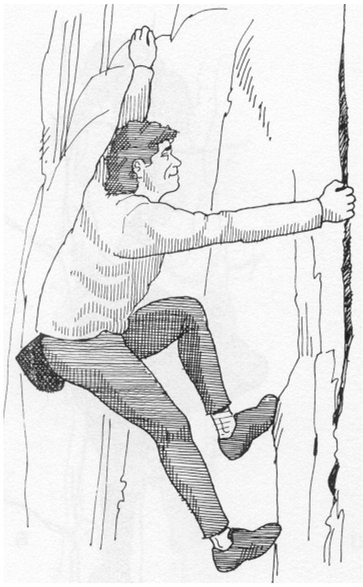
7.) **COMBINATION HOLDS.** The five types of holds just mentioned above are not just used individually. They are most often used in combinations with each other. Some examples are:

   a. Chimney Climbing. This is when you insert your entire body into a crack in the rock and by using both sides of the opening, and possibly all five types of basic holds, move up' the crack.



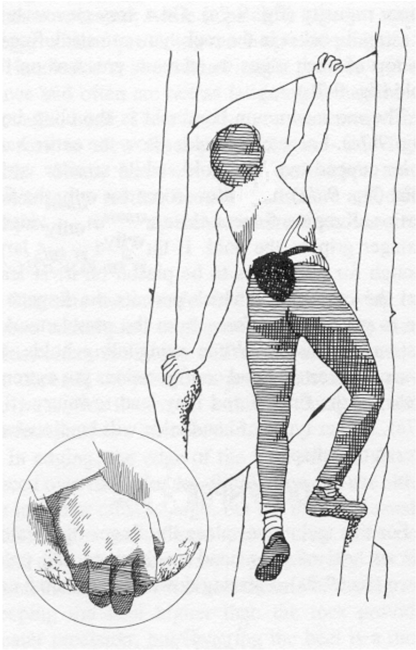
CHIMNEY CLIMBING TECHNIQUES

   b. Lie-back. This is a combination of both pull holds with your hands and friction holds with your feet.



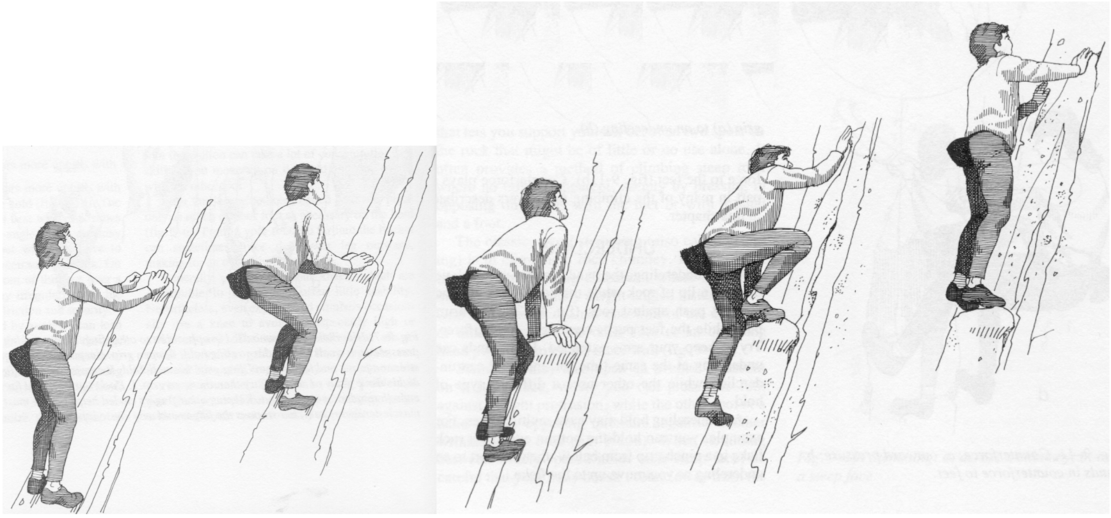
LIE BACK TECHNIQUE

c. Push-Pull. As the name implies, this is when you use a push hold and a pull hold together.

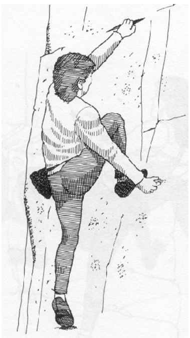


PUSH-PULL

d. Mantling. This is a technique where you continue to climb without moving your hands off a projection by pulling yourself up until your hands are at chest level and then invert your hands and push on the same projection.

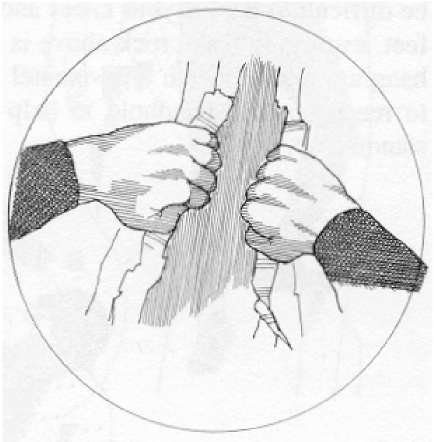


MANTELING



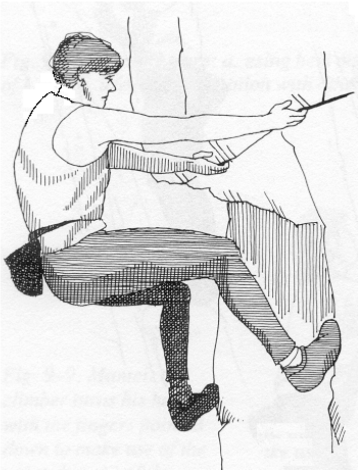
MANTELING WITH FACE HOLD

e. Cross-Pressure in Cracks. This is a technique of putting both hands in the same crack and pulling your hands apart to hold/raise yourself.



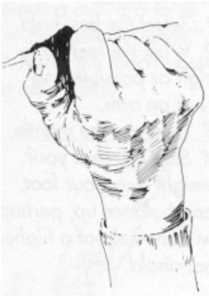
CROSS-PRESSURE METHOD

f. Inverted. Pull or push.



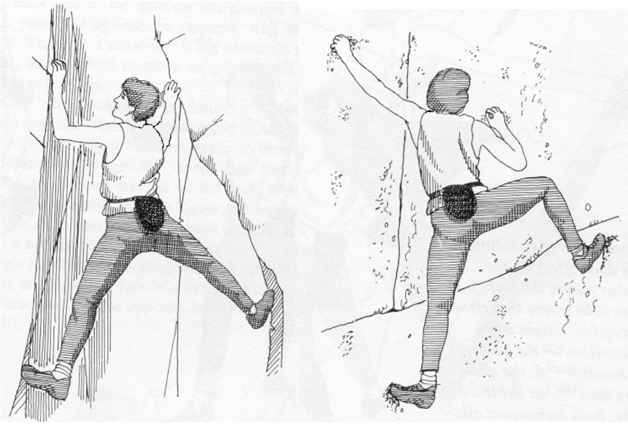
INVERTED TECHNIQUE USING COUNTERFORCE PRESSURE BETWEEN FEET AND HANDS

g. Pinch. As the name implies this is a grip used on tiny little nubbins.



PINCH

h. Stemming. The spreading of arms or legs to maintain a proper body position. (i.e. usually used in a book or chimney.)



STEMMING

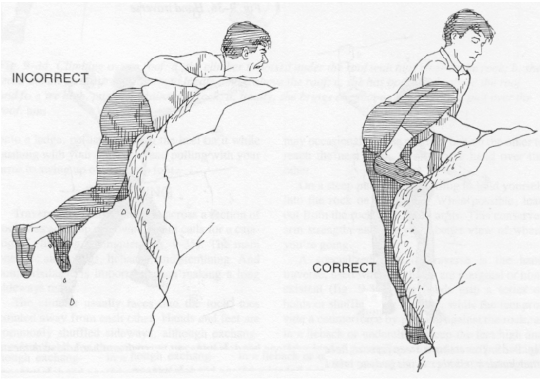
8. **GENERAL USE OF HOLDS**. How you use an individual hold is dependent on your experience level, or sometimes, your imagination. Here are some general guidelines.

   a. Most handholds can be used as foot holds as you move up the rock.

   b. Use all holds possible in order to conserve energy.

   c. Even small projections may be used as holds.

   d. Do not make use of your knees or elbows due to the reason that it is skin on bone and a slip could occur if pressure is exerted on them. Knees and elbows can be used with the extension of a limb jam.

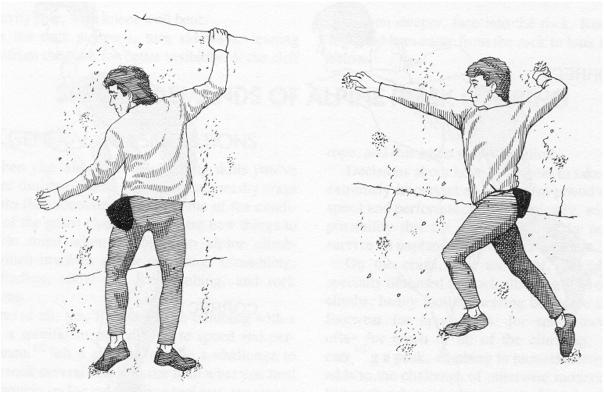


PROPER AND IMPROPER

9. **MOVEMENT ON SLAB**. Movement on slab is based on friction holds.

   a. Use any and all irregularities in the slope to gain additional friction.

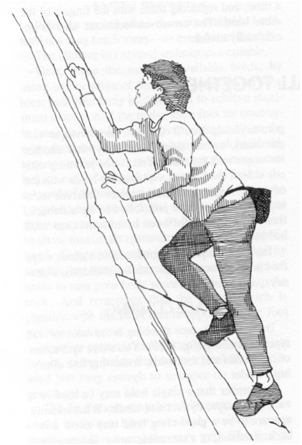
   b. Traversing requires both hands and feet.



TRAVERSING

   c. Descending steep slab may require turning inboard to face the slab and backing down.

   d. The biggest mistake in slab climbing is leaning into the rock. Maintain maximum friction by keeping weight centered.



SLAB CLIMBING

10. BODY POSITION

a. The climber should climb with his body in balance by keeping his weight centered over and between his feet. Don't hug the rock. Don't over extend and become "spread-eagled". While climbing, keep in mind the acronym "CASHWORTH" for proper body position and movement. (WMC.C3F)

C - Conserve energy.

A - Always test holds.

S - Stand upright, on flexed joints.

H - Hands kept low; handholds should be waist to shoulder high.

W - Watch your feet.

O - On three points of contact.

R - Rhythmic movement.

T - Think ahead.

H - Heels kept low, lower than the toes.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

WMC.C4
04/11/02

STUDENT OUTLINE

NATURAL AND ARTIFICIAL ANCHORS

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVE In a summer mountainous environment, establish an anchor system in accordance with the references. (WMC.C4)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES.

(1) Without the aid of references and from a given list, choose the two types of anchors, in accordance with the references. (WMC.C4a)

(2) In a summer mountainous environment, establish a natural anchor point, in accordance with the references. (WMC.C4b)

OUTLINE

1. **TYPES OF ANCHORS.** (WMC.C4a)There are two types of anchors that we use. These two types are:

1) NATURAL
2) ARTIFICIAL

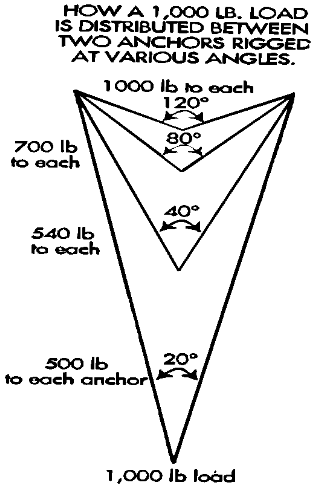
2. **GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS FOR ANCHORS**. Anytime you employ natural or artificial anchors; there are special considerations that you must apply. These considerations apply both to the anchor itself and to the material being used to build the anchor. Some examples of these considerations are:

   a. Whether using natural or artificial anchors, the installing unit must insure that the anchor is suitable for the load.

   b. The anchor position must be relative to the direction of pull on the anchor.

   c. The angle between the anchor points should not exceed 90 degrees. This is to ensure that no added stress is put upon the anchors, as well as the equipment being used to construct the anchor.

      (1) To decrease the angle between anchor points, materials (i.e. sling ropes, web runners, Prusik cord, etc..) could be used to extend the anchor which will decrease the angle between anchor points.


HOW A 1,000 LB. LOAD IS DISTRIBUTED BETWEEN TWO ANCHORS RIGGED AT VARIOUS ANGLES.
1000 lb to each
120°
80°
700 lb to each
40°
540 lb to each
500 lb to each anchor
20°
1,000 lb load

3. **NATURAL ANCHORS.** A natural feature is the preferred type of anchor point. Some examples and considerations are as followed:

   a. Types of natural anchors.

      (1) Trees.

(a) Select a tree that has not been chopped, burned or is rotten.

(b) The tree should be at least 6” in diameter and strong enough to support the intended load.

(c) Trees growing on rocky terrain should be treated with suspicion, since the roots normally are shallow and spread out along a relatively flat surface.

(2) Shrubs and Bushes.

(a) Select a shrub or bush that is alive and is not brittle, charred or loose.

(b) To avoid leverage, locate the central root and construct the anchor as near to the base as possible.

(3) Rocks and Boulders.

(a) Stability is of prime importance when considering a rock or boulder for an anchor. It must be strong enough and secure enough for the intended load.

(b) All surfaces of the rock or boulder should be inspected for any rough or sharp points. These areas must be padded to protect the rope from being abraded or cut.

(4) Spikes and Flakes.

(a) To check stability of a spike or flake, thump it with the heel of your hand. Anything that sounds hallow is suspicious.

(b) They should be checked for cracks or other signs of weathering that may impair their firmness.

(c) Sharp edges must be padded to protect the rope against cuts and abrasion.

(5) Threads and Chockstones.

(a) A thread is when the rock weathers or cracks to form a hole in the main wall. A chockstone is a rock wedged in a crack.

(b) Check a thread by thumping it with the heel of your hand. Make a visual inspection for cracks and weather. Common sense will prevail for choosing this type of anchor.

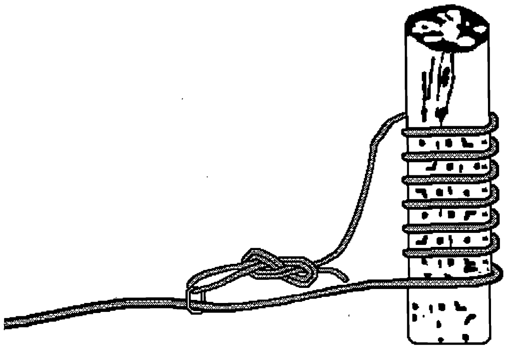
(c) When choosing a chockstone, ensure that it has substantial contact with the crack and that the stone's symmetry corresponds with the intended direction of pull.

b. Types of Natural High Tension Anchors. The following are types of Natural High Tension Anchor Systems used to construct installations. These can be tied on any suitable natural anchor point:

(1) Tree Wrap Anchor. The tree wrap is an anchor used to relieve tension on the actual knot itself. This system requires more rope when tied around a large anchor point.

(a) Tie a Figure 8 Loop on the standing end of the rope and wrap the 4-6 times around an anchor point.

(b) Attach a locking carabiner through the knot's loop and clip it onto the running end of the rope.



NOTE: If the anchor point to be wrapped is larger then 18' around, then three wraps will suffice.

(2) Swami Wrap Anchor. When tying the Swami Wrap, ensure that the joining knot is kept on the side of the anchor point. The Swami Wrap can be loosened under load if need be. This system can be substituted for a tree wrap when the installation's rope length is an issue.

(a) Select a suitable anchor point and tie a Swami Wrap around it.

(b) Clip a locking carabiner into as many wraps as possible. This will serve as the attachment point for the anchor system.

(3) Figure of 8 Anchor. The Figure of 8 Anchor is a quick and efficient system. This system cannot be loosened under load. It is tied in the following manner:

(a) Tie a Figure of 8 Loop on the standing end of the rope and wrap the knot around a suitable anchor point. Attach a locking carabiner through the knot's loop and clip it onto the running end of the rope.

(b) Before tensioning the anchor system, adjust the rope so the running end of the rope runs smoothly through the carabiner towards the direction of pull. This will prevent any lateral tension.

(b) If two ropes are used, the upper rope's carabiner has its gate upwards, and the lower rope's carabiner has it's gate downward.

c. Primary and Secondary Natural Anchor Point System. The two anchor points should be in line with the direction of pull. The primary anchor is the point nearest the running end while the secondary anchor point is directly behind the primary. It is constructed in the following manner:

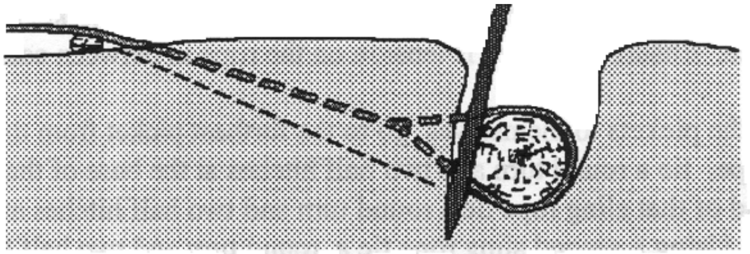
(1) The primary anchor knot should be an around the object clove hitch. This is chosen for ease of untying the system after tension has been placed on the rope.

(2) The secondary knot is tied around a suitable anchor point ensuring that the rope is taut between the two anchor points.

4. **ARTIFICIAL ANCHOR SYSTEMS**. Any time we use anything other then a natural feature, we are using an artificial anchor point. Artificial anchors can be constructed in the ground, or on the rock itself. The following are artificial anchor systems:

a. Single Timber Deadman. This system is constructed in the ground and it requires considerable time and effort. The steps of it's construction are as follows:

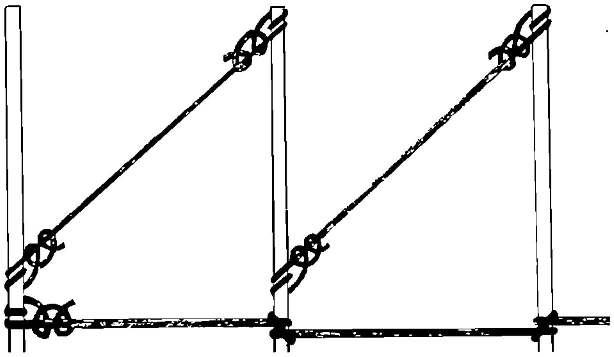
(1) Dig a trench 6 feet long and 3 feet deep and wide enough to work in at a 90 degree angle to the direction of the pull.



(2) Dig another trench about 12 inches wide. This trench is dug so that it intersects the main trench at a right angle in the middle. The bottom of this trench should be parallel to the direction of pull and should join the bottom of the main trench.

(3) Take an anchoring device (i.e. log, engineer stakes, bundled up branches etc.) that is strong enough to support the intended load. The anchor is placed into the main trench and covered with dirt with the exception of that part of the anchor that joins the second trench. Stakes approximately 3 feet long should be driven approximately 1-1/2 feet into the ground between the dead-man and the slanted side of the trench to assist in holding the dead-man in place if the soil is soft.

b. Picket Hold Fast. The picket hold fast is an easier anchor to construct than the Deadman, and can be used almost anywhere. The strength of the picket system depends on the pickets and the soil or snow conditions. The picket system can be used for both high and non-tension systems. Construction is as follows:



(1) Three stakes (i.e. logs, engineer stakes, etc.) are driven into the ground at a 30 degree angle against the direction of pull.

(2) The line of pickets should be driven in line with the direction of pull. The distance between the pickets can be anywhere from 3-12 feet apart depending on the terrain and soil conditions.

(3) Before tying any rope to the picket anchors, the base of the pickets must be buffed or padded.

(4) To tie a rope to the pickets, go to the furthest picket away from the cliff edge. Tie a round turn and two half hitches at the base of the picket. Take the running end of the rope and tie an over the object clove hitch to the base of the middle picket. Then with the running end of the rope tie an over the object clove hitch to the picket closest to the edge of the cliff face. Ensure that there is tension on the rope in between each picket.

(5) To tie off the pickets to themselves, go to the furthest picket from the cliff edge. And with a sling rope, tie a round turn and two half hitches at the base of that picket. With the running end of that sling rope tie a round turn and two half hitches at the top of the middle picket. Using a second sling rope tie a round turn and two half hitches to the base of the middle picket. Then with the running end of that sling rope tie a round turn and two half hitches to the top of the picket closest to the cliff edge.

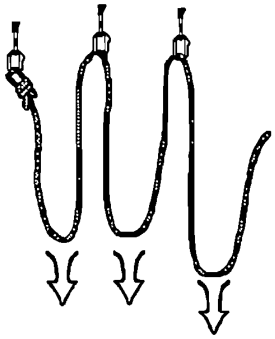
c. Equalized Anchor. This system is built with a minimum of three pieces of protection. It can be tied with the standing end of a rope or by utilizing a practice coil.

(1) Construction with the Standing End of the Rope:

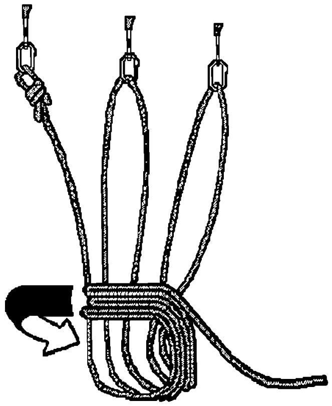
  (a) Tie a Figure of 8 Loop in the standing end of the rope.

  (b) Place a carabiner in each artificial anchor point and attach the knot in either of the outside carabiners.

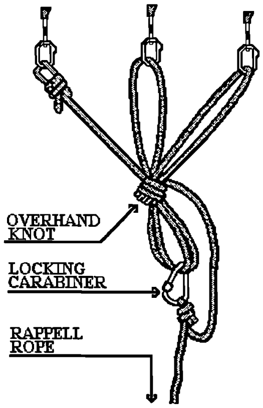
  (c) Clip the rope into the remaining carabiners.



(d) A bight of rope is then pulled down after each carabiner into the anticipated direction of pull. With all three bights, tie an overhand knot around itself to include the running end of the rope.



(e) With the running end of the rope coming from the overhand knot, tie a Figure of 8 Loop and attach it to the overhand knot's loop with a locking carabiner.



(f) Ensure that there is sufficient slack in the dead rope to prevent disfiguring the knot thus ruining the structural integrity of the knot.

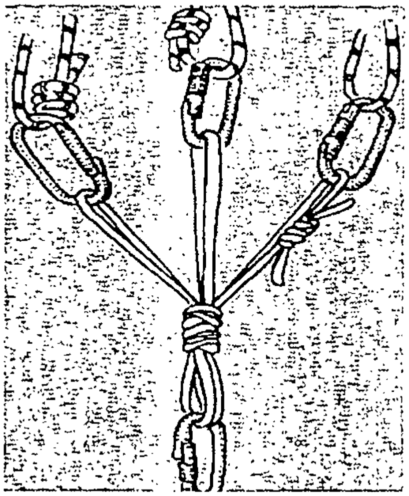
(2) Construction with the Cordalette Method:

(a) Create an endless loop with a practice coil and clip it into each of the artificial anchor points.

(b) A bight of rope is then pulled down between each carabiner into the intended direction of pull.

(c) With all three bights, tie an overhand knot on itself.

(d) Place a locking carabiner into the overhand knot's loop. This will serve as the attachment point for the anchor system.



NOTE: If constructing a two-rope high-tension installation, a minimum of three artificial anchors per rope will be used.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

SML
ACC
02/11/02

LESSON PLAN

SIT HARNESS

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVE: Without the aid of references, properly wear and maintain the MWTC sit harness, in accordance with the references.

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES

(1) Without the aid of references and given a diagram, name in writing the parts of a sit harness, in accordance with the references.

(2) Without the aid of references, wear a sit harness, in accordance with the references.

BODY

1. (5 Min) **NOMENCLATURE**

   a. Waist belt.

   b. Leg loops (adjustable).

   c. Buttocks straps (adjustable).

   d. Fastex buckle - 2.

   e. Doughnut.

   f. Equipment loops.

   g. D-ring (older models).

   h. Waist belt tie-in point.

   i. Crotch strap.

WEARING OF THE SIT

C5

HARNESS

a. First, disconnect the fastex buckle at the rear of the harness.

b. Hold the harness in front of you, put your feet through the leg loops ensuring that the buckles on the leg loops are outboard, on your thighs.

c. Fasten the waist belt into the buckle, ensuring that it is a tight but comfortable fit. **You must ensure that the waist belt is threaded back through the buckle, this action locks the waist belt to the buckle. Failure to do this will cause the waist belt to slip through the buckle when it is under load.**

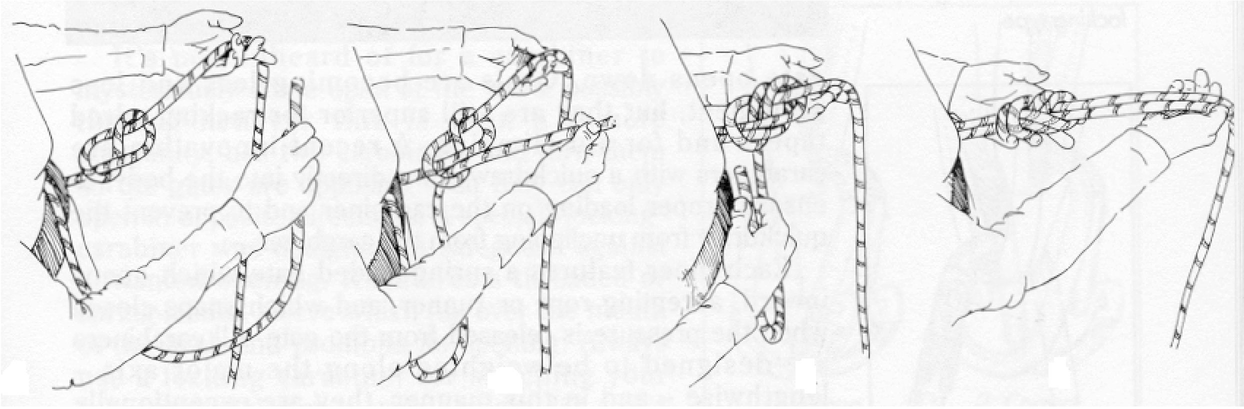
d. Adjust the leg loops so that they are high on your thigh, once you have them adjusted, get your buddy to clip the fastex buckle male to the most comfortable female fastex. Then adjust the buttock straps so as the leg loops are held up.

e. If all the above are done correctly, the harness should now be a comfortable but snug fit, after you have fitted it for the first time there is no need to go through the same procedure each time you put it on. Simply hold the harness in front of you, step into it and attach the waist belt to the buckle in the approved manner.

2. TYING IN THE ROPE (END OF ROPE)

a. Pass the end of the climbing rope up through the crotch strap, then through the doughnut and through the waist belt tie-in point.

b. Tie the rope using a retraceable figure eight, adjusting the knot to get it as close as possible to the body.



RETRACE FIGURE 8 IN SIT HARNESS

3. TYING IN THE ROPE (MIDDLE OF THE ROPE)

a. Take up a bight of rope and tie a figure eight loop, then take a steel locking carabiner and attach the carabiner to the harness by securing the crotch strap, doughnut, and the waist belt tie-in loop. Now attach the figure eight loop to the carabiner.

4. (5 Min) **CARE AND MAINTENANCE**

a. Avoid contact with chemicals, as this will damage the nylon.

b. Regularly inspect for signs of abrasions and normal wear. Pay particular attention to wear points such as the tie-in loops, buckles, and sewn joints.

c. Keep away from heat such as open flames, cigarettes, etc.

d. If soiled by grit and seawater, wash in lukewarm water with pure soap and allow to dry in a warm room away from direct heat.

e. Two to three years of life can be expected during normal climbing use.

f. It is recommended that a harness that has experienced a serious fall should be discarded.

g. Under no circumstances will you ever tie into the equipment rack of any sit harness as a belay, anchor point, etc.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

FMST.07.33
05/02/01

STUDENT OUTLINE

ESTABLISHMENT OF RAPPEL POINTS AND RAPPELLING

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVE Given a mountainous environment, mountaineering equipment, helmet, sit harness, rappel gloves, 165 ft static rope, rescue 8, prusic cord, and one or more assistants, conduct rappelling operations to support mission requirements per the reference. (FMST.07.33)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES.

(1) Without the aid of references, select from a given list the three criteria involved in site selection for a rappel site, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.33a)

(2) In a summer mountainous environment, execute the commands used between a rappeller and his belay man when conducting a rappel, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.33b)

(3) Without the aid of references, select from a given list three of the nine duties of the rappel point NCOIC, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.33c)

(4) Without the aid of references, select from a given list three of the six duties of the first man down a rappel rope, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.33d)

(5) Without the aid of references, select from a given list the three types of rappels, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.33e)

(6) In a summer mountainous environment, rappel down a cliff face using a seat-hip rappel, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.33g)

C6

OUTLINE

1. **INHERENT DANGER OF RAPPELLING**. Rappelling is inherently dangerous because rappellers rely totally on the equipment.

   a. To ensure a safe training evolution, two ropes will be utilized at MWTC.

   b. All the rappels taught at MWTC can be completed with a single rope if the situation arises.

   c. If utilizing a one-rope system with the carabiner wrap, the rope will be attached to the carabiner with two wraps vice one.

2. **SITE SELECTION**. (FMST.07.33a) when selecting a rappel site consider these three factors.

   a. There must be a good anchor. As previously taught in *NATURAL* and *ARTIFICIAL ANCHORS*, natural anchors are preferred.

   b. The rappel route down should be as free of obstacles (i.e., vegetation, debris) as possible.

   c. There must be suitable loading and unloading platforms.

NOTE*:* The evaluation of a site for the above factors should be made by the rappel point NCOIC, who should be the most experienced rappeller in the unit.

3. **DUTIES OF THE RAPPEL POINT NCOIC**. (FMST.07.33c)Once a rappelling site has been selected, one person will be appointed to each rappel lane as a rappel point NCOIC. These individuals should have experience as rappellers. The rappel point NCOIC has ten duties and responsibilities, which are:

   a. Ensures that the anchor points are sound and that the knots are properly tied.

   b. Ensures that loose rock and debris is cleared from the loading platform.

   c. Allows only one man on the loading platform at a time and ensures that the rappel point is run in an orderly manner.

   d. Ensures that each man is properly prepared for the particular rappel; i.e. gloves on, sleeves down, helmet secured, rappel seat tied correctly and secured properly.

   e. Attaches the rappeller to the rope and ensures the rappeller knows the proper braking position for that particular rappel.

   f. Ensures that the proper commands or signals are used.

   g. Dispatches each man down the rope.

h. The rappel point NCOIC will be the last man down the rope.

i. The rappel point NCOIC will ensure that the ropes are inspected after every 50 rappels.

j. The rappel point NCOIC will maintain a rope log.

4. **TYPES/USE**. (FMST.07.33e) The three types of rappels and when they are preferred to be used are:

a. Hasty Rappel: It is used when carrying loads down moderate slopes.

b. Seat-Shoulder Rappel: It is used for heavily laden troops over vertical to near vertical cliff faces.

c. Seat-Hip Rappel: It is used when carrying loads over vertical to near vertical faces.

5. **HASTY RAPPEL**. The hasty rappel is the easiest type of rappel to prepare for. It requires no equipment other than a rope and gloves.

a. Conduct. A hasty rappel is conducted in the following manner:

(1) Sleeves will be rolled down and gloves will be put on.

(2) Face slightly sideways.

(3) Place the rappel rope across your back, grasping it with both hands, palms forward, and arms extended.

(4) The hand nearest the anchor is the guide hand. The hand farthest from the anchor is the brake hand.

(5) Lean out at a moderate angle to the slope.

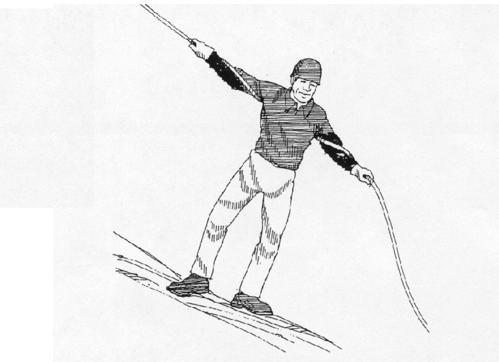
(6) Descend down the hill facing half-sideways, taking small steps and continually looking downhill while leading with the brake hand.

(7) Feet should not cross and the downhill foot should lead at all times.

b. Braking. The steps for braking during a hasty rappel are as follows:

(1) Bring the lower (brake) hand across the front of the chest to brake.

(2) At the same time, turn to face up toward the anchor point.



HASTY RAPPEL

6. **SEAT-SHOULDER RAPPEL**. The seat-shoulder rappel relies on friction as the main effort of controlling the descent. It is very efficient for men with heavy packs because it provides support for heavy loads on the back.

   a. Conduct. A seat-shoulder rappel is conducted in the following manner:

      (1) Put on your rappel-seat, roll down your sleeves and put on your gloves.

NOTE*:* To avoid causing a possible injury, it is advised that the rappel seat be constructed at the rear of the rappel site loading platform. If the rappel seat is worn for too long, the rappel seat could loosen up enough to cause you to slip out of your seat while rappelling.

      (2) The steel locking carabiner is placed on the rappel-seat so that the gate opens down and away, to prevent the gate from opening once the wraps are placed into the carabiner.

      (3) Step-up to the rope with you're left shoulder facing the anchor.

      (4) The rappel rope is attached to the rappeller's hard point carabiner as follows:

         (a) Snap the rope into the locking carabiner.

         (b) Taking slack from the standing (anchor) end of the rope, make one wrap with the rope around the body of the carabiner and back through the gate.

         (c) Ensure that the locking nut of the carabiner is fastened to lock the carabiner closed.

NOTE*:* If you are using only one rope to rappel with due to the tactical situation or equipment availability, the procedures are the same, EXCEPT the individual will make two wraps around the body of the carabiner instead of one.

      (5) Take the rope across your chest, over your left shoulder, diagonally across your pack and down to the right (brake) hand.

(6) Descend by walking down the cliff using the braking procedure to control the rate of descent. Look under your brake arm for possible obstacles to avoid.

b. Braking. The steps for braking during a seat-shoulder rappel are as follows:

(1) Lean back.

(2) Face directly uphill while bringing the brake hand across the chest.

7. **SEAT-HIP RAPPEL**. The seat-hip rappel is the most commonly used rappel.

a. Conduct. A seat-hip rappel is conducted in the following manner:

(1) Construct the rappel seat; roll down sleeves and put gloves on.

(2) The steel locking carabiner is placed on the rappel-seat so that the gate opens up and away.

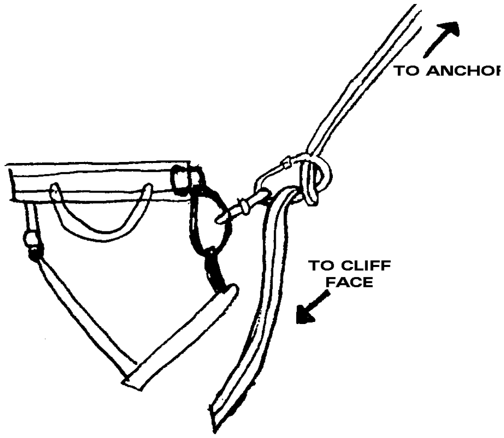
(3) Step up to the rope with your left shoulder facing the anchor.

(4) The rappel rope is snapped into the carabiner as follows:

(a) Snap the rope into the locking carabiner.

(b) Taking slack from the standing (anchor) end of the rope, make one wrap with the rope around the body of the carabiner and through the gate again.

(c) Ensure that the locking nut of the carabiner is fastened to lock the carabiner closed.



SEAT-HIP RAPPEL

NOTE: If you are using only one rope to rappel with due to the tactical situation or equipment availability, the procedures are the same, EXCEPT the individual will make two wraps around the body of the carabiner instead of one.

(5) The rappeller will grasp the running end of the rope with the brake (right) hand, palm down and turned slightly inboard, near the hip.

b. Braking. The steps in braking for a seat-hip rappel are as follows:

(1) Grasp the rope tightly with the brake hand.

(2) Take the brake hand and place it in the small of the back. This will create enough friction to stop all momentum.

NOTE*:* At no time will you bound or jump while you are descending. You "walk down" the cliff face using the proper braking procedure to control your rate of descent.

8. **SAFETY OF THE FIRST MAN DOWN**. To ensure the safety of the first man down, the rappeller will:

a. Before deploying the ropes, tie the two ends of the ropes together with an overhand knot.

b. Tie a friction knot on the standing end of the rappel rope with a Prusik cord.

c. Attach the rappel ropes to the harness's hard point with a locking carabiner.

d. Attach the Prusik cord to the harness's hard point with a locking carabiner. This cord is also referred to as a safety Prusik.

NOTE*:* If the Safety Prusik is too short, it can be extended with a web runner.

9. **DUTIES OF THE FIRST MAN DOWN**. (FMST.07.33d) The first man down the rope has specific duties. They are as follows:

   a. Selects a smooth route down for the ropes.

   b. Clears the route of loose rocks and debris.

   c. The first man down will untie the overhand knot and straighten the ropes out once he reaches the bottom.

   d. The first man down belays the next man down the rope.

      (1) To belay correctly, the belay man will stand facing the cliff face, arms up with palms facing upward and over lapping. The rope will pass through the opening of the over lapping hand's thumb and index fingers.

      (2) To stop a fallen rappeller, the belay man will grab the rope with closed fists and pull straight down bringing the forearms parallel to the deck.

   e. Take charge of personnel as they arrive at the bottom to include appointing a belay man.

10. **RAPPELLING COMMANDS.** (FMST.07.33b) In order to conduct rappelling operations safely, it is essential that everyone understands the sequence of events. The following voice commands or rope tugs will be utilized:

VOICE COMMANDS	GIVEN BY	MEANING
"Lane # on Rappel"	Rappeller	I am ready to begin rappelling
"Lane # on Belay"	Belayer	I am on belay and you may begin to rappel
"Lane # off Rappel"	Rappeller	I have completed the rappel and am off the rope
"Lane # off Belay"	Belayer	I have completed the belaying of the rappeller

ROPE TUGS	GIVEN BY	MEANING
Three Tugs	Rappel Point NCOIC	The rappeller is ready to begin rappelling
Three Tugs	Belayer	I am on belay and the rappeller may begin to rappel
Three Tugs	Belayer	The rappeller is off the rappel rope

11. **TYING-OFF**. Occasionally, it may be necessary to stop during a rappel before reaching the bottom of a cliff. The following sequence is used:

a. The commands used in tying-off are as listed below:

COMMAND	GIVEN BY	MEANING
“Lane # Tying-off”	Rappeller	I am ready to tie-off, give me some slack.
“Lane # Tying-off”	Belayer	I have given you enough slack and you may tie-off.
“Lane # On rappel”	Rappeller	I have completed tying-off and I am ready to resume rappelling.
“Lane # On rappel”	Belayer	I am on belay, you may rappel.

b. The procedure used when tying-off is as follows:

(1) The rappeller gives the command, "Lane #, tying-off."

(2) The Belayer gives the rappeller slack and gives the command "Lane # Tying-off'. He continues to hold the rope in the belay position, remaining alert and watching the rappeller.

(3) The rappeller quickly brings his brake hand to the twelve o'clock position, so that the running end and standing end are parallel.

(4) The rappeller grasps all ropes with his guide hand as close to the carabiner as possible.

(5) The rappeller steps over the rope so that the running end is going between his legs.

(6) The rappeller releases the rope with his brake hand then reaches under the running end, over the standing end. He then takes up a bight from the running end about two feet long and pulls it over the standing end and under the running end, forming a half hitch.

(7) He pulls the half hitch tightly against the guide hand.

(8) He works the half hitch down snugly against the carabiner while maintaining contact with the guide hand as long as possible.

NOTE*:* A loose half hitch could bind into the carabiner causing difficulties in clearing the knot out. Make sure that the first half hitch is dressed down tightly before moving it against the carabiner.

(9) Place another half hitch above the one already tied.

(10) To untie, reverse the steps. Remove the safety half hitch, then shrink the first half hitch down to a small loop by grabbing the running end of both ropes and pulling them straight out to the left. Place your right hand in the middle of the two bights until they are snug on all four fingers. Then remove one finger and make the bights snug on three fingers. Repeat this process until it's down to one finger and both the bights are equal.

(11) Now, grasp the running end with both hands and smartly jerk the running end of the ropes upward to pop the small loop out from the first half hitch. From this position, keep the guide hand around both of the ropes next to the carabiner; step back over the rope so that the running end is to your right side. Grab just the running end with your brake hand and quickly set the brake behind the small of your back then, readjust you guide hand onto the standing end. You now should be in the seat-hip rappel position.

NOTE*:* The wraps may bind up some after untying, where no further movement down is possible. To alleviate this, keep the brake on and force your body weight down to pop the wraps in the carabiner back to their intended position and then continue on with the rappel.

(12) The rappeller gives the command "Lane #, on rappel."

(13) The Belayer takes up the slack and gives the command "Lane #, on belay."

(14) The rappeller resumes to rappel down.

12. **RESCUE TECHNIQUES**. When conducting rappelling operations, the possibility of a rappeller getting caught on the rope due to either his clothing or equipment can occur. There are two types of rescues that can be performed to free the rappeller from this situation.

a. The Self-Rescue Technique.

(1) After realizing that you are caught up on the rope, check with your belay man to ensure that he has a solid brake set.

(2) Using a safety Prusik, tie a friction knot onto the rappel rope approximately an arms length above the area that is fouled. Anchor the other end of your safety Prusik to your rappel seats hard point. This is the same technique used as discussed earlier with the first man down the rope.

(3) Work the friction knot up until there is no tension on the rappel device. This will give you the necessary slack to free the malfunction.

(4) Once you have corrected the problem, continue to rappel down using the first man down method.

b. The Buddy Rescue Technique. Himself uses this method when the rappeller is unable to correct the problem.

(1) A rescuer will rappel down on another rope to the disabled rappeller and tie-off.

(2) The rescuer will then establish a safety Prusik onto the victim as taught in the self-rescue technique.

(3) After clearing the malfunction, continue with rappelling operations.

c. Rappelling Casualty Rescue. There are three different methods in which to get an injured rappeller to the bottom.

(1) The first method is to allow the belay man to lower the casualty by slowly releasing the tension on the rappel rope.

(2) The second method is used for critical injuries or when the belay man cannot properly control the casualty's descent.

(a) The rescuer will rappel down using another rope. Once the rescuer gets to the casualty, the rescuer will have his belay man brake him off, enabling the rescuer to use both hands.

(b) If necessary, the rescuer will perform the basic first aid needed. Once the casualty is ready to be lowered, the rescuer will call down to both of the belay men to simultaneously lower both men. The rescuer will hold onto the casualty the entire way down so that he doesn't bounce off the rock face.

(3) The third method is called a tandem rappel. Its used to rescue a casualty who has sustained an injury serious enough that he cannot operate the rappel device himself and requires the assistance of a second rappeller. This type of rescue can be conducted from the top of the cliff face or while on rappel, depending on where the injury occurred.

(a) If the injury occurs while on top of the cliff face, the following steps should be taken:

1. Take either a long sling rope or Prusik cord and tie a figure-eight knot offset so that one length of the cord is longer then the other.

2. Tie a figure-eight knot at each end.

3. Take a rappel device and attach it to the offset figure-eight loop with a carabiner and attach it to the rappel rope.

4. Next, attach the casualty's hard point to the short end of the sling rope/Prusik cord and the rescuer to the other end.

5. The rescuer will then utilize a safety Prusik in the same method as the first man down technique, except that the friction knot will be tied below the rappelling device and controlled with the brake hand.

6. The rescuer will then maneuver himself under the casualty to provide assistance and support.

7. At this point you are ready to rappel both rescuer and casualty at the same time.

NOTE*:* Your rappel device should be far enough in front of you so that the casualty will not be able to reach it.

(b) If the injury occurs during the rappel, the following steps are taken:

1. The rescuer will preset the same system on a separate rappel rope and rappel down to the casualty.
2. The rescuer will then take the short end of the sling rope and attach it to the casualty's hard point.
3. With a knife, the rescuer will cut the casualty's rappel rope away.
4. Rappel down to the bottom of the cliff face.

NOTE*:* THIS IS THE ONLY TIME THAT A KNIFE WILL BE USED DURING A RAPPEL. EXTREME CAUTION SHOULD BE USED. IT IS NOT TO BE DONE IN TRAINING, BUT ONLY DURING AN ACTUAL RESCUE AND AS A LAST RESORT.

13. **RETRIEVABLE RAPPELS**. Once a unit has rappelled down a vertical obstacle, it may be necessary to retrieve the rope(s). Depending on the height of the obstacle either one or two ropes will used to construct the rappel lane.

a. One-Rope Retrievable Rappel:

(1) Find the middle of the rope and place it directly behind a suitable anchor point.

(2) Join the pigtails of the rope with an overhand knot and deploy the rope down the obstacle.

(3) On one side of the rope in front of the anchor point, tie an over-the-object clove hitch onto a locking carabiner.

(4) On the other side of the rope, tie another over-the-object clove hitch and attach it to the same carabiner.

(5) The first man down will utilize a safety Prusik and untie the overhand knot after he reaches the bottom.

(6) All others conduct proper rappel procedures.

(7) The last man down will disconnect the carabiner from the rope, and ensuring that the middle of the rope is directly behind the anchor point, rappel down the rope.

(8) Pulling on either end of the rope then retrieves the rope.

b. Two-Rope Retrievable Rappel. This type of system is identical to the one rope retrievable rappel except for a few considerations.

(1) The reason for using two ropes vice one rope is that the height of the rappel is greater.

(2) When two ropes are used they should be joined together using a square knot. This knot will be placed directly behind the anchor point.

(3) All else remains the same as the one rope retrievable rappel except:

(a) The last man down will disconnect the carabiner from the rope and will move the joining knot as close to the vertical obstacle's edge as possible. This will prevent the knot from possibly getting caught up while retrieving.

(b) The last man down will then place a carabiner on the rope below the knot. This will enable him to know which line to pull for retrieval.

14. **EQUIPMENT**. Equipment should be worn in accordance with unit SOP. The unit has the responsibility to determine which methods it feels are most beneficial to the mission. Weapons should be worn across shoulder; muzzle down and away from the brake hand with a tight sling securely attached to the weapon. Weapons should also be dummy corded to the individuals.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport California, 93517-5001

WMC
04/11/02

STUDENT OUTLINE

TOP ROPING

LEARNING OBJECTIVES.

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVE. In a summer mountainous environment, and given a rock face and a belay man, conduct top roping with cartridge belt and rifle, in accordance with the references. (WMC)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVE

(1) In a summer mountainous environment, establish a belay point from the top of a cliff for use in a top rope climb, in accordance with the references. (WMC.a)

(2) In a summer mountainous environment, demonstrate the use of climbing commands while conducting a top rope, in accordance with the references. (WMC.b)

OUTLINE

1. ESTABLISHING A BELAY STANCE FROM THE TOP.

a. The Belayer will establish a sitting belay stance on the cliff head by:

(1) Constructing a suitable anchor with the standing end of the rope.

(2) With the direction of pull away from the anchor, tie a directional figure 8 loop near enough to the cliff's edge so that the climber can be observed, if possible.

(3) Tying a swami Wrap around oneself, clip a locking carabiner through all the rear wraps and clip a large locking carabiner through all the front wraps.

(4) Secure the rear locking carabiner into the directional figure of 8 loop.

(5) Secure the running end of the rope to the large locking carabiner utilizing a suitable friction belay (i.e., Munter hitch, stitch plate, etc.).

NOTE*:* Gloves **will not** be worn while belaying a climber during a top rope.

2. SECURING THE CLIMBER TO THE ROPE.

a. The climber will tie into the end of the top rope by:

(1) Constructing a Swami wrap around oneself.

(2) Tying a retrace figure 8 loop through all of the Swami's wraps or;

(3) A figure of 8 loop clipped into a locking carabiner secured through all the Swami's wraps.

b. Alternative methods.

(1) A bowline on a coil as discussed in ROPE MANAGEMENT or;

(2) Tie into the hard point of the harness as discussed in SIT HARNESS.

3. ESTABLISHING A BELAY STANCE FROM THE BOTTOM.

a. Belaying from the bottom is commonly referred to as a "yo-yo" or "Sling Shot" belay. This system can be constructed for either a direct or indirect belay.

(1) Construct a suitable top anchor utilizing either a pulley or one steel locking or two non-locking carabiners as the attachment point for the anchor.

(2) The rope will travel up from the bottom and pass through the attachment point then return to the bottom.

(3) The climber will be secured to one end of the rope and the Belayer from the other end.

4. CLIMBER'S RESPONSIBILITIES.

a. The climber ensures that the Belayer is anchored and on belay, by use of commands or prearranged signals prior to beginning the climb.

b. The climber will not out climb the belayer; this will cause slack in the rope between the belayer and the climber.

c. Avoid placing excess pressure/weight on belay man.

d. Weapons will be worn across shoulder, muzzle down and to the left, with a tight sling securely attached to the weapon.

5. **CLIMBING COMMANDS AND SIGNALS.** In order to conduct top rope operations safely, it is essential that everyone understands the sequence of events. The following voice commands or rope tugs will be utilized:

VOICE COMMANDS	GIVEN BY	MEANING
“Lane #, Up Rope”	Climber	Belayer needs to take in the slack.
“That’s Me”	Climber	Excess slack has been taken up between us.
“Lane #, On Belay”	Belayer	I am on belay.
“Lane #, On Climb”	Climber	I am ready to climb.
“Climb Climber”	Belayer	You may begin to climb.

ROPE TUGS	GIVEN BY	MEANING
Three Tugs	Climber	Belayer needs to take in the slack.
Three Tugs	Belayer	I have taken up the slack and you may begin to climb.
Three Tugs	Climber	Climbing.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

FMST.07.40
03/02/02

STUDENT OUTLINE

MOUNTAIN CASUALTY EVACUATIONS

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVES. In a summer mountainous environment and given a simulated/actual casualty, evacuate casualties, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.40)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES

(1) With the aid of references, state orally the general considerations for medevac procedures, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.40a)

(2) In a summer mountainous environment, and with the aid of references, construct an expedient litter, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.40b)

(3) In a summer mountainous environment, and with the aid of references, secure a simulated/actual casualty in a SKEDCO litter, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.40c)

(4) In a summer mountainous environment, and with the aid of references, attach a belay line to a SKEDCO litter for movement up/down moderate slopes, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.40d)

(5) In a summer mountainous environment, with the aid of references, and given a simulated/actual casualty, conduct a medevac using the barrow-boy method, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.40e)

C8

OUTLINE

1. **GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS** (FMST.07.40a) the general considerations are a set of guidelines that can be used no matter how serious the casualty is. They are remembered by a simple acronym, **APASSNGG.**

    a. **A**pply Essential First Aid. (i.e. splints, pressure bandage, etc.)

    b. **P**rotect the Patient from the Elements. Provide the casualty with proper insulation from the ground. Ensure that he is warm and dry. If there are any natural hazards (i.e. rock fall, lighting, etc.) either move the casualty as quickly as possible or ensure that he is well protected.

    c. **A**void Unnecessary Handling of Patient.

    d. **S**elect Easiest Route. Send scouts ahead if possible, to break trails.

    e. **S**et Up Relay Points and Warming Stations. If the route is long and arduous, set up relay points and warming stations with minimum amount of medical personnel at warming stations to:

        (1) Permit emergency treatment. Treat for shock, hemorrhage, or other conditions that may arise.

        (2) Reevaluate the patient constantly. If patient develops increased signs of shock or other symptoms during the evacuation, he may be retained at an emergency station until stable.

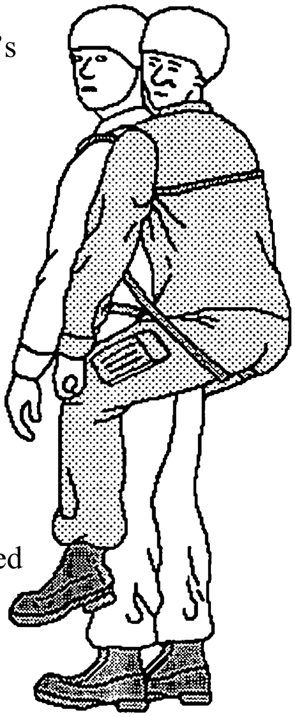
    f. **N**ormal Litter Teams Must Be Augmented in Arduous Terrain.

    g. **G**ive Litter Teams Specific Goals. This litter teams job is extremely tiring, both physically and mentally. The litter teams must be given realistic goals to work towards.

    h. **G**ear. Ensure all of the patient’s gear is kept with him throughout the evacuation.

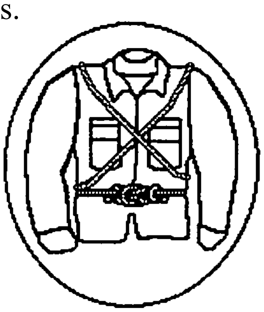
2. **ONE -MAN CARRIES**

    a. Sling Rope Carry. The sling rope carry requires two men and a 15-foot sling rope. One as the bearer, and an assistant to help in securing the casualty to the bearer. Conscious or unconscious casualties my be transported in this manner:



(1) Bearer kneels on all fours and the assistant places casualty face down on bearer's back ensuring the casualty's armpits are even with the bearer's shoulders.

(2) He then finds the middle of the sling rope and places it between the casualty's shoulders and the ends of the sling rope are run under the casualties armpits, crossed and over the bearer's shoulders and under his arms.



(3) Then the ropes are run between the casualty's legs, around his thighs, and tied with a square knot with two overhands just above the bearer's belt buckle.

(4) Ensure the rope is tight. Padding, when available, should be placed where the rope passes over the bearer's shoulders and under the casualties thighs.

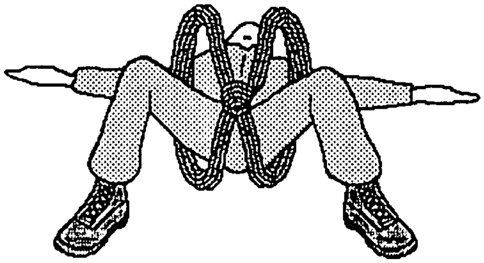
b. The rope coil carry. This requires a bearer and a rope coil. It can be used to carry a conscious or unconscious casualty.

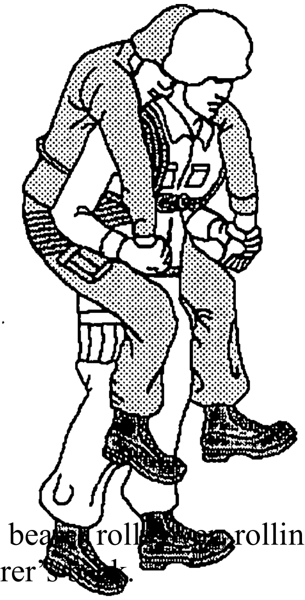
(1) Position the casualty on his back.

(2) Separate the loops of the mountain coil into two approximately equal groups.

(3) Slip ½ of the coil over the casualty's left leg and ½ over his right leg so that the wraps holding the coil are in the casualty's crotch, the loops extending upward the armpits.

(4) The bearer lies on his back between the casualty's leg and slips his arms the loops. He then moves forward until the coil is extended. When using the rope coil the bearer ties the coil to himself vice slipping his arms through the loops.





(5) Grasping the casualty’s right or left arm, the bearer rolls over, rolling to the casualty’s uninjured side, pulling casualty onto the bearer’s back.

(6) Holding the casualty’s wrists, the bearer carefully stands, using his legs to lift up and keeping his back as straight as possible.

NOTE*:* The length of the coils on the rope coil and the height of the bearer are to be considered. If the coils are too long and the bearer happens to be a shorter person, it will require the coils to be uncoiled and shortened. If this is not done, then the casualty will hang too low on the bearer’s back and make it a very cumbersome evacuation. A sling rope harness can be used around the victim’s back and the bearer’s chest, which will free the bearer’s hands.

3. TWO-MAN CARRY

a. Pole Carry. The pole carry method is a field expedient method and should be considered as a last resort only, when narrow ledges must be traversed; vegetation limits the bearers to a narrow trail. This method is difficult for the bearers and uncomfortable for the casualty. Two bearers, four sling ropes and a 12 foot pole - 3 inches in diameter, are required for this carry.

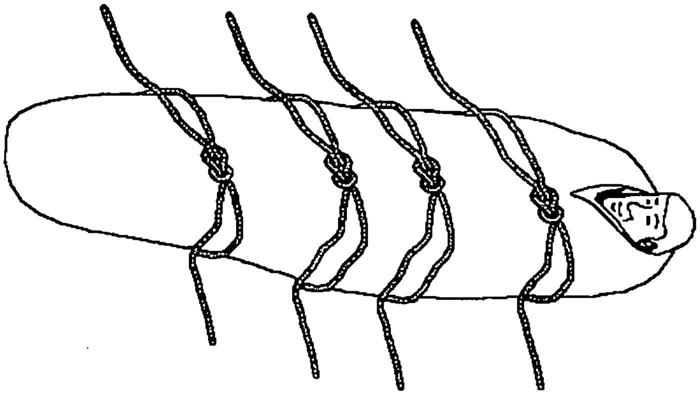
(1) The casualty is placed on his back in a sleeping bag or wrapped in a poncho or blanket, then placed on an insulated pad.

(2) One sling rope is placed under the casualty below the armpits and tied with a square knot across the casualty’s chest.

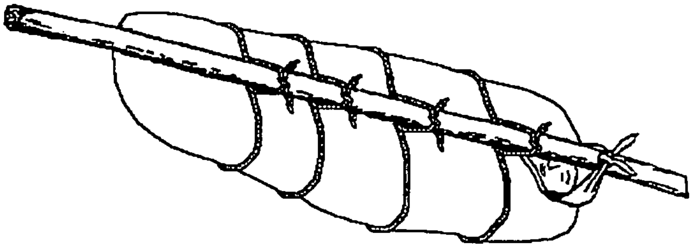
(3) The second sling rope is tied in the same manner at the casualty’s waist.

(4) The third sling rope is placed at the casualty’s legs below the knee.

(5) The fourth sling rope is tied around the ankles.



(6) The pole is placed along the casualty's length and secured using square knots with two overhands with the ends of the sling ropes. The square knots should be so tight that the overhands are tied onto themselves



(7) The casualty should hang below the pole, as close to the pole as possible, to prevent swinging during movement.

(8) The casualty's head may be supported using a triangular bandage or a cartridge belt passed around the pole.

(9) For additional support and of movement, two additional bearers may be required, as well as a mountain coil.

  (a) Mountain coil is split into two equal coils.

  (b) Place knot of mountain coil under casualty's lower back.

  (c) Additional bearers slip into each half of the hasty coil one on each side of casualty, aiding in support and movement of the casualty.

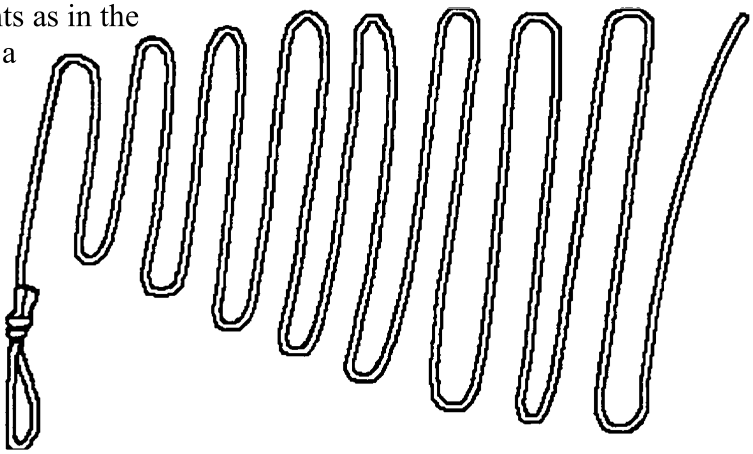
4. **EXPEDIENT LITTERS.** (FMST.07.40b) The two types of expedient litters that we will talk about are the alpine basket and the poncho litter.

a. Alpine Basket. To belay the alpine basket, the pre-rigs are attached to the bights formed coming through the loops.

(1) If barrow boy is to be used, the procedure previously discussed will be adhered to.

(2) If barrow boy is not used, then a tag line from the bottom must be implemented to keep the casualty away from the cliff face on the decent.

(3) Construction of the Alpine Basket:



(a) Start by making the same amount of bights as in the rope litter, but start from one end and tie a figure-of-eight loop to run the first bight through.

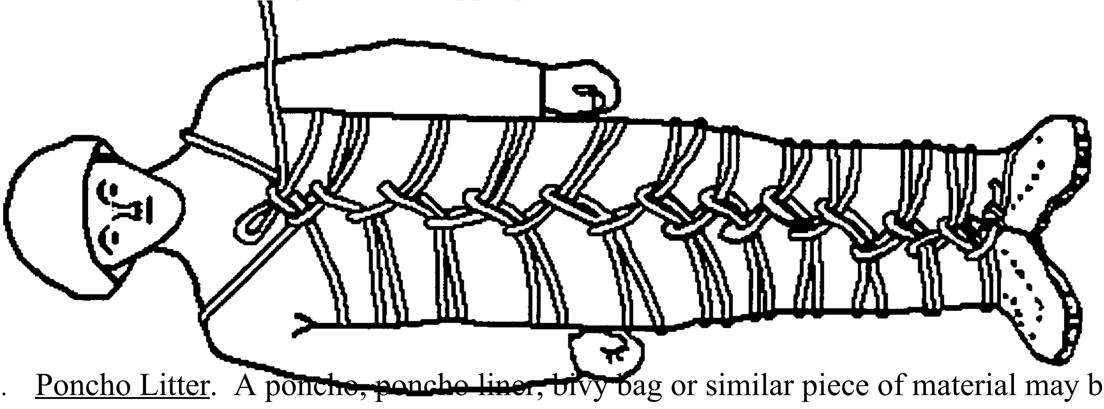
(b) Place padding i.e., isopor mat, on top of the bights and then lay the casualty on the padding and bights.

(c) Start at the casualty's feet and pull the first bight up around the casualty's ankles and through the figure-of-eight loop tied into the starting end of the rope.

(d) Go to the opposite side of the casualty and pull up the second bight and pull it through the loop formed by the bight that was pulled through the figure-of-eight.

(e) Continue until you get to the casualty's armpits, bring the second to the last bight up over the casualty's shoulder and into the bight and then bring the last bight up over the casualty's other shoulder and into the last bight formed.

(f) Secure the end of the bight with an appropriate anchor knot.



b. Poncho Litter. A poncho, poncho liner, bivy bag or similar piece of material may be used. In addition you will need six individuals with sling ropes.

(1) Lay poncho litter flat on the ground.

(2) Select six rocks about the size of a golf ball. Place one rock in each of the corners and one in the middle on each side in the middle of the litter. The rocks are placed on the under side of the poncho or like material. If a bivy bag is used the casualty should be zipped inside the bivy bag. The rocks should then be arranged in the same manner only on the inside below the zipper.

(3) Tie the sling rope together with an overhand knot. Take the middle of the rope and secure it around the rock with a clove hitch.

(4) An isomat may be laid on the poncho to help make the litter firmer.

(5) The casualty is then placed in the litter. The sling ropes are adjusted by feeding the pigtails of the over hand knot through itself to adjust for length. The loop is then put over the inboard shoulder of the carriers. Insure that the casualty is carried level.

5. **LITTERS.** There are two kinds of litters that are used for casualty evacuations in moderate to vertical terrain. The SKEDCO and the Stokes litter. Each has a variation of procedures for securing a casualty and rigging the litters for either raising or lowering. Let's first look at the SKEDCO litter.

(1) Securing a Casualty to the SKEDCO (FMST.07.40c)

(a) First unroll the litter. The litter must be re-rolled the opposite way to allow the litter to lay flat. Then lay the litter next to the casualty.

(b) If the casualty has any possibility of a spinal injury the Oregon Spine Splint must be used. Secure the splint to the casualty by use of the color-coded buckles. Experienced medical personal are recommended if spinal immobilization is necessary.

(c) Once the casualty is on the SKEDCO use the four body straps to secure the casualty to the litter. Unless injuries prevent, the casualty's arms should be at his sides to prevent further injuries to himself or the rescuers.

(d) Once the casualty is secured with the body straps the feet straps must be secured. The feet straps are secured last to ensure the casualty is in the proper position on the SKED. The feet can be positioned in three ways. The first position is feet together with the straps running on the outside of the feet. The second position is feet apart with the straps running on the inside of the feet. The last position is the feet stacked. This is the most uncomfortable position and not recommended for casualties with possible spinal cord injuries. Placing the heel of one foot on top of the toes of the other forms this position. This position will only be used for a casualty in confined spaces. Once the feet are positioned the feet straps must be secured. Start by bending the feet end of the SKED to form a plat form for the feet. Then loop the feet straps through the second grommets on each side.

(e) The last thing to do is to form the head end to protect the casualty's head. If possible the casualty should wear a helmet. Form the head end tying the pull strap up and secure it to the first body straps.

(2) Medevacing a Casualty. There are many ways to move a casualty once in the SKEDCO. However the medevac team must keep the general considerations in mind. The two methods that we will talk about next are the simplest and require the least amount of additional rigging

(a) The first way is to drag the casualty by the drag strap located at the head end of the SKED. You can also use the SKEDCO's carrying bag as a harness in conjunction with the pull strap and towing harness. If additional people are required, cordage can be added to the pull strap or the front carrying handles.

(b) The second way is to carry the casualty using the carrying handles. By using the set of four removable webbing the litter team can be augmented. To do this each pieces of webbing is tied to make an endless loop. Then pass a bight of the loop through one of the grommets to create additional handles.

(3) Rigging the SKED for Vertical Terrain and Helicopter Lift. In this type of terrain special requirements must be taken to raise or lower a casualty in the SKEDCO.

(a) Rigging the SKED for a Vertical Employment. A vertical raise or lower is used when moving a casualty on steep earth to avoid any further injury to the casualty. On vertical terrain the vertical raise or lower can be used if the terrain is not uniformed or there is a chance of rock fall. Ensure that the casualty's head is always above his feet.

(1) Identify the 30-foot piece of cordage that comes with the SKEDCO. Then tie a figure eight in the middle of the rope. If the rope is worn or missing, the same process can be done with two sling ropes.

(2) Next pass each end of the rope through the grommets at the head of the SKEDCO. Leaving approximately 1-2 feet of rope between the stretcher and the knot.

(3) Continue to feed each end through the grommets and the carrying handles towards the foot end of the SKEDCO. Pass the ends of the rope through the last grommets at the foot end and secure the two ends with a square knot without over hands.

(4) Bring the pigtails up and over the casualty's feet and pass the ends through the
a carrying handles towards the middle of the casualty. Then tie a square knot
b with two over hands.

c

(4) Rigging the SKEDCO for a Horizontal Employment. A horizontal raise or lower is preferred on uniformed vertical terrain. The horizontal employment allows the rescuer to assist the casualty on either a raise or lower. It also allows the rescuer the ability to monitor the casualty's condition and can easily treat the casualty if the need arises.

(a) Identify the two 4 inch nylon straps. They should be two lengths; one four inches shorter than the other. The shorter strap should be marked HEAD STRAPS.

(b) Insert one end of the head strap into a slot near the head of the litter. Then wrap the rest of the straps under the SKEDCO and pass the other end through the opposing slot. Do the same at the foot end of the SKEDCO with the other strap. Ensure that the strap runs smoothly under the SKEDCO.

(c) Connect the strap ends with the large locking caribiner that comes with the SKEDCO. If the caribiner is worn or missing, opposing Stubai 85 locking carabiners will suffice.

6. **STOKES LITTER**. The stokes litter is a litter that is constructed of metal tubing with a plastic covering. The litter is formed in a rectangular basket shape with mesh attached to the frame. Using the stokes for an evacuation (as with any evacuation) it should be padded for the casualty.

a. Securing the casualty to the stokes litter. In the event that the “seat belts” are missing from the stokes litter, sling ropes can be used to the lash the casualty. The steps involved are:

(1) Tie two sling ropes together using square knots and two overhands.

(2) Tie a stirrup hitch around ankles and feet, feed the two pigtails through the right angles of the stokes. Do not cross the ropes at the ankles.

(3) Lace the sling rope towards the casualty’s head by passing the rope through the right angles (not over the top of the rails of the stokes).

(4) Secure the ends of the sling ropes by tying a clove hitch with two half hitches on the thick vertical bar located by the victim’s shoulder.

7. **YOSEMITE PRE-RIG.** The title of this method, pre-rig implies the meaning ready to use, but in this case the rig must be constructed. Its purpose is for attaching a belay line to a litter and to make the litter easily adjusted. This is the one method that is used to secure a litter to a belay line.

a. Construction: This method normally requires four sling ropes. The steps are: (1) using one sling rope, tie a figure-of-eight loop with one tail.

(1) Take the remaining tail and run it through the window of the stokes litter or in the stirrups of the collapsible litter.

(2) Tie a Kragur knot onto the same sling rope.

(3) Repeat steps (1), (2), and (3) with the three remaining sling ropes.

(4) Suspend the litter to ensure that the comers are balanced.

8. **ASCENTS OR DESCENT OVER STEEP TO MODERATE SLOPES**. When the litter team is ascending or descending a slope they must consider the potential for further injury to the casualty or to themselves. If the risk of injury is high a belay line may be used to prevent injury to the casualty and the rescuers.

a. Preparing Casualty for Ascents or Decent over Steep to Moderate Terrain. This procedure will be depending on several things. Initially, site selection should contain the following features.

(1) Suitable anchor points.
(2) Clearance for casualty along the route
(3) Loading and unloading points.

b. Additional considerations.

(1) The casualty will always be rigged for vertical employment when on steep to moderate terrain.
(2) The smoothest possible route must be selected.
(3) Ensure that the casualty's head is above his feet.

c. Rescuers positions. There are two methods that can be used for the rescuers for moving a casualty in steep to moderate terrain.

(1) Two to four men will position themselves on each side of the litter. They can then carry the litter by the carrying handles. In steep terrain a second belay line may be used to assist the rescuers. We will discuses the belay line later in the chapter.

(2) The Caterpillar method will require as many personnel as possible. The personnel will split in half and position themselves on each side of the litter forming a tunnel. As the litter is raised or lowered each member will hand the litter to the next member in the tunnel. As the litter passes each person in the tunnel he will peel off and assume the lead either at the top or bottom of the tunnel. This will continue until the litter reaches its desired destination.

d. Belay Line. (FMST.07.40d) For belaying of a casualty, one rope will be used and from the top using one of two methods depending on the application.

(1) Body Belay. This method should only be used over moderate terrain. The belay man will establish a sitting position behind a suitable anchor (i.e., rock, tree, etc.) and pass the standing end of the rope behind his back. The running end of the rope will feed out from the belay man's right side. A figure of eight loop is tied to the end of the running end of the rope. It is then attached to the litter's figure eight loop with a locking carabiner. The belay man will then remove all of the slack between himself and the litter. The standing end of the rope should be stacked on the belay man's left side and run through his left side. As the casualty is lowered, the belay man will feed the rope from behind his back allowing it to run through his right hand. If the belay man needs to stop the casualty, he will clench the rope in his left hand, and

bring the rope to the center of his chest.

(2) Direct Belay. This method is the safest for either raising or lowering a casualty in either moderate to steep terrain.

(a) To Lower a Casualty. First a swami wrap will be tied around a suitable anchor point. Two locking carabiners will be clipped into all of the wraps of the swami wraps, gates up. A figure of eight loop is tied into the end of the static rope and attached to the litter with a locking carabiner. After all the slack has been taken up between the litter and the anchor, the rope must be tied through an appropriate belay device. The belay device is attached to the anchor through one of the two locking carabiners on the anchor. A safety (French) prussic will be tied to the running end of the rope and clipped into the second locking carabiner on the anchor. While the casualty is being lowered, one person will control the rope running through the belay device. The safety prussic will be controlled by a second person. Should the primary belay man lose control, the person operating the safety prussic simply lets go and the prussic will bind onto the rope, stopping the casualty.

(b) To Raise a Casualty. The anchors will be established in the same manner as discussed in lowering the casualty with one minor change. The one change is that instead of running the rope through a belay device, the rope will only run through a locking carabiner. The load will be raised by the use of a mule team. The mule must consist of as many people as possible. The mule team will raise the load in as straight a line from the anchor as possible. If the space does not permit a ninety-degree angle away from the anchor is also an option. The mule team will walk backward until the last man reaches his limit of advance. Once he reaches that limit he will peel off the end and return to the front of the mule team. This process is continued until the casualty reaches the top. If the load becomes unmanageable, the safety prussic will be allowed to bind on the rope while the mule team repositions themselves. If the person operating the safety prussic can not see the casualty a Point NCO will be in charge of communicating with the mule team.

(c) To Belay the Rescuers. If the route is too steep or the footing is poor the rescuers may need some assistance either on the raising or lowering of a casualty. If this is the case a separate belay line will be established for the rescuers. The anchor and the belay line are established in the same manner. The same anchor can be used if it is suitable for the load. The rescuers will then tie either around the chest bowlines or swami wraps. A figure eight loop will be tied into the end of the static rope and connected to the bottom rescuer with a locking carabiner. The other rescuers will connect themselves to the same rope with middle of the line prussic. They will be connected in this manner so that they can adjust their position to the casualty.

9. **BARROW BOY.** (FMST.07.40e) A barrow boy is no more than an assistant to the litter on vertical to near vertical cliff faces. The barrow boy can be used for either the Stokes or the

SKED litters. For this situation the Stokes litter should only be used in the horizontal position. However the SKED can be employed in either the horizontal or the vertical positions.

NOTE: Static load, lowered slowly, little friction, so don't need 2 ropes.

a. Rigging the Barrow Boy.

(1) First the rescuer must ensure that a suitable anchor has been established, a proper belay has been constructed, and that a safety prussic has been constructed.
(2) Then the rescuer must ensure that if an A-frame is used that it has been constructed and anchored properly.

(3) Next the rescuer will tie a rappel seat on. (a sit harness can also be used) Then he will ensure that an around the body bowline is tied onto the casualty. A figure eight will be tied on to the end to act as the casualty's safety.

(4) Then after running the running end of the rope though the carabiners or pulley of the A-frame he will tie a figure eight loop at the end of the static rope. He will then attach the figure eight loop to his hard point with a locking carabiner. Then he will tie a middle of the line prussic above the figure eight and attach it to the same locking carabiner in his hard point. This is called the adjustment prussic. It is used to adjust the position of the Barrow Boy in relation to the litter. Next he will take six to eight feet of slack from the end of the line figure eight and tie a directional figure of eight with direction of pull down. (Note: the prussic should be between the end of the line figure of eight and the directional figure of eight.) The directional figure of eight is the attaching point for the litter and the casualty's safety.

(5) Once the rescuer and the litter are secured, the belay man must take all the slack out of the system. The rescuers will the maneuver the litter through the apex of the A-frame with the help of the point NCO.

(6) Once onto the cliff face the rescuer will then position him self with his adjustment prussic so that he can be of most assistance to the litter on the raise or lower. The rescuer will pull the litter out away from the cliff face so that the casualty rides smoothly up or down the cliff face.

(7) The Point NCO will be in charge of the belay men or the mule team. He will also communicate with the rescuer about the rate of speed, if the rescuer needs to be stopped along the route, and when he reaches the top or bottom of the cliff.

10. **TANDEM LOWERING**. The tandem lowering system can be used for the walking wounded, POW's, or more serious casualties when situation would not permit using the barrow boy.

a. The assistant to the casualty should first tie a rappel seat on himself and then assist the casualty with his.

b. The assistant will take only one belay line and tie a end of the line figure 8 loop, and clip this into his rappel seat.

c. A directional figure 8 will be tied approximately 12 inches up the rope from the figure 8 loop (with the loop pointed down) and this will be clipped to the casualty's rappel seat.

d. If needed, safety prussic cords should be tied above the casualty's directional figure 8. These safety cords should be attached in the same manner as the first man down a rappel.

e. The casualty and the assistant will lower as one, with the assistant helping on the way down the cliff.

11. **OTHER CONSIDERATIONS.** All of the techniques we have discussed for the evacuation of a casualty from top to bottom can also be used on a suspension traverse or rope bridge, with a slight variation in the belay line. Two belay lines may be used for rope bridges and the suspension traverse, if they are available. No matter what type of litter is used, the individuals involved in the evacuation must ensure that the head is always uphill or not lower than the feet.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

FMST.0
7.34
04/12/02

STUDENT HANDOUT

ONE-ROPE BRIDGE

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

TERMINAL LEARNING OBJECTIVES. In a summer mountainous environment, conduct bridging, in accordance with the references. (FMST.07.34)

ENABLING LEARNING OBJECTIVES

(1) Without the aid of references, list in writing the criteria for site selection for a one-rope bridge, in accordance with the reference. (FMST.07.34a)

(2) In a summer mountainous environment with an assault load , cross a one-rope bridge using the rappel seat method, in accordance with the reference. (FMST.07.34b)

(3) Without the aid of references, list in writing the rescue techniques, in accordance with the reference. (FMST.07.34c)

(4) In a summer mountainous environment transport a SKED stretcher across a one rope bridge, in accordance with the reference. (FMST.07.34d)

BODY

1. SITE SELECTION

a. The two criteria for site selection for a one-rope bridge are: (FMST.07.34a)

1)There must be suitable anchors on both sides of the stream.

2)The anchors must offer good loading and unloading platforms.

b. Other considerations involved are:

1)The site chosen for the initial crossing does not have to be at the location for the construction of the bridge, just as long as the rope can be taken to the selected site the

crossing.

2)The site chosen for the lead swimmer to cross should be as free as possible from obstacles in the water, such as large boulders, stumps or logs as discussed in *STREAM CROSSING*.

3)The anchors must be close enough for the 150 foot coil to reach both near side and far side anchors. Keep in mind that it will take approximately 1/3 of the 150 foot rope for tightening and anchoring of the bridge.

2. **DISTANCE ESTIMATION**. The follow methods can be used to determine the distance between anchor points:

a. Azimuth Method. Shoot an azimuth to a point on the far side of the intended obstacle to cross. Then move LEFT or RIGHT (perpendicular to the azimuth) until you get a 15 degree offset of your previous azimuth. Next, measure the distance that you paced in feet from your first azimuth to your second azimuth, and multiply that distance by three. This total will give you the approximate distance across the obstacle in feet.

b. Unit Average Method. Get three Marines to judge (best guess) the distance across the intended obstacle. Add up the total accumulated distance, then divide by three. This will give an estimation of the distance across the obstacle.

Example:	Marine 1	240 ft
	Marine 2	230 ft
	Marine 3	250 ft
		720 ft

Divided by 3 = 240 ft

3. **ORGANIZATION**. The organization of construction is broken down into four groups. They are as follow:

a. The Bridging Team - consisting of the bridge NCO and another Marine.

b. The Safety Line Team - consisting of the lead swimmer and his belay man.

c. The Mule Team - consisting 3 Marines for a 9:1, and 6 Marines for a 3:1.

d. The Security Team – consisting of the rest of the party.

4. **CONSTRUCTION**. This bridge is ideal for squad and platoon sized units, for its quick construction and minimal amount of equipment required.

a. Once the site for the bridge has been designated by the bridge NCO, the Safety Line Team will move up stream from this site to enter the water. Their first step is to flake out the rope. Once this is accomplished, the lead swimmer's will take a bight of the rope and tie a figure 8 loop at the end that will be going to the far side, ensuring the knot has a 18"-24" loop. The lead swimmer's upstream arm will go in it, with the belay man tending his rope the lead swimmer will cross the never using the flow to assist him. (Ferry angle as taught in STREAM CROSSING)

b. At the same time as the lead swimmer is crossing, the bridging team will be preparing the near side anchor. The bridging team will tie a swammi wrap around the anchor, using a sling rope or practice coil, and ensuring the square knot is behind or on the side of the anchor. Once the anchor is secure, flake out the bridging line in order to send it across.

c. Once the lead swimmer is across he will move to the site where the far side anchor will be established and secure his rope. The belay man will then move down to the near side anchor, and as close to the waters edge as possible. He will attach the bridging line to the safety by tying a middle of the rope in a figure 8 knot to the safety line and an end of the rope figure 8 knot to the bridging line connecting the two ropes with an 85 carabiner. The lead swimmer will then pull the rope across. The belay man with the help of another Marine will belay the bridging line across keeping tension on the rope to keep the rope out of the water.

d. After the bridging line is across the lead swimmer will detach the bridging line from the safety line and secure it to the far side anchor using a tree wrap, wrapping from right to left, ensuring there are 3-5 wraps.

e. Once the bridging line is secure. The lead swimmer and the belay man will secure the safety line on both banks, ensuring the rope is creating a ferry angle (minimum 45 degrees). This will be the safety line for the Marines crossing the bridge.

NOTE: If a fall from a rope bridge would result in death or serious injury, then utilize a safety line that will be anchored parallel with the bridge and hand tightened. The Marine crossing will clip into both ropes prior crossing.

f. On the near side bank:

1. The bridging team will need the following gear to build the mechanical advantage:

(a) Four steel locking carabiners & 3 -Three foot prusiks

2. Once the bridging line is secured on the far side, the bridging team will take one 85 and clip it into the near side anchor (swammi wrap). Then they will take the bridging line and clip into that 85, then using one three foot long prusik (16" loop) the bridging line will be secured to the 85 by tying a French Prusik, which will act as a braking knot. The bridging team will now pull the rope taut, and begin construction of the mechanical advantage.

3. The first step is to take one three foot prusik (16" loop) and tie a French prusik on the bridging line as far away from the anchor as possible. Then take one 85 and clip it to the loops of the French prusik.

4. Taking a bight from the running end of the rope clip it into the 85 hanging from the tails of the French prusik.

5. Then bring a bight back from the clipped in rope to the anchor, and taking one 85 clip it into the 85 created in step (2), take the bight of rope and clip into this 85.

6. Take one three foot prusik and tie a French prusik onto the bottom end of the bight clipped into the 85 created in step (3), take one 85 and clip it into the tail loops of the French prusik.
7. From the anchor, take a bight of rope from the 85 created in step (6) and clip it into the 85 created in step (6).

8. You have made approximately a 9:1 mechanical advantage.

NOTE: If the manpower is available the squad/platoon has the option of building a 3:1 mechanical advantage vise a 9: 1, the mule team will just have to add another body having no more then 3 bodies on a 9:1 and 6 bodies on a 3:1

g. Tensioning of the Bridge

1. Now that the bridge is built, the bridge NCO can call up the mule team to tension the bridge.

2. This procedure is facilitated by the mechanical advantage system that was just put into place. The braking knot (French prusik) is used to hold tension on the bridging line while the bridge is being tensioned.

3. The mule team will begin to pull on the running end of the rope coming out of the mechanical advantage. They will pull the rope straight back, trying to keep it in line with the bridge as best as possible.

4. The mule team will tension the rope as much as possible, the bridge NCO will monitor the system. Once the mule team cannot pull anymore tension, the bridge NCO will then have them hold the rope in place, and will reset the braking knot. Once the braking knot is set the bridge NCO will ask for slack from the mule team and cycle the system out. This process will continue until the bridge is tight.

5. On the last cycle the bridge NCO will set the brake knot and with the help of another Marine they will make a bight out of the running end and bring it around the tree while keeping tension.

6. Take a bight and make a complete round turn on the body of the 85 created in step (2). Last, the bridge NCO will tie two half hitches encompassing all the ropes just behind the anchor.

7. At this stage the bridge is tight and secured, the bridge NCO will now call up the remainder of the squad/platoon to cross. The bridge NCO will monitor the crossing of all Marines, and will be the last one to cross.

TRANSITION: Now that we have discussed the construction of the bridge, are there any questions over the material? Next we will discuss the crossing of the bridge.

5. **CROSSING.** (FMST.07.34b) The method used to cross is known as a horizontal traverse. This traverse can be accomplished in the following ways.

a. Rappel Seat Method

1) The Marine ties himself into a rappel seat and inserts a large steel locking carabiner with the gate facing down and away.

2) The Marine faces the bridge with his right hand towards the near anchor to snap into the bridge, once the 85 is locked onto the bridge rope, a helper flips the 85 over so that the locking nut screws down. A carrier rope with a girth hitch may be added to assist the Marine in mounting the rope.

3) The Marine hangs below the bridge from his rappel seat with his head pointing in the direction of the far anchor and allows his legs to hang free.

4)Pulling with his arms makes progress.

5)This method is the safest and therefore the preferred method.

6)If the Marine must take a pack across, he may wear it with the waistband secured: However, the preferred method is to have another carabiner (aluminum non-locking is sufficient) attached to the pack frame at the top and attach this to the bridge behind the Marine putting his legs through the shoulder straps and pulling the pack across with him.

7)One man at a time will cross, although one can load and another can unload concurrently.

8)Weapons will be worn across the shoulder; muzzle down with a tight sling securely attached to the weapon.

b. Pulley Method. This method is used when the one rope bridge is long, uphill, or speed is vital and the Marines crossing it have a lot of heavy personal equipment; M24OG's, radios, etc.

1)Equipment required. One pulley, four steel locking carabiners, and a hauling line twice the length of the obstacle.

2)Setting up the system. Construction of the first suspension point is done by attaching a pulley to the one rope bridge, one 85 carabiner is attached to the pulley, gate down, and a second 85 is attached to the first 85 with the gate facing the near side bank. Into this second 85, attach the hauling rope with a figure-8 loop. The figure-8 is placed halfway along the hauling rope and attached to the 85, which is then locked. Four feet down the line another figure-8 on a bight is placed into the second suspension point.

3)Connection. The Marine clips his 85 into the lower 85, his equipment is clipped into the second 85. The mule team starts to pull.

c. Helmets will be worn for all methods of crossing the bridge. Gloves are optional.

NOTE: There are additional methods of crossing a one rope bridge such as the Commando crawl, Monkey crawl and hand over hand techniques, however, they are not taught at MWTC due to safety reasons.

6. **RESCUE TECHNIQUES** If an individual is unable to complete the crossing on the one rope bridge using the rappel seat method of crossing (i.e. from a fall or exhaustion), a rescue will have to be made in the following manner: (FMST.07.34c)

a. Reach. First try to reach the victim by using an object such as a pole, your hand, if the victim is close enough, etc ...

b. Throw. If reaching the victim is impossible, try throwing a rope to the victim and have him attach the rope to himself, preferably his seat, and pull him back to the desired side of the installation.

c. Tow. If the victim is unable to catch or reach a rope being thrown to him or the victim is unconscious, tie a figure-of-eight loop into the middle of the safety line and then connect the rope to the rope bridge with a steel locking carabiner. The mule team will pull the carabiner up against the victim's seat and begin towing the victim to the desired side of the installation. The rope used to tow the victim should be twice the length of the span of the rope bridge (If necessary, ropes can be tied together to accommodate the span). This will allow towing from either side without having to throw or have a Marine carry the safety line back across the bridge each time a towing rescue is performed.

d. Go. If all else fails, the last option will be to go after the victim. The rescuer will move out onto the rope bridge with a safety line attached to himself at approximately eight feet from the end of the safety line. In the end of the safety line tie a figure-of-eight loop and insert a steel locking carabiner in the end of it. Once the rescuer has made contact with the victim. He will attach the steel locking carabiner to either the victim's seat (preferably the victim's carabiner that is attached to the rope bridge), or to the bridge itself. To ensuring that the carabiner is placed so that it pulls against the victim's carabiner. The mule team now starts to pull both the victim and the rescuer to the desired side of the installation.

e. Cut. If while crossing the rope over water the individual goes underwater and no other rescue technique can be employed, the rope will be cut.

7. RETRIEVING THE ONE ROPE BRIDGE

a. Before the bridge NCO sends the last Marine to cross, they must make the bridge retrievable.

b. The first step is to break down the mechanical advantage, ensuring the braking knot is set before doing so. The system will be broken down until the bridging line is attached only to the brake knot.

c. They will now take the rope around to the back of the anchor, and tie a slip figure 8, with the loop of the slip 8, take it and attach it to the bridging line just in back of the braking knot with a 85.

d. Now pull the running end coming out of the slip 8 until it tightens, and bites on the rope. Once the rope bites, tie a thumb knot behind the slip 8 as close to the slip figure 8 as possible.

e. The bridge NCO, with the help of another Marine, will now untie the swammi wrap, until all of the tension is on the bridging line.

f. The safety line will now be brought up, and attached to the end of the bridging line with an overhand knot.

g. The bridge NCO and the other. Marine will now cross the bridge.

NOTE: It is possible that the bridge may lose tension after breaking the bridge down. The packs of the last two Marines across can be sent over with other Marines, prior to the slip figure being tied.

h. After both Marines have crossed, the safely line will be brought up from down stream.

i. The tree wrap will now be taken off. Once the tree wrap is off, all knots and carabiners will be taken out.

j. The safety line will now be pulled, the bridge is retrieved.

UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
Mountain Warfare Training Center
Bridgeport, California 93517-5001

WMC
04/12/02

STUDENT OUTLINE

SUMMER MOUNTAIN WARFIGHTING LOAD REQUIREMENTS

LESSON PURPOSE. The purpose of this period of instruction is to introduce the student to the different levels of gear requirements in accordance with MWTC's uniform codes. This lesson relates to mountain walking and tactical evolutions

OUTLINE

1. BASIC UNIFORM REQUIREMENTS.

a. Marines operating in mountainous terrain will generally wear the standard issued utility uniform. However, due to the wide range of temperatures, and sudden changes in weather in the mountains, Marines will find the need to be continually adding and removing layers. The amount of clothing worn may vary depending upon the severity of the weather, the activity level of the Marine, and the individual metabolism of the Marine. Every person in that unit should still maintain the same outer camouflage layer.

b. As part of the basic uniform, each man will be required to have in his possession, at all times, seven required pocket items. These seven items should be carried in the pockets of your utility uniform:

(1) Pocketknife

(2) Whistle

(3) Pressure Bandage

(4) Chapstick and sunscreen

(5) Sunglasses

C10

(6) Survival Kit and rations (fire starting material, signaling material, food gathering material, water procuring material, 1st aid, shelter material, and some high energy, lightweight snacks.)

(7) Notebook with pen/pencil

c. Some additional items that should be carried in your pockets at all times:

(1) Contact gloves

(2) Paracord (10 meters)

(3) Flashlight with tactical lens and spare batteries

(4) Chemlights

2. **ASSAULT LOAD**.

a. The Assault Load is equipment in addition to the basic uniform requirements. It is carried in the load-bearing vest (LBV), butt pack and the pack system. This is the equipment carried for short duration missions such as security patrols or during the assault. It is also carried at all times when away from the bivouac site.

(1) An extra insulating layer (Field jacket liner, wooly pully, etc.)

(2) Protective layer (ECWCS parka and trousers)

(3) LBV with 2 quarts of water and first aid kit

(4) Helmet

(5) Rations for the time away from your bivouac site

(6) Cold weather hat or balaclava

(7) Individual mountaineering gear

  a. Sling rope

  b. Carabiners

  c. Rappelling Gloves

(8) Specialized mountaineering equipment

(9) Mission essential gear

3. **COMBAT LOAD**. The Combat Load is the equipment carried for longer duration missions.

   The following items are in addition to the items already being carried in the Assault Load:

   a. Sleeping bag with bivy bag

   b. Isopor mat

   c. Stove

   d. Fuel bottle

   e. Poncho (for expedient shelters or medevac purposes)

4. **EXISTENCE LOAD**. The Existence Load is to be packed for longer duration combat missions, where it is necessary to replace worn out items. These items could be uniforms, boots, personal hygiene gear, etc. The Existence Load should be brought to the forward elements once the situation allows.

5. **PACKING CONSIDERATIONS.** Because most Marines are familiar with how to pack a pack, these are general guidelines only.

   a. When not wearing your protective layer or insulating layers, keep it handy at the top of the pack. When taking a break during a movement, you will be able to quickly don a layer to prevent getting chilled.

   b. Keep your stove and fuel bottle in the outside pockets of your pack. They may leak and soak your equipment with fuel if stored inside your pack.

   c. Keep the climbing rope in the rope bag. This will reduce the rope's exposure to petroleum products, ultra-violet light, cuts, and abrasions.

   d. Ice ax is placed through the ice ax loops with spike up, adze outboard, and secured in place.

   e. Crampons are attached to the outside of the pack with the tips covered and facing outboard.